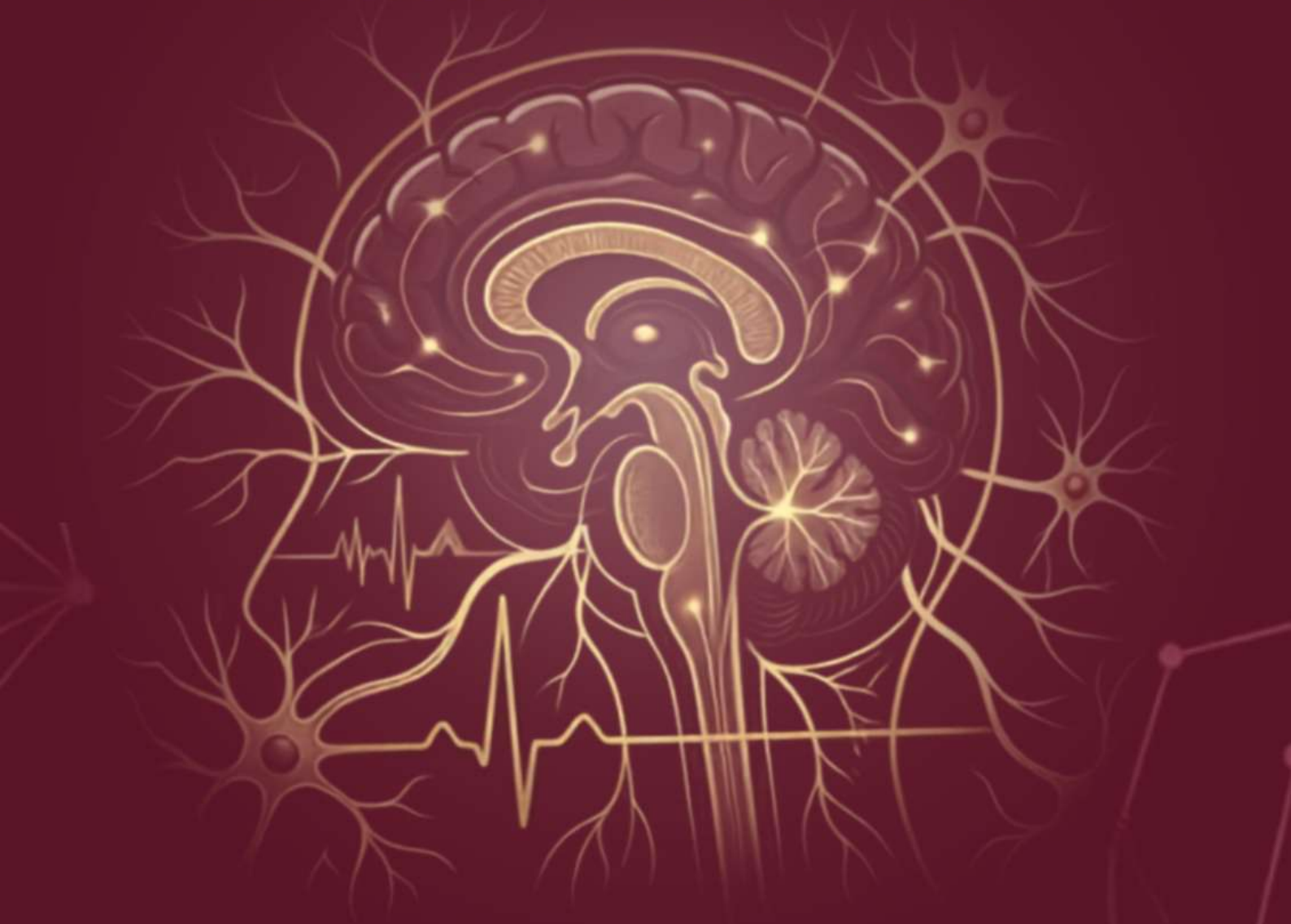
सत्यमेव जयते
Government of India

NATIONAL GUIDELINES ON
BRAIN STEM DEATH CERTIFICATION



NATIONAL ORGAN & TISSUE TRANSPLANT ORGANIZATION

MINISTRY OF HEALTH & FAMILY WELFARE
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

EDITION-1
2026

सत्यमेव जयते
Government of India

NATIONAL GUIDELINES ON BRAIN STEM DEATH CERTIFICATION

NATIONAL ORGAN AND TISSUE TRANSPLANT ORGANIZATION

MINISTRY OF HEALTH & FAMILY WELFARE

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

EDITION-I
2026

जगत प्रकाश नड्डा
JAGAT PRAKASH NADDA

सत्यमेव जयते

मंत्री
स्वास्थ्य एवं परिवार कल्याण
व रसायन एवं उर्वरक
भारत सरकार
Minister
Health & Family Welfare
and Chemicals & Fertilizers
Government of India

MESSAGE

Organ transplantation plays a vital role in saving lives and improving the quality of life of patients suffering from end-stage organ failure. I am delighted to note that the Ministry of Health and Family Welfare has taken the initiative to develop National Brain Stem Death Certification Guidelines for implementing uniform, evidence-based and legally sound Brain Stem Death certification processes. These Guidelines reflect our continued commitment towards establishing a transparent, equitable, ethical and patient-centric organ transplant ecosystem in India.

The Guidelines provide a comprehensive framework to support standardized practices, enhance coordination among transplant centres, and promote transparency. I am confident that these Guidelines will serve as an important reference for all stakeholders and support the robust and efficient growth of organ transplantation in the country. They will further strengthen institutional capabilities and contribute towards improving access to transplantation services.

I congratulate the entire team involved in bringing out the National Brain Stem Death Certification Guidelines.

(Jagat Prakash Nadda)

कार्यालयः कमरा नं. 12107, द्वितीय तल, 'सी' विंग, कर्तव्य भवन–1, नई दिल्ली–110001
Office: Room No. 12107, 2nd Floor, 'C' Wing, Kartavya Bhavan-1, New Delhi-110001
Tele.: (O): +91-11-24013301, 24013302, 24013303 • **E-mail:** min-hfm@gov.in

प्रतापराव जाधव
PRATAPRAO JADHAV

राज्य मंत्री (स्वतंत्र प्रभार)
आयुष मंत्रालय
व
राज्य मंत्री
स्वास्थ्य एवं परिवार कल्याण मंत्रालय
भारत सरकार
MINISTER OF STATE
(INDEPENDENT CHARGE) OF
MINISTRY OF AYUSH AND
MINISTER OF STATE OF
MINISTRY OF HEALTH & FAMILY WELFARE
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

Message

The Government of India under the visionary leadership of Hon'ble Prime Minister Shri Narendra Modi ji and able guidance of Hon'ble Union Minister of Health and Family Welfare, Shri Jagat Prakash Nadda ji, is committed to ensuring the transparency, uniformity, and accountability of the organ donation and transplantation process for the wellbeing of citizens in India.

The first official edition of the National Brain Stem Death Certification Guidelines will support transplant and retrieval centres by providing clear processes for coordination, patient management, and implementation, while maintaining the highest standards of ethics, fairness, and transparency.

The effective implementation of these Guidelines requires active participation and cooperation from transplant centres, healthcare professionals, coordinators, and all concerned stakeholders. The Ministry of Health and Family Welfare earnestly encourages all stakeholders to adopt these Guidelines and integrate them into their practices.

I appreciate the dedicated efforts of NOTTO, the team of experts, transplant professionals, and institutions involved in developing these Guidelines. The Guidelines are expected to help strengthen the organ transplant programme and improve opportunities for patients awaiting transplantation.

सर्वे भवन्तु सुखिनः। सर्वे सन्तु निरामयाः।

(Prataprao Jadhav)

Office: 12042, 'A' Wing, Kartavya Bhavan, New Delhi-110001
Tele.: 011-24013380, Telefax: 011-24013380, E-mail: mos-health@gov.in
Residence: 23, Ashoka Road, New Delhi-110001, Tele.: 011-23740412, 23740413, 23345478
Camp office: Khasdar Jansampark Karyalay, Jijamata Krida Sankul, Buldhana, Maharashtra-443001
Telefax: 07262-247777, E-mail: prataprao.jadhav@sansad.nic.in

NATIONAL HEALTH MISSION
राष्ट्रीय स्वास्थ्य मिशन

अनुप्रिया पटेल
ANUPRIYA PATEL

सत्यमेव जयते

राज्य मंत्री
स्वास्थ्य एवं परिवार कल्याण
व रसायन एवं उर्वरक
भारत सरकार

MINISTER OF STATE
HEALTH & FAMILY WELFARE
AND CHEMICALS & FERTILISERS
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

Message

The Government of India remains committed to strengthening organ transplantation services to ensure equitable, ethical, and transparent access to life-saving treatment for patients with end-stage organ disease. The National Organ Transplant Programme (NOTP), implemented by the Union Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, through States & Union Territories seeks to promote deceased and living donor organ transplantation and improve access to transplantation services across the country.

A clear and standardized process for certifying Brain Stem Death is crucial to reassuring grieving families that clinical evaluations are conducted with the highest legal and ethical safeguards. By standardizing these procedures across all States and Union Territories, we ensure that every citizen receives equitable, dignified, and transparent healthcare services.

These Guidelines provide a comprehensive framework for the uniform certification of Brain Stem Death across the country. These Guidelines will strengthen transparency and patient safety while upholding ethical and legal standards and facilitating timely and equitable access to organ transplantation services.

I sincerely hope that all States & Union Territories, healthcare professionals, policymakers and other stakeholders will actively participate in the implementation of these Guidelines, so as to strengthen organ transplantation services and improve access to life-saving transplantation across the country.

(Anupriya Patel)

July 31, 2026
New Delhi

कमरा सं. 12026, द्वितीय तल, 'ए' विंग, कर्तव्य भवन 1, नई दिल्ली-110001, फोन : +91-11-24013239, 24013240
Room No. 12026, 2nd Floor, 'A' Wing, Kartavya Bhavan 1, New Delhi-110001, Tele : +91-11-24013239, 24013240
E-mail: mosap-mohfw@gov.in

पुण्य सलिला श्रीवास्तव, भा.प्र.से.
सचिव
PUNYA SALILA SRIVASTAVA, IAS
Secretary

भारत सरकार
स्वास्थ्य एवं परिवार कल्याण विभाग
स्वास्थ्य एवं परिवार कल्याण मंत्रालय
Government of India
Department of Health and Family Welfare
Ministry of Health and Family Welfare

MESSAGE

Organ transplantation has had a transformational impact in saving lives and improving patient outcomes. Timely and accurate identification of brain stem death is crucial to maintaining ethical integrity, ensuring transparency, and expanding the deceased donor programme.

With the growing need for organ transplantation, it has become imperative to establish standardized, transparent, and ethical guidelines for the certification of Brain Stem Death across the country. These National Guidelines on Brain Stem Death Certification aim to ensure uniformity in practices, safeguard the interests of donors and recipients, maximize the utilization of available donors and improve outcomes of transplantation.

I appreciate the efforts of members of the expert committee and the National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organisation (NOTTO) team for their invaluable contribution to developing these guidelines.

I sincerely hope that all States and Union Territories will find these guidelines useful. Together, let us strengthen the national organ donation and transplantation programme for provision of quality healthcare services to the citizens of the country.

Punya Salila

Dated 31st July, 2026

(Punya Salila Srivastava)

Room No. 11102, 'C' Wing, Kartavya Bhawan-1, New Delhi-110001
Tele.: (O) 011-24013601, 24013602, E-mail: secyhfw@nic.in

डॉ. लवनीश जी. कृष्णा
Dr. Loveneesh G. Krishna
MS (Ortho), DNB (Ortho)
स्वास्थ्य सेवा महानिदेशक
DIRECTOR GENERAL OF HEALTH SERVICES

सत्यमेव जयते

भारत सरकार
स्वास्थ्य एवं परिवार कल्याण मंत्रालय
स्वास्थ्य सेवा महानिदेशालय

Government of India
Ministry of Health & Family Welfare
Directorate General of Health Services

Message

I am pleased to present the National Brain Stem Death Certification Guidelines, a significant milestone in our ongoing efforts to enhance organ transplantation services across the nation. These guidelines have been developed to strengthen and standardize the certification of Brain Stem Death across the country. These guidelines provide a comprehensive framework to facilitate the ethical, transparent, and efficient declaration of Brain Stem Death, while ensuring patient safety, accountability, and adherence to the provisions of the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act and the Rules made thereunder.

The National Brain Stem Death Certification Guidelines have been conscientiously developed by a team of dedicated experts in their respective fields coordinated by the team at NOTTO. They provide a comprehensive framework for certification of Brain Stem Death, standardized clinical testing procedures, prerequisite evaluations, diagnostic modalities, and documentation requirements in compliance with the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA). They will serve as a valuable resource for all stakeholders across the country for effective certification of Brain Stem Death.

The successful implementation of these guidelines depends on active collaboration among all stakeholders. I extend my appreciation to the efforts of the National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organisation (NOTTO) and the expert committee members who have contributed to the development of this document, which will contribute significantly to expanding access to organ transplantation in India.

(Loveneesh G. Krishna)

Room No.12072, B-Wing, Kartavya Bhavan-1, New Delhi-110001
Tel. No. 011-24013901, 24013902, Email: dghs@nic.in

डॉ. अनिल कुमार
Dr. ANIL KUMAR
M.B.B.S., MD
निदेशक, नोटो/Director, NOTTO

सत्यमेव जयते

भारत सरकार
स्वास्थ्य एवं परिवार कल्याण मंत्रालय
स्वास्थ्य सेवा महानिदेशालय
Government of India
Ministry of Health & Family Welfare
Directorate General of Health Services

MESSAGE

The growing burden of end-stage organ failure due to non-communicable diseases has made organ transplantation an integral component of modern healthcare. While remarkable progress has been achieved in strengthening the organ transplantation ecosystem in India, the demand for organs continues to far exceed the availability. It is therefore imperative to adopt innovative, ethical, and transparent strategies to maximize transplantation opportunities for patients awaiting a life-saving transplant.

Deceased organ donation remains the bedrock of saving lives for patients suffering from end-stage organ failure. However, the successful realization of deceased donation hinges entirely on the prompt, accurate, and transparent identification and certification of Brain Stem Death (BSD). These comprehensive guidelines bridge critical knowledge gaps, establish standardized clinical testing protocols, and provide practical clarity for ICU teams, transplant coordinators, and administrators nationwide.

In recent years, India has witnessed encouraging growth in deceased organ donation; however, there remains a need for standardized operational procedures, uniform practices, and coordinated implementation across transplant centers. It gives me immense pleasure to announce the launch of the National Brain Stem Death Certification Guidelines as it is a significant step forward in streamlining and enhancing organ transplant coordination efforts across the country. The guidelines have been formulated through extensive deliberations with leading experts from the country, along with nominations received from concerned professional associations. This publication aims to serve as a practical guide for transplant physicians, surgeons, transplant coordinators, administrators, authorization committees, and other stakeholders.

I extend my heartfelt appreciation to all the members of the expert committee and the team of the National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organisation (NOTTO), for their invaluable contribution to this document. I hope the Guidelines will be useful to various stakeholders for implementing Brain Stem death certification in a smooth and transparent way and enhance the number of donations and transplantations required for the citizens of the country.

(Dr. Anil Kumar)

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The **National Guidelines on Brain-Stem Death (BSD) Certification** represent the first comprehensive national framework developed to standardize the determination and certification of Brain-Stem Death across India. Prepared under the leadership of the **National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO), Directorate General of Health Services, Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India,** these guidelines provide an evidence-informed, legally compliant, ethically sound, and clinically practical framework to support uniform implementation of Brain-Stem Death certification in all healthcare institutions. They have been developed through extensive consultation with multidisciplinary experts representing critical care, neurology, neurosurgery, anaesthesiology, transplantation, paediatrics, forensic medicine, medical ethics, law, and hospital administration.

Brain-Stem Death is recognized under the **Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), 1994,** as a legally valid form of death. Accurate determination of Brain-Stem Death is fundamental to maintaining the integrity of end-of-life care, protecting the rights and dignity of patients and families, ensuring legal certainty, and facilitating deceased organ donation when appropriate. Although significant progress has been made in strengthening India's organ transplantation programme, variations in clinical practice, interpretation of statutory provisions, documentation standards, and institutional preparedness have resulted in inconsistent implementation across healthcare facilities. These guidelines have therefore been developed to establish nationally harmonized standards that promote consistency, transparency, accountability, and patient safety throughout the Brain-Stem Death certification process.

The recommendations presented in this document are founded on internationally accepted scientific evidence, contemporary critical care practice, established neurological principles, ethical standards, and the statutory provisions governing Brain-Stem Death determination in India. While recognizing differences in international legal frameworks, the guidelines have been contextualized to the Indian healthcare system and are intended to support uniform implementation across government and private healthcare institutions regardless of geographical location or level of care.

The guidelines provide comprehensive recommendations covering the scientific basis of Brain-Stem Death, medico-legal principles, prerequisites for neurological assessment, standardized clinical examination, apnoea testing, ancillary investigations, paediatric and neonatal considerations, physiological consequences of Brain-Stem Death, donor optimization and intensive care management, statutory certification and documentation, communication with families, ethical and legal considerations, quality assurance, governance mechanisms, institutional responsibilities, and implementation strategies. Together, these recommendations establish a complete continuum of care from

identification of a potential Brain-Stem Dead patient to lawful certification, subsequent clinical management, and, where appropriate, deceased organ donation.

A central principle underpinning these guidelines is that the determination of Brain-Stem Death is an independent medical and legal responsibility that must never be influenced by considerations relating to organ donation. Certification must be based exclusively on established clinical criteria, statutory requirements, and accepted medical standards. This clear separation between death determination and organ donation preserves professional integrity, safeguards patient autonomy, strengthens ethical practice, and promotes public trust in the healthcare system.

The intended users of these guidelines include clinicians involved in critical care, emergency medicine, neuroscience, transplantation, paediatrics, anaesthesia, forensic medicine, and organ donation, as well as hospital administrators, accreditation bodies, medical colleges, healthcare regulators, State and Regional Organ and Tissue Transplant Organisations, policymakers, and programme managers responsible for implementation of the National Organ Transplant Programme. The document is also expected to serve as a reference for professional education, institutional policy development, quality improvement initiatives, and future revisions of national standards.

Implementation of these guidelines is expected to standardize clinical practice with improve patient safety, reduce unwarranted variation, minimize medico-legal uncertainty, support ethical decision-making, enhance professional confidence, and foster greater public trust in deceased organ donation. In the longer term, uniform adoption of these recommendations is anticipated to contribute to improved utilization of deceased donor organs, expansion of equitable transplantation services, and better health outcomes for patients with end-stage organ failure.

These National Guidelines reaffirm the Government of India's commitment to delivering equitable, ethical, transparent, and evidence-based healthcare. By establishing nationally accepted standards for Brain-Stem Death certification, they provide a strong foundation for strengthening critical care practice, supporting the National Organ Transplant Programme, and advancing a healthcare system that upholds scientific excellence, legal accountability, professional integrity, and respect for human dignity.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1

WHAT IS THE BRAINSTEM: ANATOMY, PHYSIOLOGY AND ITS ROLE IN THE MAINTENANCE OF LIFE

AUTHOR(s):

Dr Madhuri S Kurdi, Dr Ridhima Sharma, Dr. Swagata Tripathy, Dr. Sukhminder Jit Singh Bajwa, Dr. J Balavenkatasubramanian

Department and Affiliation

1. Professor, Department of Anaesthesia, Karnataka Medical College and Research Institute, Hubli, Karnataka.
2. Associate Professor, Department of Anaesthesia & Critical Care, AIIMS, Nagpur, Maharashtra.
3. Vice President, Society of Neuro Critical Care. Prof & Incharge ICU, Department of Anaesthesia & Critical Care, AIIMS, Bhubaneshwar.

4. Secretary, Indian Society of Anaesthesiologists (ISA). Dean/Principal, Prof. Anaesthesiology & Intensive Care, M. M. College of Medical Sciences & Research, Sadopur, Ambala, Haryana.
5. Past President, Indian Society of Anaesthesiologists (ISA). Senior Consultant & Academic Director, Department of Anaesthesia & Perioperative Care, Ganga Hospital & Medical Centre, Coimbatore.

INTRODUCTION

The brainstem is a compact yet indispensable structure that connects the spinal cord with the cerebrum and comprises three divisions: the medulla oblongata, pons, and midbrain. It serves as the principal conduit for ascending sensory and descending motor pathways while housing the nuclei of cranial nerves III–XII and the reticular formation, thereby integrating neural communication between the central and peripheral nervous systems. This chapter describes the anatomical organization of each brainstem component and highlights their functional significance. The medulla contains the respiratory, cardiovascular, and vasomotor centres that regulate breathing, heart rate, and vascular tone. The pons functions as a relay between the cerebrum and cerebellum and contributes to respiratory modulation and cranial nerve reflexes, while the midbrain coordinates visual and auditory reflexes, ocular movements, and pupillary responses through specialized nuclei and fibre tracts.

The physiological role of the brainstem extends beyond neural conduction to the maintenance of life itself. It regulates autonomic functions essential for survival, including respiratory rhythm generation, cardiovascular homeostasis, and cranial nerve-mediated sensory and motor activities. Equally important is the Ascending Reticular Activating System (ARAS), a network of neurons extending throughout the brainstem that maintains arousal and consciousness through projections to the thalamus and cerebral cortex. Damage to these vital systems results in profound neurological impairment and loss of essential life-sustaining functions.

The chapter also establishes the anatomical and physiological basis for understanding Brain-Stem Death, explaining how the irreversible loss of brainstem function abolishes consciousness, spontaneous respiration, and critical brainstem reflexes. By correlating clinical tests with specific anatomical structures, it provides a scientific foundation for neurological assessment and critical care practice.

Overall, the chapter emphasizes that although the brainstem is relatively small, it serves as the central regulator of consciousness, respiration, cardiovascular control, and autonomic homeostasis. A sound understanding of its anatomy and physiology is therefore fundamental for clinicians involved in neurocritical care, anaesthesia, and organ donation and transplantation medicine.

A) ANATOMY OF THE BRAINSTEM

A.1. Overview and General Organization

The brainstem is situated in the posterior cranial fossa, forming the stalk-like connection between the spinal cord and the cerebrum (forebrain). From caudal to rostral it comprises three continuous divisions: the medulla oblongata, the pons, and the midbrain [Figure 1]. The pons is the largest component, and the midbrain the smallest. The midbrain is continuous superiorly with the cerebral hemispheres via the diencephalon, while the

medulla is continuous inferiorly with the spinal cord. Posteriorly, the pons and medulla are separated from the cerebellum by the fourth ventricle.

Three categories of structure define the internal organization of the brainstem throughout its length:

1. Longitudinally arranged ascending and descending fibre tracts, forming well-defined pathways connecting the spinal cord with higher centres.
2. Aggregated neuronal cell bodies forming named nuclei — including cranial nerve nuclei (III–XII), relay nuclei, and autonomic nuclei — some of which are homologues of spinal grey columns.
3. The reticular formation — a diffuse, complex, ill-defined network of interneurons and fibres extending the full length of the brainstem, continuous caudally with its spinal counterpart, and critical for consciousness, motor modulation, and visceral control.

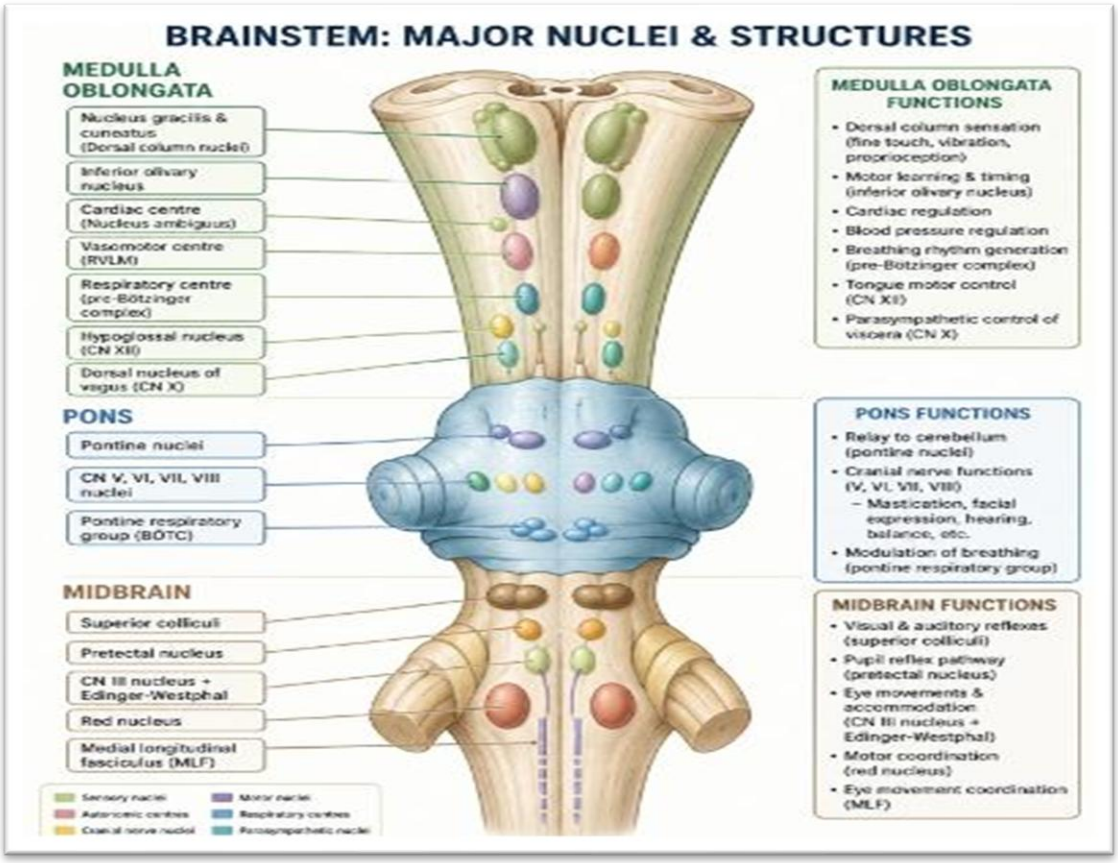


Figure 1:*Brainstem: Major Nuclei and Structures*

A.2. The Medulla Oblongata

The medulla oblongata lies in the anterior part of the posterior cranial fossa within the infratentorial space. It is truncated-cone shaped ('bulb-like'), measuring approximately 3 cm in length, 2 cm in maximal breadth, and 1.25 cm in anteroposterior thickness. Its blood

supply derives from two principal sources: the anterior spinal artery (supplying the medial medulla, including the pyramids and medial lemniscus) and the posterior inferior cerebellar artery (PICA, supplying the posterolateral medulla — the territory of the classic lateral medullary [Wallenberg] syndrome).

The medulla is divided into right and left halves by the anterior and posterior median fissures. The anterior region contains the pyramid (composed of corticospinal and corticobulbar fibres), where approximately 80–90% of fibres decussate at the pyramidal decussation to form the contralateral lateral corticospinal tract. The lateral region presents the olive (produced by the inferior olivary nucleus), from behind which emerge the rootlets of cranial nerves IX, X, and XI. The hypoglossal nerve (CN XII) emerges from the anterolateral sulcus between the pyramid and olive.

The upper, open portion of the medulla contributes to the floor of the fourth ventricle and contains the hypoglossal and vagal triangles, vestibular areas, area postrema, and stria medullaris. Critically, the upper medulla contains the respiratory centre (pre-Bötzinger complex and associated nuclei), the cardiac centre, and the vasomotor centre — the trio of 'vital centres' whose irreversible destruction defines the core of Brain-Stem Death.

A.3. The Pons

The pons lies in the posterior cranial fossa on the clivus, anterior to the cerebellum, forming a bridge between the two cerebellar hemispheres via the middle cerebellar peduncles. It measures approximately 2.5 cm in length and forms the upper half of the floor of the fourth ventricle. Its blood supply is from short, perforating pontine arteries arising directly from the basilar artery — a vascular anatomy that makes the pons exquisitely vulnerable to hypertensive lacunar infarcts and central pontine myelinolysis.

The pons has two functionally distinct components: the ventral (basilar) part, containing the pontine nuclei and corticospinal/corticopontine fibres; and the dorsal (tegmental) part, housing cranial nerve nuclei V–VIII, the pontine respiratory group (Kölliker-Fuse nucleus and parabrachial nucleus), and ascending lemniscal tracts. The trigeminal nerve (CN V) is attached at the lateral surface; the abducens (VI), facial (VII), and vestibulocochlear (VIII) nerves emerge at the pontomedullary junction.

A.4. The Midbrain

The midbrain (mesencephalon) is the shortest brainstem division, approximately 2 cm in length, passing through the tentorial notch. Its narrow cavity — the cerebral aqueduct (of Sylvius) — connects the third and fourth ventricles, making it the site of aqueductal stenosis and obstructive hydrocephalus. Its blood supply comes from branches of the basilar artery, posterior cerebral artery (PCA), superior cerebellar artery (SCA), posterior communicating artery, and anterior choroidal artery — a rich but strategically important anastomotic network.

The midbrain is divided into: the tectum (posterior to the aqueduct, formed by the four colliculi); the tegmentum (between aqueduct and substantia nigra); and the crus cerebri (most anterior, containing the main descending motor tracts). The superior colliculi coordinate reflex eye and head movements to visual stimuli, while the inferior colliculi are relay stations in the auditory pathway. The pretectal nucleus, located between superior colliculus and thalamus, mediates the pupillary light reflex and its consensual component — the anatomical basis for the fixed-pupils criterion in BSD.

The medial longitudinal fasciculus (MLF), which extends the length of the brainstem, integrates conjugate gaze by interconnecting the nuclei of CN III, IV, VI, VIII, and the spinal nucleus of XI. Its bilateral involvement explains the absent doll's-eye (oculocephalic) and absent caloric (oculovestibular) reflexes observed in BSD.

[Flowchart Link: Brainstem_Structural_Overview]

[Flowchart Link: Pupillary_Light_Reflex_Arc]

[Flowchart Link: MLF_Conjugate_Gaze_Integration]

B) PHYSIOLOGICAL ROLE OF BRAINSTEM IN THE MAINTENANCE OF LIFE

B.1. Overview

The brainstem performs functions that are, without exception, essential to survival. These can be grouped into four domains: (i) conduit functions — passage of ascending sensory and descending motor tracts between the spinal cord and forebrain; (ii) cranial nerve functions — origin of cranial nerve nuclei III–XII, subserving motor, sensory, and autonomic functions of the head and viscera; (iii) vital centre functions — rhythmogenesis for respiration and cardiovascular regulation in the medullary reticular formation; and (iv) arousal and consciousness — the ascending reticular activating system (ARAS), whose projections to the thalamus and cortex are indispensable for wakefulness.

Table 1 provides a revised and expanded summary of brainstem components, their roles, and their clinical relevance, including anatomical correlates for each Brain-Stem Death diagnostic criterion.

Brainstem Part	Structural Component	Primary Role	Clinical Relevance
Medulla oblongata	Nucleus gracilis & cuneatus	Relay conscious proprioception to thalamus	Loss → sensory deficits
Medulla oblongata	Inferior olivary nucleus	Relay voluntary motor info to cerebellum	Loss → ataxia
Medulla oblongata	Cardiac centre	Regulates heart rate & contractility	Destruction → cardiac arrest
Medulla oblongata	Vasomotor centre	Controls blood pressure & vessel tone	Destruction → circulatory collapse
Medulla oblongata	Respiratory centre (pre-Bötzinger complex)	Drives inspiratory rhythm; involuntary control of breathing	Apnoea in Brain-Stem Death; confirmed by $PaCO_2$ > 60 mmHg
Medulla oblongata	Hypoglossal nucleus (CN XII)	Motor supply to tongue muscles	Tongue paralysis/atrophy
Medulla oblongata	Dorsal nucleus of vagus (CN X)	Preganglionic parasympathetic to heart, lungs, GI tract	Loss → autonomic instability in BSD
Pons	Pontine nuclei	Relay corticopontine fibres	Disruption → cerebellar disconnection
Pons	CN V, VI, VII, VIII nuclei	Corneal, vestibular, facial reflexes	Absent corneal & caloric reflexes in BSD
Pons	Pontine respiratory group (PRG)	Modulates & patterns medullary output	Essential for normal respiratory rhythm
Midbrain	Superior colliculi	Visual reflex integration	Damage leads to loss of reflex eye/head movement to visual stimuli.
Midbrain	Pretectal nucleus	Pupillary light & consensual reflex pathway	Fixed and unresponsive pupils = BSD criterion; Absent pupillary reflex in BSD
Midbrain	CN III nucleus + Edinger-Westphal	Ocular movements &pupilloconstriction	Absent oculovestibular reflex in BSD

Midbrain	Red nucleus	Inhibitory modulation of muscle tone	Decerebrate posturing when damaged
Midbrain	Medial longitudinal fasciculus (MLF)	Integrates eye, head & neck movements	Absent doll's-eye reflex in BSD
Reticular formation (throughout)	Reticular activating system (RAS)	Maintains arousal & consciousness	Bilateral destruction → coma; core BSD criterion
Reticular formation (throughout)	Analgesia system (PAG + raphe magnus)	Endogenous pain modulation	Absent pain response in BSD

Table 1: *Key Brainstem Components, Their Functions and Clinical Relevance to Brain-Stem Death*

[Flowchart Link: Brainstem_Functional_Domains]

B.2. The Vital Centres

The medullary vital centres — the cardiac, vasomotor, and respiratory centres — are interdigitated within the medullary reticular formation and cannot be isolated as discrete anatomical nuclei; rather, they represent functionally defined zones. The pre-Bötzinger complex (pre-BötC), located bilaterally in the ventrolateral medulla, generates the fundamental rhythmic drive for inspiration. The parabrachial complex and Kölliker-Fuse nucleus in the dorsolateral pons modulate this output. Bilateral destruction of the pre-BötC, as occurs in total brainstem infarction, produces irreversible apnoea — the physiological endpoint confirmed by the apnoea test in BSD determination.

The vasomotor centre (rostral ventrolateral medulla, RVLM) tonically drives sympathetic outflow to maintain vascular resistance. Its destruction leads to profound, refractory vasodilation and neurogenic shock — a major management challenge in the brainstem dead organ donor (see Section D). The cardiac centre (nucleus ambiguous and dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus) modulates heart rate via parasympathetic efferents; its loss contributes to tachyarrhythmias seen after BSD.

[Flowchart Link: Vital_Centres_Respiratory_Rhythm]

B.3. The Ascending Reticular Activating System (ARAS)

The reticular formation, spanning the entire brainstem length, contains populations of neurons that collectively constitute the ARAS. Cholinergic neurons of the pedunculopontine and laterodorsal tegmental nuclei (midbrain–pons junction), noradrenergic neurons of the locus coeruleus (pons), serotonergic neurons of the raphe nuclei (pons–medulla), and

histaminergic neurons of the tuberomammillary nucleus project via the thalamus to the cortex to maintain the waking state. Bilateral lesions of sufficient magnitude anywhere along this system produce coma — operationally defined as a Glasgow Coma Scale score of 3 (no eye opening, no verbal response, no motor response) in the clinical assessment of BSD.

[Flowchart Link: ARAS Pathway]

C) BRAIN-STEM DEATH - CLINICAL CRITERIA AND ANATOMICAL CORRELATES

C.1. Definition and Concept

Brain-Stem Death (BSD) is defined as the irreversible loss of the capacity for consciousness, combined with the irreversible loss of the capacity to breathe, arising from permanent cessation of brainstem function. This is distinct from, though mechanistically related to, whole-brain death (the US and many European standard) and vegetative state (where brainstem functions may be preserved). The UK (1976 Royal Colleges criteria, 1983 Code of Practice) and India (THOTA) definitions both centre on the brainstem as the critical substrate.

The clinical tests for BSD map directly onto the brainstem anatomy described above: each reflex arc tested traverses a specific region of the brainstem and its irreversible absence confirms destruction of that region. Table 2 provides a systematic cross-reference between each clinical test, its anatomical substrate, and the preconditions that must be satisfied before the test is interpretable.

BSD Clinical Test	Anatomical Basis (Brainstem Region)	Key Prerequisite / Threshold
Deep coma — no response to pain	Bilateral RAS destruction (reticular formation, midbrain–pons)	Exclude sedation, metabolic, hypothermia < 36 °C
Fixed unresponsive pupils (no light reflex)	CN II afferents → pretectal nucleus → Edinger-Westphal → CN III efferents (midbrain)	Exclude mydriatics, sympathomimetics
Absent corneal reflex	CN V afferent (pons) → CN VII efferent (pons)	Exclude topical anaesthetics
Absent oculovestibular reflex (caloric test)	CN VIII → vestibular nuclei → MLF → CN III/VI nuclei (pons–midbrain)	Intact tympanic membranes; cold water 50 mL; 60-s observation
Absent gag & cough reflex	CN IX, X → nucleus tractus solitarius/nucleus ambiguus (medulla)	Direct tracheal stimulation required

Apnoea test positive	Pre-Bötzinger complex & respiratory centre (medulla, pons)	$PaCO_2$ rise > 60 mmHg (or ≥ 20 mmHg above baseline) with no respiratory effort; SBP > 90 mmHg throughout

Table 2: *BSD Clinical Criteria Mapped to Brainstem Anatomy*

D) PHYSIOLOGICAL CONSEQUENCES OF BRAIN-STEM DEATH AND BASIS OF TESTS FOR DIAGNOSIS

D.1. Physiological Consequences of Brain-Stem Death

Brain-Stem Death produces a cascade of physiological derangements that, if not actively managed, progressively impair organ viability and ultimately preclude successful transplantation. The pathophysiology begins with the 'catecholamine storm' — a massive, transient sympathetic surge as the dying brainstem loses inhibitory control — producing hypertension, tachycardia, and myocardial injury. This is followed by profound haemodynamic collapse as the RVLM vasomotor centre fails, manifesting as neurogenic shock requiring vasopressor support. Simultaneously, disruption of hypothalamic–pituitary axis connectivity produces: central diabetes insipidus (DI), hypothyroidism, and adrenal insufficiency — the triad of endocrine failure that characterizes the BSD state.

Additional consequences include: thermoregulatory failure (poikilothermia from hypothalamic disconnection); coagulopathy (from release of cerebral tissue thromboplastins); neurogenic pulmonary oedema (from the catecholamine storm); and autonomic instability. Each of these must be anticipated and managed proactively by the anaesthesiologist and intensivist caring for the potential donor.

D.2. The Apnoea Test: Physiological Basis

The apnoea test is the definitive confirmatory step in BSD determination. Its rationale is straightforward: if the medullary respiratory centre (pre-BötC) is irreversibly destroyed, no level of hypercapnic stimulus will evoke respiratory effort. The test is performed after pre-oxygenation with FiO_2 1.0 for 10 minutes to prevent hypoxia. The patient is disconnected from the ventilator (with passive oxygenation via T-piece or tracheal oxygen catheter at 6 L/min). Carbon dioxide rises at approximately 3–4 mmHg/min during apnoea. The test is positive (confirming BSD) when $PaCO_2$ exceeds 60 mmHg (or rises ≥ 20 mmHg above a chronic-hypercapnia baseline) with no respiratory effort, as confirmed on serial arterial blood gas sampling.

The test must be abandoned if systolic blood pressure falls below 90 mmHg, oxygen saturation drops below 85% for more than 30 seconds, or haemodynamic instability occurs. A failed/abandoned apnoea test does not exclude BSD; confirmatory ancillary tests (EEG, four-vessel cerebral angiography, CT angiography, transcranial Doppler, SPECT) may be used in these circumstances or where examination is confounded.

CONCLUSION

The brainstem occupies a central position in human physiology that is entirely disproportionate to its modest dimensions. Its compact architecture integrates the ascending sensory relay nuclei, the vital centres for respiration and cardiovascular control, the cranial nerve nuclei subserving essential head and visceral functions, and the reticular activating system upon which consciousness depends. The clinical significance of this compactness is twofold: small lesions can produce catastrophic multi-system dysfunction, and total irreversible brainstem failure -Brain-Stem Death — is both biologically definable and legally certifiable.

Each clinical test for the diagnosis of Brain-Stem Death maps precisely onto the brainstem anatomy described in this chapter, and a thorough grounding in that anatomy is therefore, not merely academic but directly guides clinical practice. Understanding the role of the brainstem in the maintenance of life is important to understand the physiological consequences of Brain-Stem Death and the various clinical tests for the diagnosis of Brain-Stem Death.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. The brainstem is the vital connection between the spinal cord and the cerebrum and is composed of three parts: medulla oblongata, pons, and midbrain. Despite its small size, it is indispensable for sustaining life by integrating sensory, motor, autonomic, and consciousness-related functions.

2. The medulla oblongata contains the respiratory, cardiac, and vasomotor centres that regulate breathing, heart rate, and blood pressure. The pons acts as a relay between the cerebrum and cerebellum while contributing to respiratory control and cranial nerve reflexes. The midbrain coordinates visual and auditory reflexes, eye movements, and pupillary responses through specialized nuclei and fibre tracts.

3. A defining feature of the brainstem is the reticular formation, particularly the Ascending Reticular Activating System (ARAS), which maintains arousal and

consciousness through connections with the thalamus and cerebral cortex. Damage to this system results in coma and loss of consciousness.

4. The brainstem also serves as the origin of cranial nerves III–XII and provides the major ascending sensory and descending motor pathways linking the brain and spinal cord.

5. Understanding brainstem anatomy and physiology is fundamental to neurocritical care, anaesthesia, and brain-death declaration process, as irreversible failure of brainstem function abolishes consciousness, spontaneous respiration, and essential reflexes required for life. The chapter highlights that its compact organization makes even small lesions potentially catastrophic, emphasizing its central role in maintaining human life.

REFERENCES

1. Garg K, Mittal PS, Chandrupatla M. Brainstem. In: Garg K, Mittal PS, Chandrupatla M, editors. BD Chaurasia's Human Anatomy. Brain Neuroanatomy. 8th ed, volume 4, New Delhi: CBS Publishers & Distributors Pvt Ltd.; 2019. pp.100-116.
2. Singh V. Brainstem. In: Singh V, editor. Textbook of Clinical Neuroanatomy.4th ed,Haryana: Elsevier; 2021.pp.78-94.
3. Hall JE, Hall ME, Vaz M, Kurpad A, Raj T. Pain and temperature. In: Hall JE, Hall ME, Vaz M, Kurpad A, Raj T, editors. Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology. 4th South Asia ed. Haryana: Elsevier; 2021.pp.871-79.
4. Hall JE, Hall ME, Vaz M, Kurpad A, Raj T. The limbic system and behavior. In: Hall JE, Hall ME, Vaz M, Kurpad A, Raj T, editors. Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology. 4th South Asia ed. Haryana: Elsevier; 2021. pp.1017-1025.
5. Standring S. Brainstem. In: Standring S, editor. Gray's Anatomy. 42nd ed. Elsevier; 2021. pp 442-464, e2.

CHAPTER 2

MEDICOLEGAL DEFINITION OF DEATH & BRAIN-STEM DEATH – GLOBAL AND INDIAN PERSPECTIVE

AUTHOR(s):

Dr Senthil Kumar R, Dr. Roop Gursahani, Dr. Kapil Zirpe

Department and Affiliation

1. Addl. Professor, Department of Forensic Medicine, Postgraduate Institute of Medical Education and Research (PGIMER), Chandigarh.
2. Consultant & Section Incharge, Neurology & Palliative Medicine, P.D. Hinduja Hospital, Mumbai.
3. Head, Neuro Trauma Intensive Care Unit, Grant Medical Foundation, Ruby Hall Clinic, Pune.

INTRODUCTION

This chapter examines the evolution of the medicolegal definition of death, with particular emphasis on Brain-Stem Death from both global and Indian perspectives. Traditionally, death was determined by the irreversible cessation of cardiac and respiratory functions. However, advances in intensive care, mechanical ventilation, and resuscitation science and technology enabled artificial maintenance of circulation and respiration despite irreversible destruction of brain function, creating significant ethical, legal, and clinical challenges.

Internationally, the concept of neurological determination of death evolved through landmark developments such as the Harvard Medical School criteria (1968), the Uniform Determination of Death Act (1981) in the United States, and subsequent national guidelines in Europe, Canada, Australia, and New Zealand. While the United States adopts a whole-brain concept of death, the United Kingdom recognizes Brain-Stem Death as the neurological basis for death determination. Despite variations in legal frameworks and testing protocols, the common objective is the accurate recognition of irreversible loss of brain function as death.

In India, the legal recognition of Brain-Stem Death emerged primarily through the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), 1994**,** which defines Brain-Stem Death as the irreversible cessation of all brainstem functions and recognizes it as a legal mode of death alongside cardiopulmonary death. This legislative development facilitated deceased organ donation while introducing neurological criteria for death determination into Indian law. Nevertheless, as Brain-Stem Death is embedded within transplant legislation rather than a comprehensive death determination statute, inconsistencies and medicolegal ambiguities continue to exist, particularly in non-organ donation situations.

A) DEFINITION OF DEATH

A.1. Historical Development of the Medicolegal Definition of Death

For most of the past century, the determination of death was not without controversy. In earlier times, death was commonly inferred by feeling for pulse, listening for breathing, holding a mirror near the nostrils to look for condensation, or checking for fixed pupils.[1] In 1740, Jean-Jacques Winslow proposed that putrefaction was the only sure sign of death. Many physicians of that era agreed to this, but it posed considerable logistical and public health issues.[2] Later, the invention of the stethoscope in the mid-19th century improved bedside certainty, and in the twentieth century, the electrocardiograph made the detection of cardiac activity still more sensitive. So, until the middle of the twentieth century, irreversible cessation of cardiac and respiratory activity remained the practical basis for declaring death.[3]

This position became difficult after the development of modern resuscitative and supportive measures. Successful defibrillation of the human heart in 1947 and the development of positive-pressure ventilation in 1950 made it possible to maintain circulation and breathing artificially in some patients with catastrophic brain injury.[4,5] These advances helped many recoverable patients, but they also created a new clinical and ethical problem: a patient could continue to show heartbeat and circulation while the brain had been irreversibly destroyed.

In 1954, Robert Schwab, a neurologist at Massachusetts General Hospital, described a comatose patient with massive brain haemorrhage on a respirator who had no reflexes, no spontaneous breathing, and no EEG activity, and whom he considered dead despite continuing cardiac circulation. The respirator was removed, and the patient was declared dead.[3] This was the first reported brain death declaration, though the term brain death was not exclusively used. French neurologists Pierre Mollaret and Maurice Goulon later described a similar condition as coma dépassé, meaning "beyond coma." They recognized the hopelessness of the condition, but were reluctant to equate it fully with death.[6]

Again, Schwab did not agree with that cautious approach. In 1963, he proposed a triad of criteria: fixed and dilated pupils with absent reflexes and no spontaneous movements, apnea, and an isoelectric EEG. In 1968, he reported 90 such patients. None survived, and at autopsy, all showed extensive necrosis of brain tissue. These observations strongly influenced later attempts to formulate a neurological criterion for death.[7,8]

In parallel, organ transplantation also developed. In 1954, Joseph Murray in Boston, Massachusetts, performed the first successful kidney transplant between identical twins, and in 1962, he performed a successful cadaveric kidney transplant.[9,10] In the following years, liver, lung, and heart transplantation advanced rapidly. This did not by itself create the concept of brain death, but it certainly intensified the need for a medically and legally workable definition of death, because ventilated patients with irreversible brain injury could become potential donors while still showing circulation.[8]

In 1968, the Ad Hoc Committee of Harvard Medical School published its report, A Definition of Irreversible Coma. The Committee stated that its primary purpose was to define irreversible coma as a new criterion for death. It gave two reasons: the burden created by permanently unconscious patients on families and hospitals, and the controversy that obsolete criteria created in organ transplantation. The report described four elements to diagnose irreversible coma : unreceptivity and unresponsivity, no movements or breathing, no reflexes, and a flat EEG. They proposed the flat EEG as confirmatory evidence, to be performed when available. It also advised repeat testing after twenty-four hours and recommended that physicians involved in transplantation should not make the declaration. At the same time, the Harvard report was cautious in law. It is strongly recommended that the determination of death is a medical issue and does not insist on immediate statutory

change. It also recommended that the death declaration be done before permanently removing the respirator if the patient fulfils the criteria and the physician does not need to wait for cessation of all the signs of life. Otherwise, it creates legal issues, as by all means of law, the person is technically alive before the death declaration.[11]

Legal language was also changing. Black's Law Dictionary, the most commonly used legal dictionary in the United States, in its earliest edition in the 1950s, defined death as "The cessation of life; the ceasing to exist; defined by physicians as a total stoppage of the circulation of the blood, and a cessation of the animal and vital functions consequent thereupon, such as respiration, pulsation, etc." The definition was only in a cardiopulmonary sense. But the later editions, including the latest one (12th edition, published June 2024), include irreversible cessation of both circulatory/respiratory and entire brain function.[12] In 1981, the US President's Commission for the Study of Ethical Problems in Medicine and Biomedical and Behavioural Research released a landmark report on the determination of death. The Commission then gave the subject firmer medicolegal grounding. The report clarified that the death is not the death of cells, it is the death of the organism as a whole, and it stressed that the law on death should be kept separate from organ-donation law and from decisions to withdraw life-sustaining treatment.[13] The major outcome of that report was the Uniform Determination of Death Act (UDDA). It stated that an individual is dead if he or she has sustained either irreversible cessation of circulatory and respiratory functions, or irreversible cessation of all functions of the entire brain, including the brainstem, and that the determination must be made in accordance with accepted medical standards. Thus, whole-brain criteria and traditional heart-lung criteria were placed as alternative ways of recognizing the same event, namely death of the individual.[13,14]

B) DEVELOPMENT OF DEATH DETERMINATION GLOBALLY AND IN INDIA

B.1. International Developments in Death Determination Outside the United States

Outside the United States, France was the first country to come up with a neurological description of death. In 1959, Mollaret and Goulon described coma dépassé in ventilated patients with deep coma, absent reflexes, and irreversible brain destruction. Though they did not equate the deep coma to death, their work laid the foundation for the neurological criteria of death.[6] In the United Kingdom, the development took a different form. The memoranda of the Conference of Medical Royal Colleges in 1976 and 1979, followed by later codes of practice, moved British medicine toward a brainstem formulation. The modern code of the Academy of Medical Royal Colleges states that permanent cessation of brainstem function is the neurological basis for the diagnosis of death. Thus, the British model is not identical to the American whole-brain formulation, even though both aim to identify the same single event of death.[15,16] In other parts of Europe, the broad movement was toward

neurological criteria, but the details differed from country to country. Some countries use whole-brain death, and some use brainstem-oriented practical standards. Also, there is variation in observation periods, the use of ancillary tests, the number and speciality of physicians required, and the precise legal wording used in different jurisdictions.[17]

Canada also became an important contributor. The 2006 Canadian forum recommendations helped standardize neurological determination of death, and the 2023 Canadian clinical practice guideline moved further by adopting a single brain-based definition of death, namely the permanent cessation of brain function as shown by absence of consciousness, brainstem reflexes, and the ability to breathe independently.[18]

Current guidance of the Australian and New Zealand Intensive Care Society makes clear that whole-brain death, not the British brainstem formula, is required for legal determination of death in Australia and New Zealand. The same guidance also recommends that neurological determination of death should be made, whether or not organ donation is being considered. This point is important because it conceptually separates death determination from donation, even when the two later become linked in clinical practice.[19]

B.2. Development of Death Determination in India

In India, the evolution of death determination was slower and more closely tied to transplantation. In routine practice, death was certified on the basis of the permanent disappearance of the usual signs of life, and the Registration of Births and Deaths Act, 1969, defined death as the permanent disappearance of all evidence of life after live birth.[20] Neurological criteria did not enter national legislation as a separate operational framework until the transplant law of 1994.

As intensive care, ventilators, neurosurgery, and transplantation programs developed, the classical cardio-respiratory approach became insufficient in some cases. A patient could have artificial maintenance of circulation and oxygenation and yet have irreversible destruction of brain function with no possibility of recovery. This was the same medicolegal and ethical dilemma that had earlier arisen in other jurisdictions.

The landmark legal change came with the Transplantation of Human Organs Act, 1994, later amended and commonly referred to in expanded form as the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act. Section 2(d) defines Brain-Stem Death as the stage at which all functions of the brainstem have permanently and irreversibly ceased. Section 2(e) defines a deceased person as one in whom permanent disappearance of all evidence of life occurs by reason of Brain-Stem Death or in a cardio-pulmonary sense.[21] The Indian terminology is therefore closer to the British brainstem model than to the American whole-brain wording, although the statutory setting is distinctly Indian and transplant-linked.

According to this act, under section 3(6), Brain-Stem Death must be certified by a board of medical experts. For this purpose, the National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organisation (NOTTO) created Form 10. This form requires two examinations, records the first and second testing times, and, for adults, prescribes a minimum interval of about 6 hours between the two tests. The board ordinarily includes the medical administrator in charge, an authorized specialist, a neurologist or neurosurgeon, and the treating medical officer, with specified substitutions when a neurologist or neurosurgeon is unavailable. [22]

The principal practical consequence of this law was that deceased organ donation became legally workable in India. Once Brain-Stem Death is certified, organs may still remain viable under ventilatory support for transplantation. However, the Indian difficulty is that Brain-Stem Death entered the law mainly through transplant legislation rather than through a fully general law of death determination. Because of that, many commentators have pointed out continuing uncertainty in non-donation cases, and inconsistent practice still persists across hospitals and States. This remains the major medicolegal difficulty in the Indian position.[23] However, from an overall medicolegal point of view, the Indian framework today recognizes two routes to death: cardio-pulmonary death and Brain-Stem Death.

C) Medicolegal Clarifications on Determination of Death in the Indian Context

C.1. Existing Statutory Definition of Death

The standard statutory definition in American law, as reflected in the UDDA, is that an individual is dead if he or she has sustained either irreversible cessation of circulatory and respiratory functions or irreversible cessation of all functions of the entire brain, including the brainstem, and such determination is made in accordance with accepted medical standards. The importance of this formulation is not only the recognition of neurological criteria, but also the fact that death determination is treated as a general medicolegal issue and not as a concept confined to organ donation alone.[14]

Under Indian law, the relevant statutory expressions are narrower and more specific. Section 2(d) of the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act, 1994 defines "Brain-Stem Death" as the stage at which all functions of the brainstem have permanently and irreversibly ceased and have been so certified under section 3(6). Section 2(e) defines a "deceased person" as a person in whom permanent disappearance of all evidence of life occurs by reason of Brain-Stem Deathor in a cardio-pulmonary sense, at any time after live birth. Thus, Indian law does recognize Brain-Stem Deathas a legal mode of death. [Insert citation to THOTA, sections 2(d) and 2(e).][21]

As per the Registration of Births and Deaths Act, 1969 (India), "death" means the permanent disappearance of all evidence of life at any time after live-birth has taken place.[20] This act is a general law that governs the registration of births and deaths in India. The THOTA is a special law which specifically recognize the Brain-Stem Death as a legal mode of death determination. It is well-settled in the Indian judicial system that special law prevails over general law on the specific subject matter (generalia specialibus non derogant). Therefore, it is safe to consider that on the issue of brain death, THOTA prevails as the specific statute. Once the brain death is declared in accordance with THOTA (irrespective of organ donation), such deaths can be registered under the Registration of Births and Deaths Act.

C.2. Determination of Brain Death v/s Organ Donation

The historical evolution of Brain-Stem Death clearly shows that the entity of death declaration is different from organ donation. The Brain-Stem Death should not be reduced to the purpose of organ donation. In principle, the declaration of Brain-Stem Death stands on its own medicolegal basis. Organ donation becomes relevant only thereafter. The decoupling of these two concepts is essential because the person who is declared braindead is already dead in law and medicine; organ retrieval is a subsequent and conditional process, not the basis of the declaration itself. [8,11,13]

As far as the brain death certification is concerned, the declaration should follow completion of the second apnea test. The present Form 10 of NOTTO requires two examinations by the board of doctors at 6-hour intervals, noting the times of both tests and declaring brain death after completion of the second test. Therefore, it is recommended that the time of death be recorded at the completion of the second positive determination.[22]

C.3. Determination of Brain Death v/s Non-Organ Donation

In non-donation cases, it is safe to consider that after the lawful declaration of brain death, continuation of ventilatory support serves no therapeutic purpose. So, after declaration of brain death, ventilatory support may then be withdrawn in accordance with applicable hospital and State procedure. After withdrawal of ventilatory support and cessation of residual cardio-respiratory activity, the body may be released to the relatives in the ordinary manner. The time of completion of the second positive test is to be considered the time of death, rather than delaying it for cardiorespiratory arrest. This later cessation of somatic events after extubation should not be considered as the time of death. If it is considered as the time of death, it will create avoidable legal ambiguity. It would amount to illegal removal of ventilatory support in a legally live patient if not declaring the patient's death after the second test. For that reason, the sounder Indian medicolegal approach is to treat the completion of the second positive determination (second apnea test) as the time of death, and to treat subsequent withdrawal of support and cardio-respiratory arrest as post-

declaration consequences. It is prudent to state here that this recommendation is based on the interpretation of the current medicolegal position and definition of death, rather than a nationwide statutory command, as in India, there is no uniformly informed, all-context brain death law outside the transplant framework.

D) BRAIN DEATH VERSUS NATURAL/TRADITIONAL CIRCULATORY/ CARDIO-RESPIRATORY DEATH

Traditionally, death was determined by assessing irreversible loss of circulatory and respiratory functions. Permanent cessation of circulation and breathing is called circulatory or cardio-respiratory death.[1] This remains the ordinary bedside basis for certifying death in most hospitals and communities. As far as Indian law is concerned, the Registration of Births and Deaths Act defines death as the permanent disappearance of all evidence of life after live birth, while the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act defines a deceased person as one in whom the permanent disappearance of all evidence of life has occurred either by reason of Brain-Stem Death or in a cardio-pulmonary sense. [2,3]

From a pathophysiological point of view, circulatory death begins with the irreversible cessation of circulation, leading to the interruption of oxygen supply to the brain and other vital organs. Unconsciousness occurs rapidly, spontaneous respiration stops, and global ischemia progresses to irreversible loss of organ functions.[4] In contrast, brain death is due to catastrophic and irreversible brain injury, most commonly traumatic brain injury, intracranial haemorrhage, malignant brain edema, hypoxic-ischemic brain injury, etc. In such cases, consciousness, spontaneous breathing, and brainstem reflexes are permanently lost. In these patients, circulation may temporarily persist due to ventilation, vasoactive support, and other ICU support.[5]

Clinical determination differs for circulatory death and brain death. In ordinary cardio-respiratory death, the clinician establishes the absence of response, loss of cardiac and respiratory activity, and determines that these losses are permanent and not reversible by appropriate treatment and resuscitative measures. In contrast, brain death in India is determined in accordance with the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act, through clinical examination for irreversible loss of all brainstem functions.[3]

E) WHOLE BRAIN DEATH VERSUS BRAIN-STEM DEATH

E.1. Definition

The terms brain death and Brain-Stem Death are often used interchangeably by clinicians. Internationally, brain death is an umbrella term for death determined by neurological criteria. The United States adopted the whole brain death concept, which is defined as the irreversible cessation of all functions of the entire brain, including the brainstem. The United Kingdom and India have adopted the Brain-Stem Death concept, which is defined as the irreversible and permanent cessation of all functions of the brainstem.[3,6]

For clinical determination, brain death frequently mandates EEG and other ancillary tests such as cerebral angiography, whereas Brain-Stem Death is determined by clinical examination demonstrating deep coma, absent brainstem reflexes, positive apnea test, and repeat examination after a fixed time interval.

E.2. Comparison of Circulatory Death, Whole-Brain Death and Brain- Stem Death

Feature	Circulatory Death	Whole Brain Death	Brain-Stem Death
Core legal-medical definition	Irreversible cessation of circulatory and respiratory functions	Irreversible cessation of all functions of the entire brain, including the brainstem	Permanent and irreversible cessation of all functions of the brainstem
Physiologic event	Loss of effective circulation and breathing	Global loss of function of cerebrum, cerebellum, and brainstem	Loss of those brainstem functions necessary for consciousness integration, cranial reflexes, and spontaneous breathing
Circulation at time of diagnosis	Absent	May still persist with ventilation and ICU support	May still persist with ventilation and ICU support
Typical bedside setting	Arrest in ward, ICU, ED, or community	Ventilated patient with catastrophic irreversible brain injury	Ventilated patient with catastrophic irreversible brain injury
Clinical determination	No pulse, no breathing, no signs of life; permanence/irreversibility established clinically	Deep coma, absent brainstem reflexes, positive apnea test, with ancillary tests where required by jurisdiction	Deep coma, absent specified brainstem reflexes, positive apnea test, repeat examination by statutory board
Indian legal status	Expressly recognized as death "in a cardio-pulmonary sense"	Comparative international concept; not the statutory Indian phrase	Statutory Indian term under THOTA and Form 10 of NOTTO

Time of death in Indian practice	Time of irreversible cardio-pulmonary cessation	Not an Indian concept	Completion of second positive apnea-test-based certification
Relevance to organ donation	Organ use limited by warm ischemia unless a separate circulatory-donation protocol exists	Permits organ maintenance if support is continued after lawful declaration	Principal Indian legal route for deceased organ donation under current framework

Table 1: *Comparison of Circulatory Death, Whole Brain Death and Brain-Stem Death*

CONCLUSION

The medicolegal determination of death has transitioned from traditional circulatory-respiratory criteria to incorporating neurological parameters due to advancements in intensive care and mechanical ventilation. Globally, frameworks vary between whole-brain death (e.g., USA, Canada, Australia) and Brain-Stem Deathmodels (e.g., UK, India). In the Indian legal landscape, death determination rests on two recognized pathways: cardiopulmonary cessation under general registration laws and Brain-Stem Death defined specifically under the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), 1994. While THOTA establishes Brain-Stem Death through systematic board certification via two tests, a crucial medicolegal imperative is decoupling death determination from organ donation. The time of death must be documented at the completion of the second positive apnea test, regardless of whether organ retrieval occurs or support is withdrawn.

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

1. **Statutory Misalignment:** Brain-Stem Death in India is embedded primarily within transplant legislation (THOTA) rather than an all-context, standalone death determination law, leaving statutory gaps in general medical practice.

2. **Ambiguity in Non-Donation Cases:** Inconsistent protocols exist across states and hospitals regarding the declaration of Brain-Stem Death and subsequent withdrawal of ventilatory support when families do not consent to organ donation.

3. **Global Jurisdictional Discrepancies:** Divergent global standards- such as whole-brain versus brainstem criteria, varying observation periods, and differing requirements for ancillary testing (e.g., EEG or angiography)- create global inconsistencies in death determination.

4. **Time-of-Death Determination:** Practices often incorrectly link the legal time of death to post-extubation cardiac arrest rather than the completion of the second positive apnea test, generating potential legal liability regarding the withdrawal of support.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. Traditionally, death was determined as the irreversible cessation of cardiac and respiratory function. Advancements in medicine, resuscitation technologies, and mechanical ventilation led to the development of the concept of brain death.

2. Now, worldwide, irreversible cessation of brain function is recognized as death, although the legal frameworks and testing protocols differ from country to country.

3. The United States adopted the concept of whole-brain death. The Uniform Determination of Death Act (UDDA), 1981 states that:

   An individual is dead if he or she has sustained either:

   a. Irreversible cessation of circulatory and respiratory functions; or
   b. Irreversible cessation of all functions of the entire brain, including the brainstem.
   c. Determination must be made in accordance with accepted medical standards.

4. The British model differs from the United States. It adopted the concept of Brain-Stem Death. The modern code of the Academy of Medical Royal Colleges states that the permanent cessation of brainstem function is the neurological basis for the diagnosis of death.

5. Canada (Clinical Practice Guideline, 2023) and Australia & New Zealand (ANZICS, 2021) have adopted the whole-brain death concept.

6. In India, the Registration of Births and Deaths Act, 1969, defines death as:

   Permanent disappearance of all evidence of life at any time after live birth has taken place.

7. The Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), 1994:

   a. Section 2(d) defines Brain-Stem Death as the stage at which all functions of the brainstem have permanently and irreversibly ceased.

b. Section 2(e) defines a deceased person as a person in whom permanent disappearance of all evidence of life occurs by reason of Brain-Stem Death or in a cardio-pulmonary sense.

8. From an overall medico-legal point of view, the Indian framework today recognizes two routes of death determination:

    a. Cardio-pulmonary death
    b. Brain-Stem Death

9. Regarding the time of death, completion of the second positive apnea test during Brain-Stem Death determination should be considered the time of death.

10. In India, there is no uniformly applicable all-context brain-death law outside the transplantation framework, and the concept continues to be largely governed through the provisions of THOTA.

REFERENCES

1. Shah Alam Panna Md. Determination of Death: Ethical and Biomedical Update with International Consensus [Internet]. Bioethical Issues in Healthcare. Intech Open; 2022. https://doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.100604.

2. Bondeson J. *Buried Alive: The Terrifying History of Our Most Primal Fear.* New York: W.W. Norton & Company; 2001.

3. Sarbey B. Definitions of death: brain death and what matters in a person. J Law Biosci. 2016 Nov 20;3(3):743-752. doi: 10.1093/jlb/lsw054. PMID: 28852554; PMCID: PMC5570697.

4. Beck CS, Pritchard WH, Feil HS. Ventricular fibrillation of long duration abolished by electric shock. J Am Med Assoc 1947;135(15):985.

5. Bower AG, Bennett VR, Dillon JB, Axelrod B. Investigation on the care and treatment of poliomyelitis patients. Ann West Med Surg 1950;4(10):561–82.

6. Mollaret P, Goulon M. *Le coma dépassé (mémoire préliminaire).*Rev Neurol (Paris). 1959;101:3–15.

7. Alderete JF, Jeri FR, Richardson Jr EP, Sament S, Schwab RS, Young RR. Irreversible coma: a clinical, electroencephalographic and neuropathological study. Trans Am Neurol Assoc 1968;93:16–20.

8. De Georgia MA. History of brain death as death: 1968 to the present. J Crit Care. 2014 Aug;29(4):673-8. doi: 10.1016/j.jcrc.2014.04.015. Epub 2014 Apr 26. PMID: 24930367.

9. Merrill JP, Murray JE, Harrison JH, Guild WR. Successful homotransplantation of the human kidney between identical twins. J Am Med Assoc 1956;160(4):277–82.

10. Merrill JP, Murray JE, Takacs FJ, Hager EB, Wilson RE, Dammin GJ. Successful transplantation of kidney from a human cadaver. JAMA 1963;185:347–53.

11. Ad Hoc Committee of the Harvard Medical School. A definition of irreversible coma. *Journal of the American Medical Association (JAMA).* 1968;205(6):337–340.

12. Garner BA, ed. *Black's Law Dictionary.* 12th ed. St. Paul, MN: Thomson Reuters; 2024.

13. President's Commission for the Study of Ethical Problems in Medicine. *Defining Death: Medical, Legal and Ethical Issues in the Determination of Death.* Washington DC; 1981.

14. Uniform Determination of Death Act. Chicago: National Conference of Commissioners on Uniform State Laws; 1981. Available from: https://lchc.ucsd.edu/cogn_150/Readings/death_act.pdf

15. Conference of Medical Royal Colleges and their Faculties in the United Kingdom. Diagnosis of brain death. *Lancet.*1976;2:1069–1070. Conference of Medical Royal Colleges. Diagnosis of death. *BMJ.*1979;1:332.

16. Academy of Medical Royal Colleges. *A Code of Practice for the Diagnosis and Confirmation of Death.* London; 2008 (updated 2015).

17. Greer DM, Wang HH, Robinson JD, Varelas PN, Henderson GV, Wijdicks EF. Variability of Brain Death Policies in the United States. JAMA Neurol. 2016 Feb;73(2):213-8. doi: 10.1001/jamaneurol.2015.3943. PMID: 26719912.

18. Shemie, S.D., Wilson, L.C., Hornby, L., Basmaji, J., Baker, A.J., Bensimon, C.M., Chandler, J.A., Chassé, M., Dawson, R., Dhanani, S. and Mooney, O.T., 2023. A brain-based definition of death and criteria for its determination after arrest of circulation or neurologic function in Canada: a 2023 clinical practice guideline. *Canadian Journal of Anesthesia/Journal canadiend' anesthésie*, *70*(4), pp.483-557.

19. Australian and New Zealand Intensive Care Society (ANZICS).*The ANZICS Statement on Death and Organ Donation.* Edition 4.1. Melbourne, Australia: ANZICS; 2021. Available from: https://anzics.org/wp-content/uploads/2020/07/ANZICS-Statement-on-Death-and-Organ-Donation-Edition-4.pdf

20. Registration of Births and Deaths Act, 1969 (Act No. 18 of 1969). Government of India.

21. Transplantation of Human Organs Act, 1994 (Act No. 42 of 1994). Government of India.
(Amended as Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act, 2011).

22. National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO), Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India. *Form 10: For certification of brain stem death (under Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Rules, 2014).* Available from: https://www.notto.mohfw.gov.in/WriteReadData/Portal/images/FORM10.pdf

23. Shroff S. Legal and ethical aspects of organ donation and transplantation. Indian journal of urology. 2009 Jul 1;25(3):348-55.

24. Bernat JL. The biophilosophical basis of whole-brain death. Social Philosophy and policy. 2002 Jul;19(2):324-42.

25. Gardiner D, Shemie S, Manara A, Opdam H. International perspective on the diagnosis of death. Br J Anaesth. 2012 Jan;108 Suppl 1:i14-28. doi: 10.1093/bja/aer397. PMID: 22194427.

26. Wijdicks EF. The diagnosis of brain death. N Engl J Med. 2001 Apr 19;344(16):1215-21. doi: 10.1056/NEJM200104193441606. PMID: 11309637.

27. Bernat JL. A defense of the whole-brain concept of death. Hastings Cent Rep. 1998 Mar-Apr;28(2):14-23. PMID: 9589289.

CHAPTER 3

UNDERSTANDING BRAIN-STEM DEATH

A) CAUSES AND MECHANISMS

A.1. Intracranial causes

A.2. Extracranial Causes and Scenarios

B) ANATOMICAL AND PATHO-PHYSIOLOGICAL BASIS OF BRAIN-STEM DEATH

B.1. Central Pathophysiology: ICP, Herniation and Rostrocaudal Progression

B.2. Autonomic Nervous System Response

B.3. Systemic Organ- Specific Changes

AUTHOR(s):

Dr. Swagata Tripathy, Dr. Madhuri Kurdi, Dr. Ridhima Sharma, Dr. Sukhminder Jit Singh Bajwa

Department and Affiliation

1. Vice President, Society of Neuro Critical Care. Prof & Incharge ICU, Department of Anaesthesia & Critical Care, AIIMS, Bhubaneshwar.
2. Professor, Department of Anaesthesia, Karnataka Medical College and Research Institute, Hubli, Karnataka.
3. Associate Professor, Department of Anaesthesia & Critical Care, AIIMS, Nagpur, Maharashtra.
4. Secretary, Indian Society of Anaesthesiologists (ISA). Dean/Principal, Prof. Anaesthesiology & Intensive Care, M. M. College of Medical Sciences & Research, Sadopur, Ambala, Haryana.

INTRODUCTION

Brain-Stem Death (BSD) results from irreversible injury to the entire brain, including the brainstem, culminating in loss of all brainstem functions. A clear understanding of its causes and pathophysiological mechanisms is essential for early and accurate diagnosis and for optimal management of the potential organ donor. Mastering these interconnected pathophysiological pathways bridges the gap between critical care management and organ transplantation.

This chapter reviews the major aetiologies, the common final pathway of raised intracranial pressure (ICP) and cerebral circulatory arrest, and the systemic consequences of Brain-Stem Death.

A) CAUSES AND MECHANISMS OF BRAIN-STEM DEATH

The major etiological categories leading to Brain-Stem Death in order of frequency are[1]:

1. Cardiopulmonary arrest
2. Traumatic brain injury (TBI)
3. Cerebrovascular injury (subarachnoid haemorrhage and intracerebral haemorrhage)
4. Global cerebral ischaemia/anoxia, most commonly after cardiopulmonary arrest.

A.1. Intracranial Causes

In adults, most BSDs arise from primary intracranial pathology that directly increases the intracranial volume and intracranial pressure(ICP). The common causes are listed below: [1]

a. Traumatic Brain Injury: because of high velocity road traffic accidents, fall from heights, assaults, and blast injuries.

Focal lesions are usually acute subdural hematomas, epidural hematomas, intracerebral hematomas, contusions, and diffuse lesions like diffuse axonal injury and diffused brain swelling. Secondary insults include hypotension, hypoxia, hypercapnia, and uncontrolled hyperthermia, which accelerate the edema and raise intracranial pressure, increasing the likelihood of progression to brain death.

b. Subarachnoid Haemorrhage(SAH): commonly due to rupture of intracranial aneurysm, less often from arteriovenous malformation or traumatic SAH. Blood in basal cisterns and subarachnoid spaces impairs the CSF circulation, causing acute hydrocephalus and triggers severe vasospasm, all contributing to elevated ICP and global

ischemia. Re-bleeding, delayed cerebral ischemia, and malignant cerebral oedema are all key mechanisms leading to herniation and Brain-Stem Death in these patients.

c. **Intracerebral Haemorrhage and Intraventricular Haemorrhage:** Because of hypertensive deep haemorrhages- lobar haemorrhages often related to cerebral amyloid angiopathy, haemorrhagic transformation of ischemic strokes, vascular malformation, anticoagulation-related bleeds, mass effects from the hematoma surrounding oedema, intraventricular extension causing acute rise in intracranial pressure, midline shift and trans tentorial or tonsillar herniation. there can be primary brainstem haemorrhages, particularly in the pons, which can destroy the vital centres directly and progress rapidly to brain death. There can be secondary Brain-Stem Death even without global ICP elevation.

d. **Large Ischemic Strokes**, secondary to malignant middle cerebral artery infarction, basilar artery thrombosis, or large cerebral infarct with oedema can produce space-occupying lesions and obstructive hydrocephalus. In malignant hemispheric infarction, cytotoxic oedema in an infarcted territory with non-compliant skull can raise intracranial pressure sufficiently to cause trans tentorial herniation or secondary brainstem ischemia.

e. **Central Nervous System Infectious and Inflammatory Lesions**, like fulminant meningitis, meningoencephalitis, cerebritis, and brain abscess, can lead to diffuse cerebral oedema and hydrocephalus. Encephalitis, particularly viral autoimmune, may cause diffuse cerebral swelling, herniation, especially in children and young adults with relatively tight intracranial compliance.

f. **Space-occupying lesions and tumours**, rapidly expanding supratentorial tumours such as glioblastoma, lymphomas, metastasis with associated vasogenic oedema, intratumor haemorrhage, or acute hydrocephalus. Posterior fossa tumours are Especially dangerous because a small increase in volume can critically compromise the brainstem and CSF pathways, leading to abrupt herniation.

g. **Post-neurological or Periprocedural complications**- malignant cerebral oedema after tumour debulking, venous sinus thrombosis, or massive intraoperative air embolism may precipitate catastrophic increase in ICP and brainstem compression.

A.2. Extracranial Causes and Scenarios

Extracranial causes usually act by producing a period of global cerebral ischemia, anoxia, which can lead to hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy and eventual BSD if perfusion is not rapidly restored. Most common causes of extracranial [1-3] are:

a. **Cardiorespiratory Arrest**: Cardiac arrest from myocardial infarction, malignant arrhythmia, cardiomyopathy, pulmonary embolism, or massive haemorrhages is the most common extracranial reasons for global anoxia. Prolonged no-flow or low-flow intervals due to delayed basic life support, low-quality CPR, or delayed defibrillation correlate strongly with severe hypoxic ischemic brain injury and later progression to BSD.

b. **Primary Respiratory Failure and Asphyxia Events:** Prolonged respiratory arrest from severe asthma or COPD exacerbation, Drug overdoses or neuromuscular disorders, hanging, strangulation, or near drowning can cause global hypoxia leading to anoxic brain injury. In these scenarios, hypoxemia may precede circulatory collapse, and duration of profound desaturation before restoration of airway and ventilation is a major determinant of neurological outcome.

c. **Systemic hypoxia or anaemia:** Severe carbon monoxide poisoning, cyanide poisoning, high-altitude exposure, or massive acute blood loss can all lead to inadequate oxygen delivery to the brain despite preserved perfusion. If prolonged, these states produce diffuse cortical and deep grey matter injury and may progress to brain death, especially when compounded by hypertension.

d. **Hypotension and shock of non-neurological origin**, like refractory septic shock, cardiogenic shock, anaphylaxis, and massive trauma with haemorrhagic shock, can cause critical low cerebral perfusion, particularly when combined with hypoxemia and metabolic acidosis. Protracted hypotension far below the auto-regulatory limits may result in global cerebral infarction and later brain death, even if systemic circulation is eventually restored.

e. **Perioperative and heterogeneous causes**: because of prolonged intraoperative hypotension, accidental disconnection from ventilation, difficult intubation, extended hypoxia, or unrecognized massive haemorrhage, may cause hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy. In some series, perioperative cardiac arrest and postoperative respiratory arrest are significant contributors to anoxic brain injury in otherwise healthy surgical patients.

f. **Paediatric-specific extracranial causes- in children**, non-accidental trauma like near drowning, asphyxia, airway obstruction, choking, and cardiac arrest related to congenital heart disease are common pathways to global anoxia and subsequent brain death. Neonates and infants are particularly vulnerable due to immature cerebral autoregulation and higher baseline metabolic demands, making shorter periods of hypoxia sufficient to cause severe injuries.

Across these extracranial aetiologies the underlying mechanism is interruption of cerebral blood flow and oxygen delivery for a critical duration of time, leading to: ATP depletion, ionic flux failure, cytotoxic oedema, ultimately diffuse neuronal necrosis, particularly in watershed regions and high metabolic grey matter areas. Regardless of the primary insult, the common pathway involves a rise in ICP to levels equal to or above mean arterial pressure, resulting in critically reduced or absent cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP = MAP − ICP), global ischaemia, and neuronal death. Intracranial processes (TBI, SAH, malignant MCA infarcts) cause rapid cerebral oedema, mass effect, and herniation, whereas extracranial causes (prolonged cardiac arrest, inadequate CPR) produce global anoxia, membrane pump failure, cytotoxic oedema, and diffuse neuronal apoptosis within the fixed volume of the skull[2]. Direct neuronal injury can also occur from a neurological cause of cardiac arrest.

[Flowchart Link:Causes_Classification]

[Flowchart Link:Common_Final_Pathway]

B) ANATOMICAL AND SYSTEMIC PATHO-PHYSIOLOGICAL BASIS OF BRAIN-STEM DEATH

B.1.Central Pathophysiology: ICP, Herniation and Rostrocaudal Progression

Once compensatory mechanism, (cerebrospinal fluid displacement into spinal compartment, reduction in the intracranial venous blood volume, minimal skull stretch in the younger patients) are exhausted, any further increase in intracranial volume produces a steep almost exponential rise in intracranial pressure. As ICP approaches and then exceeds the MAP, cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP) falls to critically low values and cerebral blood flow becomes progressively compromised, culminating in complete circulatory arrest of the brain circulatory arrest of the brain. At this point, global cerebral ischemia leads to rapid energy failure, membrane pump dysfunctions, cytotoxic edema, and ultimately aseptic necrosis.

The rise in ICP is often uneven and focal maculation's of regional swelling, creating pressure gradients that drive characteristic herniation syndromes. Uncal herniation compresses the midbrain, third cranial nerve, and posterior cerebral artery, producing ipsilateral pupillary dilatation, loss of brainstem reflexes, and further ischemia of the reticular activating system.

Central herniation causes downward displacement of both cerebral hemispheres and diencephalon through the tentorial incisura, compressing perforating vessels and upper brainstem. Tonsillar herniation forces the cerebellar tonsils through the foramen magnum, compressing the apnoea centres and cardiovascular nuclei, and is often the terminal event in Brain-Stem Death. [4-5]

These herniation patterns reflect a rostral-caudal progression of injury beginning in the supratentorial structures and descending through the midbrain, pons, medulla, to the upper cervical spinal cord. As ischaemia advances caudally, there is a predictable sequence of autonomic changes. In the early phases: there is partial brainstem compromise that triggers the powerful sympathetic activation in an attempt to maintain cerebral perfusion pressure, manifesting as a sympathetic storm with hypertension, tachycardia, and increased vasoconstriction. With continued downward displacement and destruction of sympathetic centres in the medulla and upper spinal cord, sympathetic outflow collapses and a second phase of vasodilation and hypotension ensues. Circulatory instability ensues. The rostrocaudal progression of structural injury thus explains a transition from transient hemodynamic hyperactivity to profound loss of sympathetic tone, a characteristic that establishes Brain-Stem Death.

The physiology of BSD is similar regardless of the aetiology. Inadequate cerebral perfusion and the resultant reduction in brain tissue oxygenation leads to a progressive cascade of further oedema, rise in ICP, a further decrease in cerebral perfusion and eventual herniation, or complete cessation of blood flow, neuronal injury and aseptic necrosis of brain tissue.[3,4] Compensatory mechanisms such as cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) reduction occur to counteract the increase in ICP, but these are overpowered and an exponential rise in the ICP occurs followed by brain herniation. The neuronal injury sequence includes cytotoxic and vasogenic oedema, herniation, and destruction of the brainstem. The pathological process of BD is characterized by hormonal impairment, haemodynamic imbalance, and a systemic inflammatory response. Pathophysiological changes occur as a result of this process in various organ systems of the body.

[Flowchart Link: Herniation_Syndromes]

[Flowchart Link: Rostrocaudal_Progression]

B.2. Autonomic Nervous System Response

A characteristic “sympathetic storm” occurs as the medulla and hypothalamus attempt to maintain CPP by acutely increasing MAP to overcome the elevated ICP. This catecholamine surge (adrenaline, noradrenaline, dopamine) can increase plasma levels several-fold and may start even before clinical brain death is established. The storm, unopposed because of ischaemia of the vagal nuclei, produces intense vasoconstriction, tachycardia, hypertension, microthrombus formation, and widespread organ injury.[5-8]. As the ischaemia progresses down the brainstem and the sympathetic centres become necrotic, the vascular and myocardial sympathetic stimulation drops and a second phase of hypotension ensues, as the ICP outpaces the MAP. The uncontrolled hypotension further impairs end-organ perfusion that resulted during the sympathetic storm. The parasympathetic nervous system also

influences the inflammatory and haemodynamic responses. Vagal stimulation directly decreases inflammation through cholinergic receptors on inflammatory cells.[9] As ischaemia progresses caudally, necrosis of sympathetic centres in the brainstem results in abrupt loss of sympathetic tone, vasodilatation, and a second phase of hypotension, compounded by myocardial depression and catecholamine depletion

[Flowchart Link: Autonomic_Two_Phase_Response]

B.3. Systemic Organ- Specific Changes

a. Cardiovascular Response

The increased ICP can lead to an increased arterial blood pressure in order to ensure an adequate cerebral perfusion pressure. Myocardial dysfunction is said to occur at an incidence of 50%–90% following brain injury. The autonomic storm that occurs in the BSD patient induces myocardial ischaemia and dysfunction due to increased wall stress, coronary vasoconstriction, hypertension, tachycardia, and increased oxygen consumption.[10]The impaired myocardial perfusion results in necrosis of the sub-endocardium, petechial haemorrhage, contraction bands, and coagulative myocytolysis. Eventually, anaerobic metabolism causes increased tissue acidosis and loss of myocardial energy stores. Myocardial dysfunction may also be due to other factors such as increased calcium uptake secondary to increased catecholamine levels leading to myocardial cell death, hypothermia, hypoxemia, reduced triiodothyronine (T3) level, reduced cortisol, and catecholamine induced cardiomyopathy.

The blood pressure of the BSD patient is determined by the patient's cardiac function, peripheral vascular tone, and volume status. After the hypertensive phase, hypotension may follow as a result of sympathetic outflow loss secondary to irreversible destruction of brainstem vasomotor nuclei. **[11,12]** The hypotension may be produced because of catecholamine depletion, decreased cardiac output, myocardial dysfunction, intense peripheral vasodilatation, hypovolaemia, electrolyte disorders, and endocrine changes. If the cerebral perfusion pressure cannot support cerebral cell oxygen demands, the resultant pontine ischaemia can generate the Cushing's reflex, the clinical manifestations of which are bradycardia and hypertension.**[13]**Hypovolaemia may be a result of volume depletion, use of diuretics, bleeding, third space sequestration, and increased urinary loss related to diabetes insipidus. Severe arrhythmias such as atrial and ventricular dysrhythmias, and different conduction blocks are often observed. These may be due to electrolyte disturbances, acid-base status, hypothermia, decreased myocardial contractility, catecholamine use, and the increased ICP.

[Flowchart Link: Cardiovascular_Cascade]

b. Endocrine System

Several endocrine disorders can be encountered in the patient as an aftermath of BSD. The most important amongst these include hypothalamic-pituitary abnormalities and decreased thyroid function. Injury to the hypothalamus and pituitary leads to endocrine dysfunction, with posterior pituitary insufficiency causing reduced anti-diuretic hormone production and diabetes insipidus, manifesting as polyuria, hypovolaemia, hypovolaemic hypernatremia and haemodynamic instability.[1] Reduced adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) level can lead to decreased cortisol level. Low cortisol level can be a cause of hypotension after the sympathetic outflow is lost. However, many studies have revealed conflicting results with regard to cortisol secretion and levels.

Non-thyroidal illness syndrome (NTIS) can be seen. The levels of triiodothyronine (T3)may be decreased after BSD. The reduced T3 levels are often associated with hypotension, decreased cardiac output, anaerobic metabolism, and elevated blood lactate.**[14-18]**The biochemical changes observed in NTIS include modifications of the hypothalamic–pituitary thyroid axis, altered binding of TH to circulating proteins, modified entry of TH into tissues, changes in TH metabolism due to modification of the iodothyronine deiodinases as well as changes in TH receptor expression or function. T3 concentrations fall to approximately 50% of normal within 24 h of BSD and stabilize to approximately 40% over the next 7 days.[19]

c. Pulmonary System

The catecholamine surge causes an acute increase in left atrial and pulmonary capillary pressures, coupled with stress-induced increases in pulmonary capillary permeability, resulting in neurogenic pulmonary oedema with protein-rich alveolar fluid. Additional contributors include fluid overload, impaired lymphatic drainage, and systemic inflammatory activation. [17,18] The sympathetic alteration of capillary permeability causes increased protein and fluid flux across the capillary endothelium. All this can induce pulmonary oedema.

d. Hepatic System

Hypotension, hypovolaemia, massive transfusion, and systemic inflammatory activation all contribute to hepatic dysfunction after brain death. Experimental models demonstrate increased hepatic oxygen consumption and metabolic activity, with leukocyte sequestration in the hepatic microcirculation, Kupffer cell apoptosis, and depletion of hepatic glycogen stores, changes that may influence graft performance.

e. Coagulation System

A severely disturbed von Willebrand factor (VWF)/ A Disintegrin and Metalloproteinase with a Thrombo Spondin type 1 motif, member 13 (ADAMTS13) balance is seen in BSD patients. This can lead to an increased capacity for systemic unregulated generation of

microthrombi.[20] The increased VWF propeptide levels are due to an acute activation of the endothelium. Increased levels of D-dimer that are consistent with a prothrombotic state are seen. A hypofibrinolytic state is also seen as indicated by elevated clot lysis times and elevated plasma levels of PAI-1, suggesting that the clots that are generated are cleared less efficiently. It is said that even though clot lysis occurs, the net accumulation of fibrin occurs due to insufficient clearance of fibrin that is generated. Fibrin-rich clots have been seen in the organs of brainstem dead donors. [19]

f. Gastrointestinal System

Delayed gastric emptying occurs in comatose BSD patients. This can produce problems such as gastric distention, nutritional intolerance, gastroesophageal reflux and resultant pulmonary aspiration.[21] Normal gastric slow waves (<70%) that are seen in comatose patients can be demonstrated in BSD patients. TBI damages jejunal structure and barrier function as early as 3 h after brain injury. Early occurrence of intestinal inflammation and apoptosis after BSD have also been reported.[22]

g. Other pathophysiological changes

The decreased sympathetic outflow in the BSD patient induces peripheral vasodilatation and temperature loss. This leads to hypothermia. Hypothermia reduces heart rate and myocardial contractility, contributing to hypotension. Hypothermia may also be caused by loss of hypothalamic temperature regulation, large volumes of fluid administration, and endocrine abnormalities. Hypothermia can induce coagulopathy, haemolysis, and leftward shift of the oxyhaemoglobin dissociation curve.[23]

Occasionally, diverse types of spinal reflexes and automatisms such as plantar withdrawal responses, muscle stretch reflexes, abdominal contractions, slow turning of the head to one side, Lazarus sign (shoulder adduction, crossing both arms on the chest, moving hands to the neck, and finally falling to the bed), respiratory-like movements, facial myokymia, finger jerks, periodic limb movements can also be seen in the BSD patient. [19,24]

CONCLUSION

Multiple intracranial and extracranial insults can converge on the same final pathway of raised ICP, cerebral circulatory arrest, and irreversible destruction of the brain and brainstem. The ensuing autonomic storm, global inflammatory activation, and endocrine failure produce profound cardiovascular, respiratory, endocrine, hepatic, coagulation, gastrointestinal, and thermoregulatory disturbances that directly affect organ viability. Familiarity with these mechanisms enables timely diagnosis of brain death and optimized donor management, thereby improving outcomes after organ transplantation.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. The major causes of BSD include intracranial pathologies (traumatic brain injury, subarachnoid haemorrhage, intracerebral haemorrhage, malignant cerebral infarction, CNS infections, tumours), or extra-cranial causes leading to hypoxic damage to brain.

2. Regardless of the initiating cause, all pathways converge on a common mechanism i.e. rising intracranial pressure (ICP) reduces cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP = MAP – ICP), leading to global cerebral ischaemia, cerebral circulatory arrest, neuronal necrosis, and irreversible brainstem destruction.

3. Progressive brain herniation (uncal, central, and tonsillar) causes rostro-caudal injury extending from the cerebrum to the brainstem, ultimately abolishing consciousness, respiration, and brainstem reflexes.

4. Brain-Stem Death triggers a characteristic two-phase autonomic response:

    - Sympathetic storm: catecholamine surge causing hypertension, tachycardia, vasoconstriction, and myocardial injury.

    - Sympathetic collapse: vasodilatation, hypotension, reduced cardiac output, and haemodynamic instability due to destruction of brainstem autonomic centres.

5. Endocrine dysfunction, including diabetes insipidus, reduced thyroid hormone levels, and adrenal insufficiency, contributes to electrolyte imbalance, hypovolaemia, and circulatory instability.

6. Multisystem changes involving the cardiovascular, pulmonary, hepatic, coagulation, gastrointestinal, and thermoregulatory systems significantly affect organ function and donor organ viability.

7. Neurogenic pulmonary oedema, coagulopathy, hypothermia, and inflammatory activation are common systemic consequences requiring active management.

8. Spinal reflexes and automatisms may occasionally persist despite Brain-Stem Death and should not be mistaken for evidence of preserved brain function.

9. Understanding these pathophysiological mechanisms is essential for accurate diagnosis, optimal donor management, preservation of organ quality, and improved transplantation outcomes.

REFERENCES

1. Kaur M, Prakash K, Srivastav S, Gadhvi MA, Sharma R. 9-Crosstalk between brain and the endocrine system. Brain and organ communication 2025; 155-76.

2. Drake M, Bernard A, Hessel E. Brain Death. Surg Clin North Am 2017;97:1255-73.

3. Sandroni C, Scarpino M, Antonelli M. Brain Death After Cardiac Arrest: Pathophysiology, Prevalence, and Potential for Organ Donation. In: Vincent, JL. (eds) Annual Update in Intensive Care and Emergency Medicine 2020. Annual Update in Intensive Care and Emergency Medicine. Springer, Cham. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-37323-8_37.

4. Starr R, Tadi P, Pfleghaar N. Brain Death. [Updated 2024 Mar 21]. In: Stat Pearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): Stat Pearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK538159/

5. Nair-Collins M, Joffe AR. Hypothalamic function in patients diagnosed as brain dead and its practical consequences. Handb Clin Neurol 2021;182:433-446.

6. Linos K, Fraser J, Freema W, Foot C.Care of the brain-dead organ donor. Current anaesthesia & critical care 2007; 18: 284-94.

7. Power BM, Van Heerden PV. The physiological changes associated with brain death-current concepts and implications for treatment of the brain dead organ donor. Anaesth Intensive Care 1995; 23: 26-36.

8. Powner DJ, Hendrich A, Nyhuis A, Strate R. Changes in serum catecholamine levels in patients who are brain dead. J Heart Lung Transplant 1992;11:1046-53.

9. Hoeger S, Bergstraesser C, Selhorst J, Fontana J, Birck R, Waldherr R, et al. Modulation of brain dead induced inflammation by vagus nerve stimulation. Am J Transplant 2010;10:477-89.

10. Delgado DH, Rao V, Ross HJ. Donor management in cardiac transplantation. Can J cardiok 2002; 18: 1217-23.

11. White M, Wiechmann RJ, Roden RL, Hagan MB, Wollmering MM, et al. Cardiac beta-adrenergic neuroeffector systems in acute myocardial dysfunction related to brain injury. Evidence for catecholamine-mediated myocardial damage. Circulation 1995; 92: 2183-89.

12. Smith M. Physiologic changes during brainstem death-lessons for management of the organ donor. J Heart Lung Transplant 2004; 23: S217-22.

13. Novitzy D. Detrimental effects of brain death on the potential organ donor. Transplant Proc 1997; 29: 3770-72.

14. Sztark F, Thicoipe M, Lassie P, Petitjean ME, Dabadie P. Mitochondrial energy metabolism in brain-dead organ donors. Ann Transplant 2000; 5: 41-44.

15. Rosendale JD, Kauffman HM, McBride MA, Chabalewski FL, Zaroff JG, et al. Hormonal resuscitation yields more transplanted hearts, with improved early function. Transplantation 2003; 75: 1336-41.

16. Szostek M, Gaciong Z, Danielelewicz R, Lagiewska P, Pacholczyk M, et al. Influence of thyroid function in brain stem death donors on kidney allograft function. Transplant Proc 1997;29: 3354-56.

17. Macmillan CS, Grant IS, Andrews PJ. Pulmonary and cardiac sequelae of subarachnoid haemorrhage: time for active management? Intensive Care Med 2002; 28: 1012-23.

18. Sutherland AJ, Ware RS, Winterford C, Fraser JF. The endothelin axis and gelatinase activity in alveolar macrophages after brain-stem death injury: a pilot study. J Heart Lung transplant 2007; 26: 1040-47.

19. Issac E, Venugopalan S. Pathophysiology of brain stem death. Amrita J Med 2020;16:50-4.

20. Lisman T, Leuvenink HG, Porte RJ, Ploeg RJ. Activation of hemostasis in brain dead organ donors: An observational study. J Thromb Haemost 2011;9:1959-65.

21. Bor C, Bordin D, Demirag K, Uyar M. The effect of brain death and coma on gastric myoelectrical activity. Turk J Gastroenterol 2016;27:216-20.

22. Koudstaal LG, 't Hart NA, Ottens PJ, van den Berg A, Ploeg RJ, van Goor H, et al. Brain death induces inflammation in the donor intestine. Transplantation 2008;86:148-54.

23. Domi R, Sula H, Ohri I, Laho H. Pathophysiologic Changes after brain death and organ preservation: the intensivist's and anesthesiologist's role. J Anesthe Clinic Res 2013;4:1000302. doi:10.4172/2155-6148.1000302.

24. Beckmann YY, Ciftçi Y, Seçil Y, Eren S. Fasciculations in brain death. Crit Care Med 2010;38:2377-8.

CHAPTER 4

DIAGNOSIS & CRITERIA FOR DECLARATION OF BRAIN-STEM DEATH

AUTHOR(s):

Dr. Santvana Kohli Arora , Dr. Anirban Hom Choudhuri, Dr. Pradip Kumar Bhattacharya, Dr. Amlendu Yadav, Dr. Deepak Gupta, Sh. Arpit Anant Mishra, Dr Bharat Jagiasi

Department and Affiliation

1. Professor, Department of Critical Care Medicine, VMMC & Safdarjung Hospital, New Delhi.

2. Director, Professor & Head, Dept. of Critical Care Medicine, VMMC & Safdarjung Hospital, New Delhi.
3. HOD Department of Critical Care Medicine, In-Charge Trauma Centre, Dean Research, PhD Coordinator, Rajendra Institute of Medical Sciences (RIMS), Ranchi. OSD to the Health Department, Jharkhand Government. Chair Research Committee, Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine. Former National representative European Society of Critical Care Medicine. Former President Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine. Former Vice Chancellor, Indian College of Critical Care Medicine. Former Chancellor, Indian College of Critical Care Medicine.
4. Professor and HOD, Department of Emergency Medicine, ABVIMS & Dr. RML Hospital, New Delhi.
5. Professor and Consultant Neurosurgeon, Department of Neurosurgery, AIIMS & associated JPN Apex Trauma Centre, New Delhi.
6. Additional Legal Advisor, Deptt. of Legal Affairs, Ministry of Law & Justice, Shastri Bhawan, New Delhi.
7. Former General Secretary, Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine (ISCCM). Director of Critical Care Department, Kokilaben Dhirubhai Ambani Hospital, Navi Mumbai.

INTRODUCTION

This chapter provides a comprehensive, protocol-driven approach to the diagnosis, testing, and certification of Brain-Stem Death (BSD) in the ICU. It also outlines legal certification procedures, documentation requirements, and roles of healthcare professionals. Emphasis is placed on ethical practice, transparency, and sensitive communication with families to ensure medicolegal validity and public trust.

Brain-Stem Death (BSD), also termed Brain Death (BD) is defined as the irreversible cessation of all functions of the brainstem and is legally recognized in India under THOTA. Accurate diagnosis requires strict adherence to prerequisites, exclusion of reversible causes, detailed clinical examination of brainstem reflexes, and apnoea testing. Ancillary tests are reserved for inconclusive cases. In the intensive care unit (ICU), patients with catastrophic brain injury may continue to demonstrate cardiac activity and systemic organ function due to ongoing artificial ventilatory and pharmacological support. This dissociation between neurological death and preserved somatic function poses substantial diagnostic, ethical, and legal challenges for clinicians. Accurate determination of BSD is therefore critical to ensure appropriate withdrawal of life-sustaining therapies, provide medicolegal clarity, and facilitate deceased organ donation.

In India, Brain-Stem Death has legal recognition under the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), 1994, with significant amendments in 2011. However, unlike in many Western countries where death by neurological criteria is universally accepted as equivalent to death, in India the diagnosis of BSD is often closely associated with the organ donation process. This contextual linkage necessitates exceptional standards of clinical rigor, procedural transparency, and sensitive communication with patients' families.

This chapter aims to provide a comprehensive, protocol-driven approach to the determination of Brain-Stem Death, aligned with Indian legal mandates and contemporary international scientific principles, with particular emphasis on practical application in the ICU setting.

A) DETERMINATION OF DEATH BASED ON NEUROLOGICAL CRITERIA

A.1. Clinical Conditions Associated with High Risk

An evaluation for brain death should be considered in patients who have suffered a massive, irreversible brain injury of identifiable cause, such as:

1. Severe traumatic brain injury with refractory intracranial hypertension
2. Malignant middle cerebral artery infarction

3. Massive intracerebral or subarachnoid haemorrhage
4. Hypoxic–ischemic encephalopathy following cardiac arrest
5. Fulminant encephalitis or acute hepatic failure with cerebral oedema

Early identification enables optimization of physiological parameters, logistical preparedness, and ethical clarity.

B) ANTICIPATING IMPENDING BRAIN DEATH: STEPS TOWARDS A TIMELY AND EFFICIENT DECLARATION PROCESS – ENHANCING PREPAREDNESS AND STREAMLINING PROCEDURES FOR BRAIN DEATH DETERMINATION

Early anticipation of progression to Brain-Stem Death allows timely planning, avoidance of unnecessary delays, and structured family communication.

C) SUSPECTING, IDENTIFICATION AND DIAGNOSIS OF BRAIN-STEM DEATH

Brain-Stem Death should be suspected in a deeply comatose, mechanically ventilated patient with a known irreversible brain insult and absence of brainstem reflexes. Diagnosis is clinical and must follow a standardized and reproducible protocol. Testing should be initiated only after physiological stabilization and exclusion of confounders.

The brainstem integrates consciousness, respiration, cardiovascular control, and cranial nerve reflexes. Its irreversible destruction signifies loss of the organism as a whole. Brain-Stem Death is therefore biologically equivalent to death, irrespective of ongoing mechanical ventilation or pharmacological support.

Figure 1: *Conceptual Framework of Brain-Stem Death*

D) BRAIN-STEM DEATH TESTING PROTOCOL

D.1. Prerequisites for Testing

All prerequisites must be fulfilled prior to clinical testing.

Parameter	Requirement
Temperature	Core temperature ≥ 36°C
Blood pressure	SBP ≥ 100 mmHg or MAP ≥ 60 mmHg without or with use of vasoactive drugs
Oxygenation	SpO_2 ≥ 94%
Metabolic status	No severe electrolyte or acid–base disturbance - pH 7.20 – 7.50 - Sodium levels 125 – 159 meq/L - Potassium level ≥ 3.0 meq/L - No hypoglycemia
Drugs	Absence of sedatives, alcohol, toxins, neuromuscular blockers (wait for 5 half-lives of sedative agents before testing)

Neuromuscular function	Train-of-four response present (only required when in doubt of residual paralysis)

Table 1: *Prerequisites for Brain-Stem Death Testing*

AGENT	MECHANISM OF ACTION	HALF-LIFE (t1/2)
Propofol	Potentiates **GABA-A receptor** → ↑ chloride influx → neuronal hyperpolarization	• Context-sensitive: **short (10–40 min)** after brief infusion • Prolonged infusion → longer (fat redistribution)
Dexmedetomidine	**α2-adrenergic agonist** (locus coeruleus) → ↓ sympathetic outflow	**~2 hours**
Midazolam	Enhances **GABA-A receptor activity** → anxiolysis, sedation	**1.5–3 hours** (but prolonged in ICU due to active metabolites)
Diazepam	**GABA-A receptor potentiation** → increases **frequency of chloride channel opening**	• **20–50 hours** • Active metabolites (e.g., desmethyldiazepam) → **prolonged effect up to 100 hours**
Thiopentone	**Enhances GABA-A receptor activity**	6–12 hours for prolonged infusion
Ketamine	**NMDA receptor antagonism** → dissociative anaesthesia	**2–3 hours**
Succinylcholine	**Depolarizing NM (neuro-muscular) blocker** → persistent activation of nicotinic ACh (acetylcholine) receptors	**~3–5 minutes** (rapid hydrolysis by plasma cholinesterase)
Rocuronium	Competitive **nicotinic receptor antagonist**	**~60–90 minutes**
Vecuronium	Competitive nicotinic receptor blockade	**~60–80 minutes**
Cis-atracurium	Competitive nicotinic receptor antagonist	**~30–40 minutes**

Table 2: *Commonly Used Sedatives and Paralytics in ICU, with their Half-Lives*

D.2. Step-by-Step Clinical Examination

a. Step I- Irreversible Coma/Loss of Consciousness

Coma must be confirmed with complete absence of motor response to deep central painful stimuli within any cranial nerve distribution (e.g. no response to the supraorbital pressure). Spinal reflexes (e.g., triple flexion, Lazarus sign) may be present and must not be misinterpreted as brain activity.

b. Step II - Brainstem Reflex Testing and Their Interpretation

Reflex	Cranial Nerves	Expected Finding
Pupillary light reflex	II, III	Fixed pupils, no response
Corneal reflex	V, VII	Absent blink
Oculocephalic reflex	III, IV, VI, VIII	No eye movement
Oculovestibular reflex	III, IV, VI, VIII	No deviation with cold water
Gag reflex	IX, X	Absent pharyngeal response
Cough reflex	X	No response to tracheal suction

Table 3:*Brainstem Reflexes and Cranial Nerve Correlates*

1. **Pupillary light reflex** - Pupils are dilated, fixed and do not react to light
2. **Corneal reflex** is absent
3. No **Gag/Pharyngeal reflex** to stimulation of pharynx
4. No **Cough reflex** to suction catheter in the trachea
5. **Doll's head eye movements (oculocephalic reflex)** - absence of conjugate deviation of eyes when head is fully rotated to one side. Performed only when there is no fracture or instability of the cervical spine.
6. **Vestibulo-ocular reflex/oculovestibular reflex/caloric testing** is absent - No eye movements after installation of 50 ml of ice-cold water into each external acoustic meatus for 1 min. A gap of at least 5 minutes should be maintained between testing each ear to allow for re-equilibration.

Key Challenges and Pitfalls:

1. **Anophthalmia or severe trauma:** Inability to assess pupillary light reflex or corneal reflex.
2. **Prior cataract surgery:** May make pupillary light reflex testing unreliable.
3. **Extra-ocular muscle entrapment (e.g., from skull base fractures):** Can prevent normal eye movement during oculocephalic or oculovestibular testing.
4. **Ear Canal Obstructions:** The oculovestibular (cold caloric) test requires an intact tympanic membrane and a clear external auditory canal free of wax or other obstructions. Otoscopy is essential to visualize the tympanic membrane and ensure it is intact before irrigation.
5. **Cervical Spine Instability:** The oculocephalic reflex (Doll's eye maneuver) is contraindicated if there is a known or suspected fracture or instability of the cervical spine.
6. **Facial Trauma:** Can hinder the assessment of facial motor responses to pain or the corneal reflex.
7. **Anatomical or Pre-existing Injury:** Damage to the ear, such as an eardrum perforation, labyrinthine injury, or previous disease, can lead to false-positive results (absence of movement despite no Brain-Stem Death).
8. **Confounding Medications:** The use of sedatives, anticonvulsants, tricyclic antidepressants, or neuromuscular blockers can suppress the vestibular reflex, mimicking brain death.
9. **Inadequate Stimulus:** Failure to use sufficient cold water (less than 30°C) or not waiting long enough to observe for delayed movement (at least 1 minute) can result in a false determination of absence.
10. **Orbital/Facial Edema:** Severe facial trauma, swelling, or edema of the eye can make it physically impossible to open the eyelids to observe for eye movements.

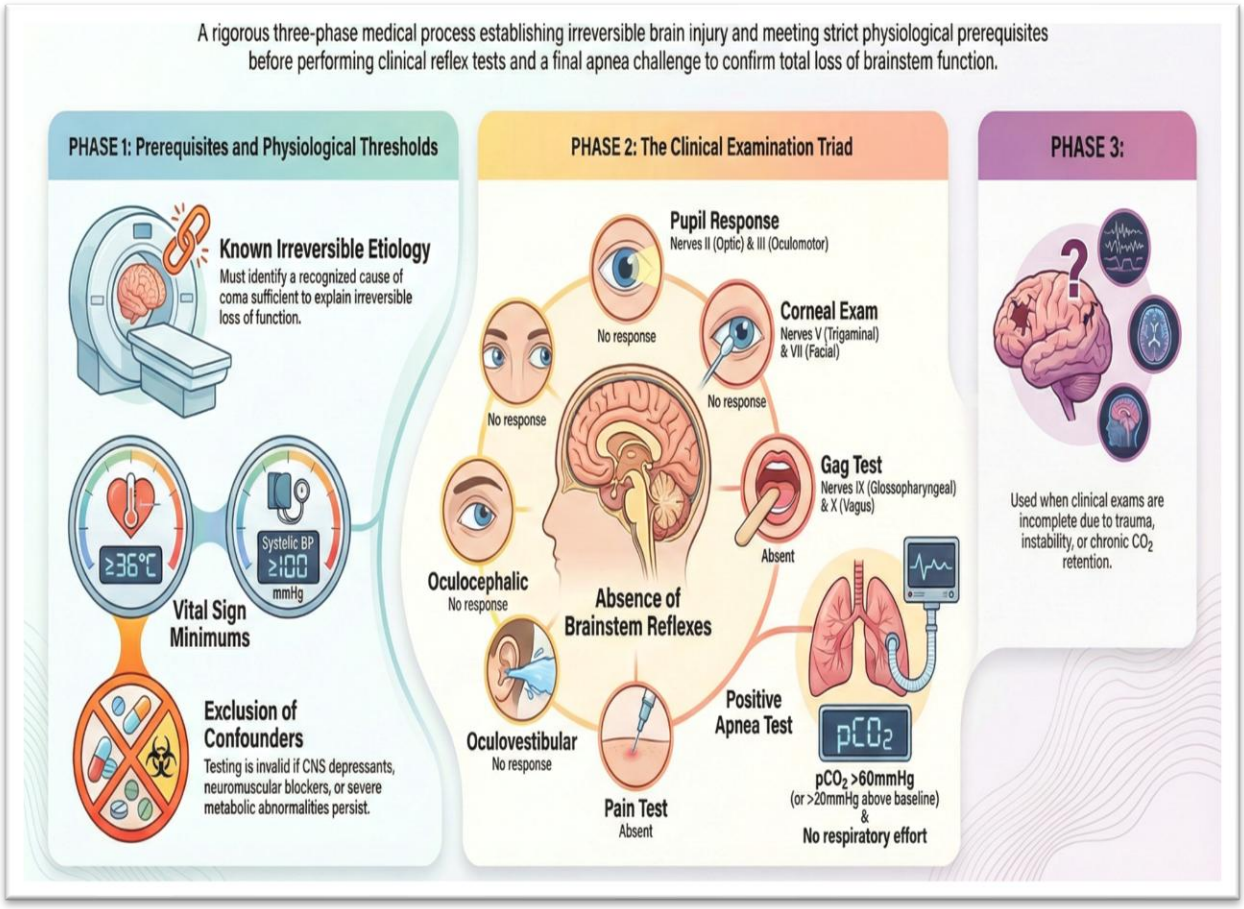


Figure 2: *Diagrammatic Representation of Brainstem Reflex Testing*

c. Step III - Apnoea Testing

This test is the core of BSD testing and is defined as absence of respiratory drive in presence of CO2 challenge. Apnoea testing confirms absence of medullary respiratory drive. It is a risky maneuver and due care has to be taken to ensure safety of the patient during the test. If any instability is appreciated during the test, it should be aborted and patient placed back on the ventilator.

Procedure:

1. Perform a baseline arterial blood gas (pH, PaO2, PaCO2).
2. Preoxygenate with 100% oxygen for 10 min.
3. Place a catheter through the endotracheal tube close to the level of the carina and deliver 100% O2 at 4-6 L/min. The insufflation catheter outer diameter is recommended to be < 70% of the endotracheal tube inner diameter.

4. Look closely for respiratory movements for 8-10 min. Respiration is defined as abdominal or chest excursions. Patients with an intact brainstem can be expected to breathe within the first few minutes, as hypercarbia develops at a rate of 3 mmHg/min.

5. Abort if SBP falls to < 90 mmHg or if oxygen saturation measured by pulse oximetry is < 85% for more than 30seconds.

6. If no respiratory drive is observed, repeat blood gas analysis after approximately 8 min.

7. If respiratory movements are absent and arterial PaCO2 is 60 mmHg or more AND 20 mmHg above baseline, the apnoea test result is positive (i.e. supports the clinical diagnosis of brain-death).

8. If the test is inconclusive but the patient is hemodynamically stable during the procedure, it may be repeated for a longer period (10-15 min).

9. Contraindications to apnoea testing include arterial hypotension (SBP < 90 mmHg), hypoxemia (PaO2 < 90 mmHg) and severe acidosis (pH < 7.20). If present, these abnormalities should be corrected before the test.

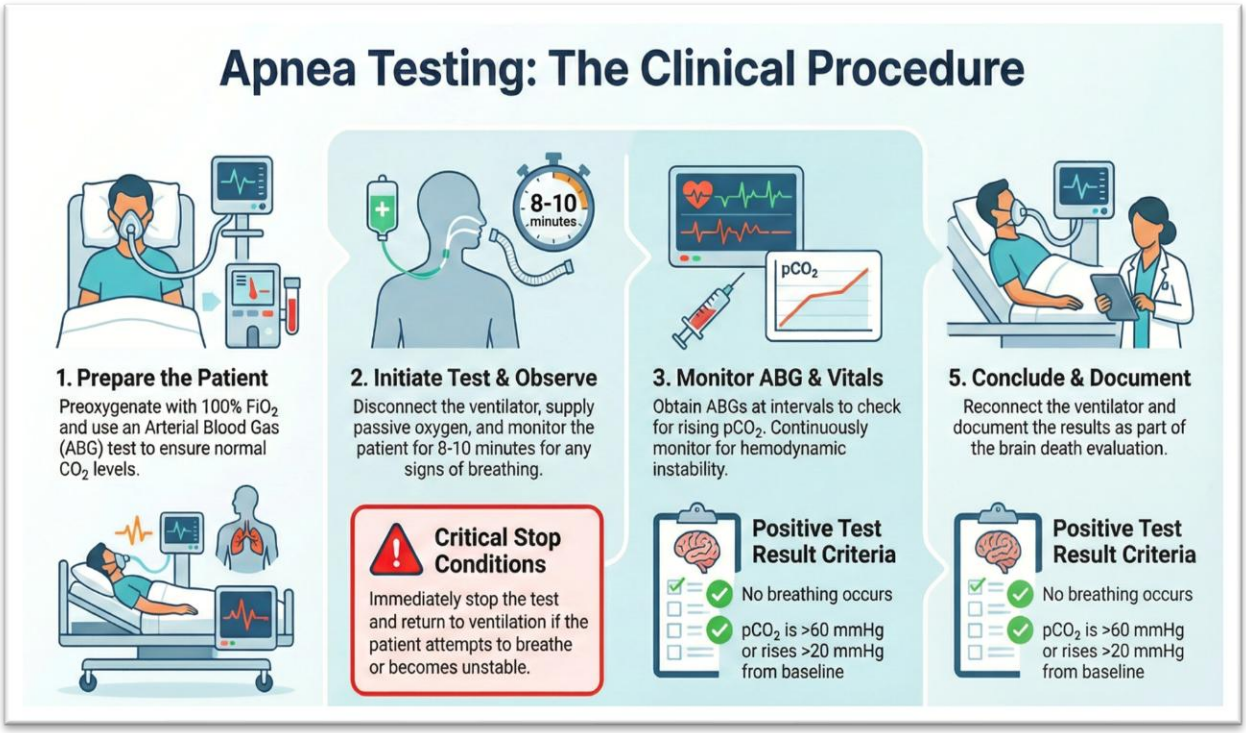


Figure 3: *Apnoea Testing Flowchart for Brain-Stem Death Determination*

d. Step IV - Ancillary (Confirmatory) Tests- (If Applicable)

The diagnosis is based only on the clinical examination. A neurophysiological or imaging study neither form part of the diagnostic requirements nor is legally required. Confirmatory tests may however be carried out if the panel of doctors is in doubt or disagreement of the diagnosis. Ancillary tests are indicated when clinical testing or apnoea testing cannot be safely or completely performed.

Test	Principle	Limitations
Cerebral angiography	No cerebral blood flow	Invasive
CT angiography	Absence of intracranial flow	False positives
Radionuclide scan	No cerebral perfusion	Limited availability
Transcranial Doppler	Systolic spikes/reversal	Operator dependent

Table 4: *Ancillary Tests in Brain-Stem Death*

D.3. Brain Death Determination after Targeted Temperature Management

In post–cardiac arrest patients treated with targeted temperature management:

1. Testing must be deferred until rewarming to normothermia
2. Sedative clearance may be prolonged
3. A minimum observation period of 24 hours after rewarming is recommended

E) CRITERIA FOR BRAIN-STEM DEATH CERTIFICATION

E.1. Clinical Criteria

BSD is established when there is-

1. Irreversible loss of consciousness (coma)
2. Irreversible absence of all brainstem reflexes
3. Irreversible loss of the capacity to breathe independently (absence of triggering on mechanical ventilation)

E.2. Exclusion of Reversible Conditions

Conditions mimicking Brain-Stem Death must be excluded:

1. Drug intoxication
2. Metabolic or endocrine encephalopathy
3. Neuromuscular disorders (e.g., Guillain–Barré syndrome)

4. Locked-in syndrome

E.3. Legal Brain-Stem Death Declaration Process

1. India follows the UK concept of Brain-Stem Death and the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA) was passed by Indian parliament in 1994 which legalized the Brain-Stem Death. In 2014, THOT rules were laid down which describe brain-death certification procedure.
2. Under THOTA, Brain-Stem Death must be certified by a board comprising:
    - Primary treating doctor/registered medical practitioner.
    - Authorized Specialist: An expert nominated by the medical administrator from a panel approved by the Appropriate Authority (surgeon/physician/intensivist).
    - Medical administrator-in-charge of the hospital/institute.
3. Key Requirements for the Committee:
    - Independent Team: The members must not be part of the transplant team that will receive the organs.
    - Alternatives: If a neurosurgeon or neurologist is not available, a surgeon or physician and an intensivist/anaesthetist nominated by the medical administrator can be co-opted to the panel.
4. Procedure: The certification requires two stages, with a minimum 6-hour interval between tests.

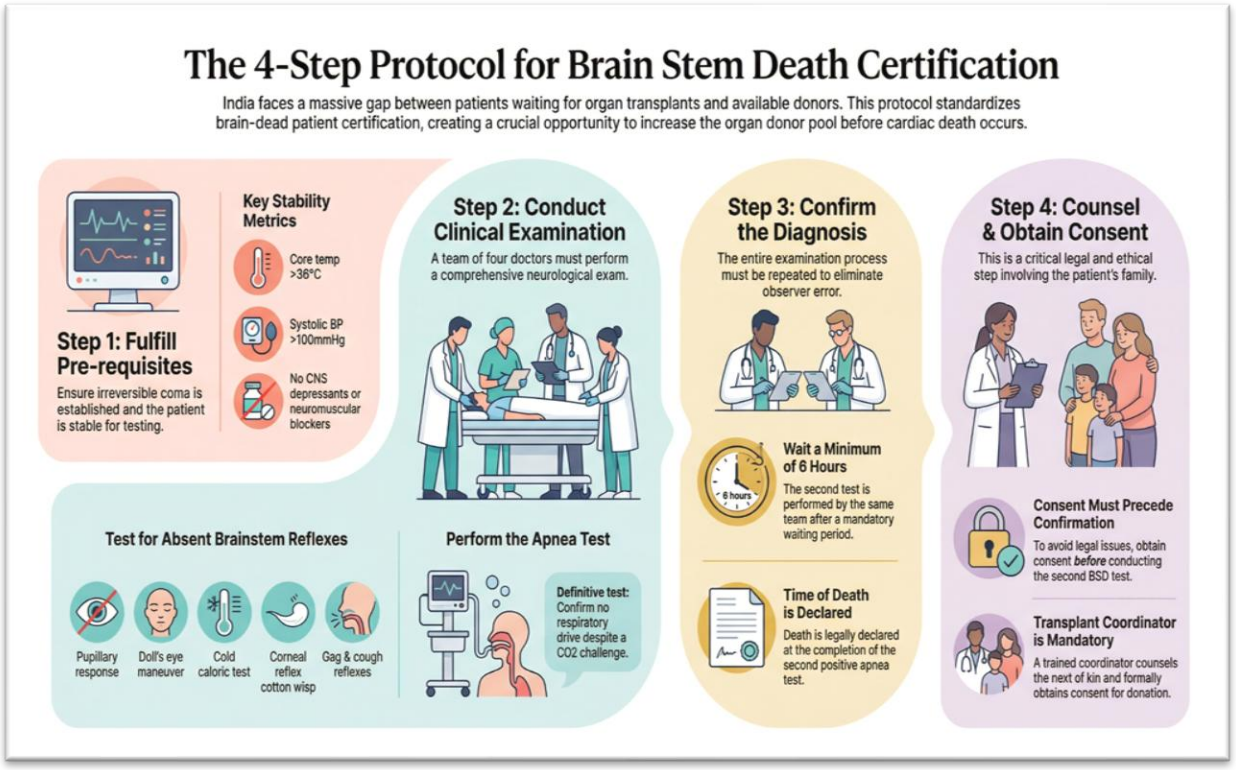


Figure 4: *Legal Workflow for Brain-Stem Death Declaration under THOTA (India)*

E.4. Required Documentation and Forms

Mandatory documentation includes:

1. Brain-Stem Death certification (Form 10 – THOTA)
2. Apnoea test record
3. Ancillary test reports (if applicable)
4. Time and date of death
5. Signatures of all certifying members

E.5. Roles and Responsibilities of Healthcare Professionals

1. **Intensivist**: Identification, stabilization, coordination of testing
2. **Neurologist/Neurosurgeon**: Independent neurological assessment
3. **Nursing staff**: Monitoring, test assistance, family support
4. **Transplant coordinator**: Counselling and coordination (where applicable)

Ethical and Communication Considerations:

1. Brain-Stem Death must be explained clearly as death, not coma. Compassionate, culturally sensitive communication is essential, particularly in the Indian context where misconceptions are common.
2. Whether relative (surrogate/family) consent is required for an apnea test, which is used to diagnose death by neurologic criteria (brain death), is a subject of active debate, though the current consensus in most jurisdictions is that it is not legally required.
3. While not standard worldwide, video recording of BSD testing procedure acts as an official record of the legal certification process in specific locations, helping to confirm that all required protocols were followed.

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

1. One of the major difficulties is the identification and correction of reversible conditions that can mimic Brain-Stem Death, such as drug intoxication, residual sedative or neuromuscular blocking agents, severe metabolic disturbances, hypothermia, and shock.
2. Conducting a reliable apnoea test may be challenging in patients with severe hypoxemia, hemodynamic instability, or high ventilatory requirements, often necessitating modification of the procedure or the use of ancillary investigations.
3. Variability in physician training and experience can lead to inconsistencies in the interpretation of neurological findings and adherence to testing protocols.
4. Limited availability of ancillary tests, particularly in resource-constrained settings, further complicates the diagnostic process when clinical testing cannot be completed.
5. In addition, cultural, religious, and emotional factors frequently contribute to family reluctance in accepting the diagnosis of Brain-Stem Death, especially when mechanical ventilation maintains cardiac activity.
6. Delays in certification due to administrative procedures, medicolegal concerns, and lack of awareness among healthcare professionals may adversely affect timely organ donation.

Addressing these challenges requires standardized training, institutional protocols, public education, and strict compliance with national guidelines.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. BSD is the irreversible loss of all brainstem functions and is legally recognized as death in India under THOTA.
2. Diagnosis is primarily clinical, requiring a known irreversible brain injury and exclusion of reversible mimics such as hypothermia, metabolic derangements, drug intoxication, and residual neuromuscular blockade.
3. Clinical testing must show deep unresponsive coma, absent brainstem reflexes, and absence of spontaneous respiration, with a standardized, closely monitored apnoea test as a key component.
4. Ancillary tests are reserved for situations where elements of the clinical exam or apnoea test cannot be safely or reliably completed or interpreted.
5. Accurate, well documented BSD determination, guided by national norms and effective family communication, is central to ethical end of life care and deceased organ donation.

CONCLUSION

Brain-Stem Death determination is a complex, protocol-driven clinical process that requires not only technical expertise but also a thorough understanding of legal frameworks and ethical principles. Accurate diagnosis depends on strict adherence to standardized criteria, meticulous clinical examination, and appropriate use of confirmatory testing wherever indicated. Given the profound implications for withdrawal of life-sustaining treatment and organ donation, clinicians must ensure procedural transparency, documentation integrity, and consistency in practice. Equally important is the need for clear, compassionate, and culturally sensitive communication with patients' families to explain the diagnosis, its implications, and the distinction between neurological death and coma or vegetative states. Ongoing education and training of healthcare professionals, along with institutional audits and quality assurance mechanisms, are essential to maintain competence and prevent diagnostic errors. Collectively, these measures are fundamental to sustaining public trust, safeguarding ethical standards, and delivering dignified, patient-centered end-of-life care in modern critical care practice.

REFERENCES

1. Greer DM, et al. Determination of Brain Death/Death by Neurologic Criteria: The World Brain Death Project. *JAMA*. 2020;324:1078–1097.
2. Wijdicks EFM, et al. Evidence-based guideline update: Determining brain death in adults. *Neurology*. 2010;74:1911–1918.
3. Academy of Medical Royal Colleges. *A Code of Practice for the Diagnosis and Confirmation of Death*. UK; 2023.
4. Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), Government of India, 1994 (Amended 2011).
5. Shemie SD, et al. International guideline development for DNC. *Intensive Care Med*. 2014;40:788–797.
6. Bernat JL. Conceptual issues in brain death. *Handb Clin Neurol*. 2018;150:433–448.
7. Henry NR, Marshall SG. Apnea testing: the effects of insufflation catheter size and flow on pressure and volume in a test lung. Respir Care. 2014 Mar;59(3):406-10.
8. Srivastava V, Nakra M, K AS, Dhull P, Ramprasad R, Lamba NS. Brain stem death certification protocol. Med J Armed Forces India. 2018 Jul;74(3):213-6.

CHAPTER 5

ROLE OF ANCILLARY TESTS IN THE DETERMINATION OF BRAIN-STEM DEATH

AUTHOR(s):

Dr. Srinivas Samavedam, Dr Bharat Jagiasi, Dr. Meenakshisundaram U

Department and Affiliation

1. Immediate past president, Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine. Chief Intensivist, Ramdevrao Hospital, Hyderabad, Telangana.
2. Former General Secretary, Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine (ISCCM). Director of Critical Care Department, Kokilaben Dhirubhai Ambani Hospital, Navi Mumbai.
3. Secretary, Indian Academy of Neurology (IAN). Clinical Lead – Neurology, Apollo Speciality Hospital, Teynampet, Chennai.

INTRODUCTION- The Cornerstone of Clinical Diagnosis

The certification of Brain-Stem Death (BD) is a critical and definitive medical determination. The primary and most conclusive method for this diagnosis relies on a meticulous clinical examination. According to the Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine (ISCCM) position statement, this evaluation involves a comprehensive assessment of brainstem reflexes coupled with a positive apnea test (AT), which alongwith clinical examination confirms the irreversible cessation of all brainstem functions. While the clinical examination is the foundation of diagnosis, ancillary tests serve as supplementary—not mandatory—tools. These tests are reserved for specific circumstances where a complete and conclusive clinical assessment is not possible, providing an alternative pathway to confirm the diagnosis with certainty. This summary outlines the specific conditions under which these confirmatory tests become necessary and evaluates the primary modalities available to clinicians.

1. Brain-Stem Death as a Clinical Diagnosis

In India, Brain-Stem Death (BSD) is defined and regulated by the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act, 1994 (THOTA), as amended and consolidated in 2014.[1–3] BSD is the irreversible cessation of all brainstem functions, including consciousness and spontaneous respiration, and is incompatible with survival.[4]

BSD is a clinical diagnosis.[4,8] When performed correctly and in the appropriate clinical context, bedside neurological examination is sufficient. Certification is needed by two independent teams, each comprising a medical specialist and a neurologist or neurosurgeon, through repeated examinations at an interval of minimum six hours in adults.[1–3] This highly particular demand reflects the seriousness of the diagnosis, rather than clinical diagnosis being fallible.

The clinical assessment consists of three essential elements:[4,5]

1. Establishment of prerequisites and exclusion of confounders
2. Absence of all brainstem reflexes
3. Confirmation of apnoea, defined as the absence of spontaneous respiratory effort despite adequate hypercapnic stimulation ($PaCO_2 \geq 60$ mmHg, or ≥ 20 mmHg above baseline in chronic hypercapnia)[4]

When these criteria are met without confounding, the diagnosis is complete and does not require any further testing.[4,5]

The sufficiency of clinical testing is verified by data demonstrating that patients who fulfil BSD criteria invariably progress to cardiovascular arrest within hours to days despite

maximal supportive care.[8] The examination sequentially assesses midbrain, pontine, and medullary function through established reflex pathways. When performed properly, the accuracy is unmatched by any ancillary testing.[5]

2. The Position of Ancillary Tests in Brain-Stem Death Certification

Understanding when and why to utilize ancillary tests is of strategic importance in the certification of Brain-Stem Death. The ISCCM recommendations, in line with the legal framework of the Transplantation of Human Organs Act (THOA), clarify that these tests are not a routine component of the diagnostic process. Their role is situational, invoked only when the standard clinical pathway is obstructed.

Based on Recommendation 7 of the ISCCM position statement, ancillary tests are explicitly not required when a full clinical examination, encompassing both brainstem reflex assessments and the apnea test, can be performed to a conclusive result. This reinforces the primacy of clinical judgment in the BD certification process. From a legal standpoint, the use of these tests faces a unique challenge in India, as the THOA does not mention ancillary tests at all, which complicates their legal acceptability. This distinction underscores that these tests are tools of clinical confirmation rather than legal requirement. This understanding of their position naturally leads to the specific indications for their application.

A) WHEN IS ANCILLARY TESTING NEEDED?

In certain circumstances, clinical testing is not feasible. In such cases, ancillary investigations provide supportive information for confirmation of BSD.[5,6]

A.1. Barriers to Cranial Nerve Reflex Testing

a. **Pupillary light reflex:** Confounded by aniridia, severe anisocoria, pharmacological mydriasis (including atropine), structural midbrain lesions, dense cataracts, advanced glaucoma, prior sympathectomy, or Horner syndrome.[5]

b. **Corneal reflex:** Invalidated by severe bilateral facial burns, trigeminal or bilateral facial nerve injury, corneal opacification, or corneal transplantation.[5]

c. **Oculovestibular reflex (cold calorics):** Requires intact external auditory canals and tympanic membranes. Bilateral perforations, haemotympanum, canal obstruction, petrous temporal bone fractures, or bilateral labyrinthine dysfunction preclude reliable testing.[5]

d. **Oculocephalic reflex:** Contraindicated in suspected or confirmed cervical spine instability and may be impractical in immobilized patients.[5]

e. **Ophthalmological limitations:** Bilateral anophthalmia, enucleation, severe orbital trauma, or prosthetic eyes invalidate ocular reflex testing and must not be misattributed to central pathology.[5]

A.2. Barriers to Apnoea Testing

Apnoea testing may be unsafe in haemodynamically unstable patients. Absolute contraindications include refractory hypoxaemia (PaO_2< 200 mmHg on FiO_2 1.0), vasopressor-refractory shock, high cervical spinal cord injury, severe COPD with CO_2 retention, and extensive pulmonary contusions.[4,5] A failed or aborted apnoea test is a strong indication for ancillary evaluation.[5]

A.3. Pharmacological and Metabolic Confounders

Although pharmacological and metabolic confounders should be excluded before brainstem death testing, with adequate time allowed for the elimination of sedatives, opioids, and neuromuscular blocking agents, there are situations in which this cannot be achieved with certainty. Prolonged drug infusions, impaired hepatic or renal function, therapeutic hypothermia, or unknown drug exposure may result in persistent drug effects that suppress brainstem reflexes and mimic brainstem death.[4] Likewise, severe hypothermia (<35 °C) and major metabolic derangements (e.g., hypoglycaemia, severe hypo- or hypernatraemia, and hepatic encephalopathy) invalidate clinical testing. [5]

In these circumstances, ancillary investigations that evaluate cerebral blood flow may be helpful, as they are relatively unaffected by pharmacological suppression and can support the diagnostic process.

B) INDICATIONS FOR UTILIZING ANCILLARY TESTS

The clinical rationale for resorting to ancillary tests arises when the standard clinical examination is either inconclusive or cannot be safely or accurately performed. In these scenarios, ancillary tests provide objective data to support or confirm the clinical impression of irreversible brainstem failure. The ISCCM position statement outlines several precise situations that warrant their use.

The following are the formal indications for employing ancillary tests in the certification of Brain-Stem Death:

a. **Clinical Preclusions:** In cases where a patient's condition physically prevents a complete clinical examination. This includes scenarios such as severe facial trauma, otorrhagia (bleeding from the ear), otorrhea (discharge from the ear), eye agenesis, or significant cranial or cervical injuries that make reflex testing impossible or dangerous.

b. **Diagnostic Uncertainty:** When a panel of certifying doctors expresses doubt or there is a disagreement regarding the clinical diagnosis, an ancillary test can provide the necessary objective evidence to resolve the uncertainty.

c. **Cardiovascular Instability:** In patients with severe cardiovascular instability, performing certain parts of the clinical examination, particularly the apnea test, may pose an unacceptable risk. Ancillary tests offer a safer alternative for confirmation.

d. **Etiological Ambiguity:** When the underlying cause of the catastrophic brain injury is unclear, ancillary tests that demonstrate a lack of cerebral blood flow can help establish an irreversible cause.

e. **Confounding Factors:** In situations of persistent coma where confounding factors—such as the effects of sedative drugs or severe metabolic disturbances—cannot be fully excluded despite appropriate observation periods, an ancillary test can confirm the diagnosis.

With these indications established, the clinical team must then navigate the distinct diagnostic capabilities and limitations of the available testing modalities to select the most appropriate confirmatory tool.

Guidance from the World Brain Death Project (2020) and the Academy of Medical Royal Colleges (2008) recognizes ancillary testing as appropriate in the following situations:[5,6]

a. Incomplete or unreliable assessment of brainstem reflexes
b. Failed or aborted apnoea testing
c. Inability to exclude pharmacological or metabolic confounders
d. Cervical spinal cord injury precluding examination
e. Medicolegal or institutional requirements
f. Discordant or ambiguous clinical findings
g. Neonates and young infants with incomplete brainstem maturation

These indications are at the discretion of the primary confirming authority and is open to interpretation.[5]

C) CATEGORIES OF ANCILLARY TESTS

Ancillary tests fall into two broad groups:[5,8]

A. **Electrophysiological tests:**
    1. Electroencephalography (EEG)
    2. Evoked Potentials (EPs)
    3. Short-Latency Somatosensory Evoked Potentials (SSEPS)
    4. Brainstem Auditory Evoked Potentials (BAEPS)

B. **Cerebral blood flow (CBF) studies:**
    1. Transcranial Doppler Ultrasonography (TCD)
    2. Computed Tomographic Angiography (CTA)/ Magnetic Resonance Angiography (MRA)
    3. Digital Subtraction Angiography (DSA)
    4. Radionuclide Cerebral Perfusion Scintigraphy (planar and SPECT)

No modality is a perfect surrogate for clinical determination. Each has specific advantages and disadvantages, which might fit certain situations better.[5,8]

D) ANALYSIS OF ANCILLARY TESTING MODALITIES

A variety of ancillary tests are available to confirm Brain-Stem Death, each with a distinct methodology, diagnostic criteria, and set of clinical limitations. The following subsections provide a critical assessment of each primary modality. The evaluation details each test's procedure, key diagnostic findings, and a balanced view of its strengths and limitations. A key consideration across several of these modalities is the confounding effect of prior neurosurgical procedures, such as decompressive craniectomy, which can alter cerebral blood flow dynamics and complicate interpretation.

D.1. Electroencephalography (EEG)

EEG assesses cortical electrical activity of the brain. Electrocerebral silence on EEG is defined by the absence of any cerebral electrical activity exceeding 2 μV when recorded under standard technical conditions (adequate electrode placement, impedance, sensitivity, and stimulation) over an appropriate period of observation.[9] Electrocerebral silence has limited sensitivity (≈ 50–80%) and may result from drugs, hypothermia, or metabolic encephalopathy. Residual cortical activity may persist despite confirmed BSD. EEG is increasingly de-emphasized in favour of CBF studies.[8]

The World Brain Death Project (2020) recognizes that electroencephalography (EEG) has a limited role as an ancillary investigation in the determination of brain death/death by

neurologic criteria. As EEG records only cortical electrical activity, it does not provide information regarding brainstem function or cerebral circulatory arrest. In addition, EEG interpretation may be influenced by technical artifacts, sedative or anesthetic agents, hypothermia, and metabolic disturbances, potentially limiting its reliability in critically ill patients. Consequently, when ancillary testing is required, investigations that directly demonstrate the absence of cerebral blood flow are generally preferred over EEG.

Strengths vs. Limitations	
Strengths	**Limitations**
1) EEG is portable and can be performed at the bedside. **2) EPs can evaluate the integrity of specific pathways from the periphery to cortical output.** **3) EPs are helpful in patients who have undergone decompressive surgery.**	**1)** EEG only detects cortical activity reliably and is unable to assess the posterior fossa and brainstem. **2)** EEG is highly susceptible to electrical artifacts from bedside monitors, potentially leading to false-negative results. **3)** EEG activity can be suppressed by sedation or targeted temperature management (TTM), leading to false-positive findings. **4)** EP interpretation requires highly skilled personnel. **5)** EPs only assess the integrity of specific pathways and cannot be used to assess the function of the entire brainstem.

D.2. Brainstem Auditory Evoked Potentials (BAEPS)

BAEPs assess auditory brainstem pathways. In Brain-Stem Death, BAEP findings suggestive of BSD are absence of brainstem waves (II–V) with preservation of Wave I, indicating cochlear nerve activity without brainstem conduction. Pre-existing deafness, middle ear disease, or cochlear injury frequently render results uninterpretable, limiting clinical utility.[12]

Hence, evoked potentials have a limited role in the determination of brain death/death by neurologic criteria. The World Brain Death Project (2020) does not recommend their routine use as ancillary tests for the diagnosis of Brain-Stem Death. Brainstem auditory evoked potentials (BAEPs) and somatosensory evoked potentials (SSEPs) evaluate only specific neural pathways and therefore cannot establish the loss of all brainstem functions or confirm cerebral circulatory arrest. In addition, the quality and interpretation of these studies may

be affected by technical factors, peripheral nerve or auditory pathway abnormalities, hypothermia, and the effects of drugs or metabolic derangements. For these reasons, evoked potentials should be considered supportive rather than confirmatory investigations and should not be relied upon in isolation to establish the diagnosis. Where ancillary testing is indicated, techniques that directly demonstrate the absence of cerebral blood flow are generally preferred because they provide a more reliable assessment of irreversible loss of brain function.

D.3. Short-Latency Somatosensory Evoked Potentials (SSEPs)

Somatosensory evoked potentials (SSEPs) are electrophysiological studies that assess the integrity of somatosensory pathways by recording cortical responses to peripheral nerve stimulation. On SSEP, a finding suggestive of BSD is bilateral absence of the cortical N20 response with preserved N13, indicating loss of cortical somatosensory conduction despite intact spinal pathways. This has high specificity (≈ 98–100%) and relative resistance to sedative effects. However, SSEPs assess cortical pathways and do not localize pathology specifically to the brainstem.[10,11]

D.4. Transcranial Doppler Ultrasonography (TCD)

Transcranial Doppler (TCD) is a non-invasive bedside ultrasound technique used to assess cerebral blood flow by analyzing intracranial arterial waveforms. The procedure requires two separate examinations conducted at least 30 minutes apart. Findings suggestive of Brain-Stem Death (BSD) include characteristic waveforms of cerebral circulatory arrest, such as reverberating (to-and-fro) flow, isolated systolic spikes, or complete absence of intracranial forward flow, reflecting critically reduced or absent cerebral perfusion with preserved flow in extracranial arteries. When performed according to standardized protocols by experienced operators, these findings have a high specificity for cerebral circulatory arrest. [13]

The World Brain Death Project (2020) recognizes TCD as an acceptable ancillary investigation in centres with appropriate expertise and standardized protocols. However, the panel does not recommend TCD as a routine ancillary investigation for the diagnosis of brain death/death by neurologic criteria. Its diagnostic accuracy is highly dependent on operator expertise, adequate acoustic windows, and meticulous adherence to standardized acquisition and interpretation criteria. In addition, decompressive craniectomy, skull defects, and altered intracranial haemodynamics may further limit its reliability. While the demonstration of persistent intracranial blood flow effectively excludes cerebral circulatory arrest, the absence of detectable flow should not be interpreted in isolation and must always be correlated with the clinical findings. Although TCD is a bedside, repeatable, non-invasive

investigation that is largely unaffected by sedative drugs or metabolic disturbances, ancillary investigations that directly demonstrate cerebral circulatory arrest using standardized and reproducible techniques are preferred whenever ancillary testing is required

Strengths v/s Limitations	
Strengths	**Limitations**
1) Can be performed at the bedside, avoiding patient transport. **2) Inexpensive and non-invasive.** **3) Provides the potential for visualizing the posterior circulation.**	**1)** Interpretation is complicated in patients who have undergone procedures affecting flow dynamics (e.g., craniectomy). **2)** Approximately 10% of patients have poor acoustic temporal bone windows, preventing an adequate examination. **3)** Not suggested for use in the pediatric population.

D.5. Computed Tomographic Angiography (CTA)/ Magnetic Resonance Angiography (MRA)

CTA assesses intracranial vessel opacification. These imaging modalities involve a peripheral venous injection of contrast material to evaluate blood flow to the distal cerebral vasculature. On CTA, findings suggestive of Brain-Stem Death are absence of opacification of the intracranial arteries, indicating critically absent cerebral circulation, though partial filling can result in false negatives.[14,15]

Sensitivity varies (≈ 85–98%). Contrast nephrotoxicity and limited posterior fossa assessment restrict its role as a standalone test.[14,15]

Strengths v/s Limitations	
Strengths	**Limitations**
1) Ease of use and speed of acquisition. **2) Widely available in many medical centers.**	**1)** The risk of "stasis filling," where contrast slowly enters vessels without true perfusion, can complicate interpretation and lead to false negatives. **2)** Requires transporting the patient to the radiology department. **3)** Interpretation is complicated by prior surgical procedures that affect intracranial flow dynamics.

D.6. Digital Subtraction Angiography (DSA)

Digital Subtraction Angiography is a four-vessel cerebral angiography procedure used to visualize blood flow within the brain. DSA remains the historical reference standard with near-complete sensitivity and specificity for BSD. On DSA, findings suggestive of Brain-Stem Death are absence of intracranial cerebral circulation, consistent with cerebral circulatory arrest when the study is technically adequate. Importantly, the extracranial circulation remains intact and visible, confirming that the absence of flow is isolated to the brain. Its invasive nature, logistical complexity, and contrast burden limit routine use.[16]

Strengths v/s Limitations	
Strengths	**Limitations**
1) Considered the gold standard ancillary test. **2) Has 100% sensitivity and specificity.**	**1) Logistical Challenges:** Time-consuming and requires transferring a critically unstable patient to an angiography suite. **2) Technical Demands:** Requires highly specialized skills for performance and interpretation. **3) Clinical Risks:** Carries inherent risks, including vasospasm and contrast-induced nephropathy. **4) Interpretive Complexity:** Complicated by prior neurosurgical procedures (e.g., craniectomy) that alter blood flow dynamics.

D.7. Radionuclide Cerebral Perfusion Scintigraphy (planar and SPECT)

Using tracers such as ^{99m}Tc-HMPAO, scintigraphy demonstrates absence of cerebral perfusion ("empty skull" sign). Single Photon Emission Computed Tomography (SPECT) provides superior posterior fossa assessment. The modality has excellent accuracy and is largely unaffected by sedatives, though availability may be limited.[17,18]

SPECT is a radionuclide imaging study that involves injecting a radiotracer into the peripheral circulation, which then diffuses across the blood-brain barrier for uptake by brain tissue. In Brain-Stem Death, the scan demonstrates an absence of tracer uptake throughout the brain. This lack of uptake signifies a complete absence of cerebral blood flow, which in turn confirms the cessation of metabolic activity.

Strengths v/s Limitations	
Strengths	**Limitations**
**1) Sensitivity and specificity are similar to DSA. **	**1)** Potentially inadequate visualization of the posterior fossa, which is critical for BD diagnosis. **2)** The risk of false-positive results exists due to poor visualization in some cases.

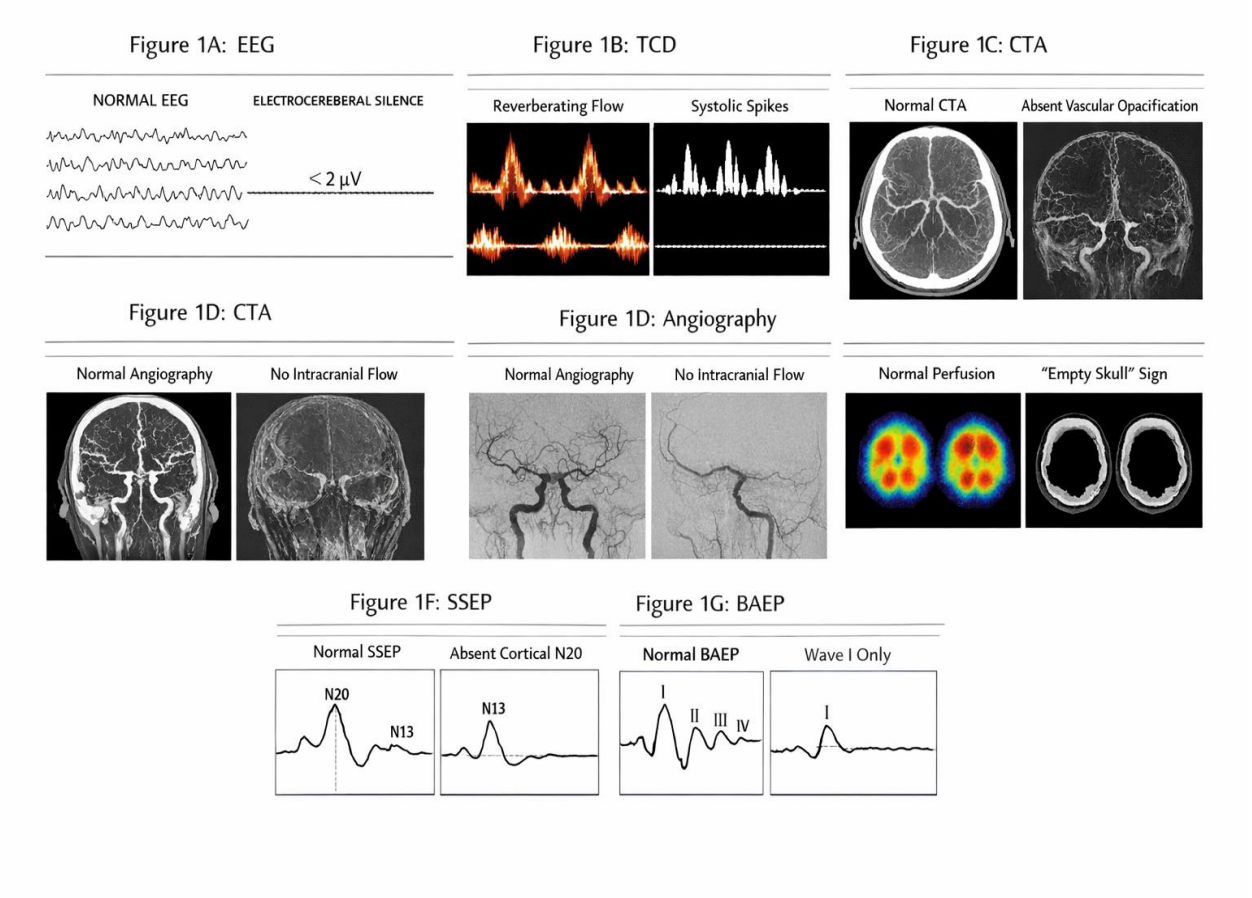


Figure 1 (A–G): *Ancillary testing modalities in Brain-Stem Death: A: EEG showing electrocerebral silence; B: Transcranial Doppler demonstrating reverberating flow, systolic spikes, and absent flow; C: CT angiography showing absence of intracranial vessel opacification; D: Digital subtraction angiography demonstrating absence of intracranial circulation; E: Radionuclide cerebral perfusion imaging showing the 'empty skull' sign; F: Somatosensory evoked potentials showing absent cortical N20 response; G: Brainstem auditory evoked potentials showing preservation of Wave I with absence of higher brainstem waves.*

E) ANCILLARY TESTING AS SURROGATE EVIDENCE: A CRITICAL CAVEAT

No ancillary investigation constitutes a definitive test for Brain-Stem Death.[5,8] All are surrogate markers that assess physiological correlates rather than Brain-Stem Death itself.

EEG assesses cortical silence, not brainstem function. SSEPs confirm pathway disruption without anatomical localization. Cerebral blood flow studies may yield false-negative results in specific anatomical or postoperative contexts. Accordingly, ancillary tests must never be interpreted in isolation.[5,8]

The World Brain Death Project explicitly states that ancillary tests may support—but cannot independently establish—the diagnosis of brain death. This position is consistent with THOTA recommendations, which does not recognize any ancillary investigation in isolation, without associated clinical assessment.[1–3,5]

The practical implications are clear:

1. Clinical examination should be pursued to the fullest extent possible.[5]
2. Positive ancillary results must be interpreted in the context of confounders.[5]
3. Negative ancillary results do not exclude BSD when modality-specific limitations apply.[5,8]

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

1. **Widespread clinical obstructions:** Physical and medical barriers regularly disrupt standard clinical pathways. Cranial nerve examinations can be rendered impossible by severe facial trauma, ocular injuries, or pre-existing conditions (e.g., cataracts or eardrum perforations). Similarly, severe hemodynamic instability, refractory hypoxemia, or high cervical spine injuries can make apnea testing entirely unsafe to attempt.

2. **Confounding factors and false results:** Common clinical realities such as hypothermia, severe metabolic disturbances, and unavoidable intensive care medications (sedatives, opioids, and muscle relaxants) mimic Brain-Stem Death. Electrophysiological tests like the EEG are highly susceptible to false-positive findings under sedation, as well as false-negatives due to electrical interference from nearby ICU bedside monitors.

3. **Anatomical and surgical distortions:** Prior neurosurgical life-saving interventions, most notably a decompressive craniectomy, alter the skull's physical pressure dynamics. This changes normal intracranial blood flow and severely complicates the

interpretation of cerebral blood flow (CBF) studies like Transcranial Doppler (TCD) or CT Angiography (CTA), leading to a risk of "stasis filling".

4. **Technical and operational limitations:** Every available testing modality has a distinct anatomical blind spot. For example, EEGs do not measure posterior fossa or brainstem activity, while nuclear scintigraphy might struggle to capture the posterior brain structure cleanly. Furthermore, gold-standard choices like Digital Subtraction Angiography (DSA) demand high technical expertise and risky transfers of highly unstable patients to radiology suites.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. **Primacy of clinical examination:** Brain-Stem Death (BSD) is fundamentally a bedside clinical diagnosis. When a flawless assessment can be performed by two independent medical panels separated by at least six hours, clinical judgment is entirely sufficient and unmatched in accuracy.

2. **Ancillary tests are purely supplemental:** Under both Indian recommendations and global guidelines like the World Brain Death Project, ancillary tests are strictly optional, situational, and secondary tools. **They** should never be ordered as a routine check but are reserved solely for instances when the standard clinical pathway is completely obstructed.

3. **Surrogate evidence rather than definition:** No ancillary test can independently define or establish brain death on its own. They function strictly as surrogate markers tracking physical or electrical correlates—such as looking for electrocerebral silence or an "empty skull" sign via absent cerebral perfusion.

4. **Contextual mastery over isolating results:** Ancillary testing data must never be interpreted in a vacuum. A positive ancillary result must always be cross-referenced against known clinical confounders, while a negative test result does not safely exclude Brain-Stem Death (BSD) if modality-specific technical limitations apply.

5. **Divergent modality profiles:** Clinicians must selectively match tests to individual patient conditions. Electrophysiological evaluations (EEG, SSEPs, BAEPs) trace active electrical neural pathways but fall prey to sedative suppression. Conversely, cerebral blood flow studies (TCD, CTA, DSA) measure intracranial circulatory arrest and remain highly reliable even when heavy sedation or metabolic encephalopathy is present.

CONCLUSION

A Tool for Confirmatory Diagnosis-

In summary, ancillary tests serve as a crucial but secondary resource in the certification of Brain-Stem Death. In India, the determination of Brain-Stem Death remains a bedside clinical diagnosis, performed by trained and appropriately constituted medical teams. Their use is reserved for specific clinical challenges where the standard, comprehensive neurological examination cannot be completed or yields ambiguous results.

While tests like Digital Subtraction Angiography (DSA) are considered a gold standard due to their high accuracy, more practical and readily available modalities such as Transcranial Doppler (TCD) and Computed Tomographic Angiography (CTA) offer valuable alternatives, each with a distinct profile of strengths and weaknesses. Ultimately, these tests function as confirmatory tools that provide objective evidence when needed.

They support—but never replace—the clinical and procedural safeguards mandated by law.

Ancillary Investigations Inform The Diagnosis; They Do Not Define It.

RECOMMENDATIONS

1. Clinical examination including apnoea testing remains the cornerstone of brain stem death certification.
2. Ancillary tests are **not routinely required**.
3. Ancillary tests may be used when:
    - clinical examination cannot be completed,
    - apnoea test cannot be safely performed,
    - confounding factors cannot be excluded,
    - diagnostic uncertainty persists.
4. The reason for ancillary testing must be documented.
5. Results must be interpreted in clinical context.

REFERENCES

1. Government of India. *The Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act, 1994*, as amended and consolidated in 2014. Ministry of Law and Justice, New Delhi.

2. Government of India. *The Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Rules, 2014*. Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, New Delhi.

3. National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO). *Guidelines for Certification of Brain Stem Death in India*. Government of India.

4. Wijdicks EFM, Varelas PN, Gronseth GS, Greer DM. Evidence-based guideline update: determining brain death in adults. *Neurology*. 2010;74(23):1911–1918.

5. Greer DM, Shemie SD, Lewis A, et al. Determination of brain death/death by neurologic criteria: the World Brain Death Project. *JAMA*. 2020;324(11):1078–1097.

6. Academy of Medical Royal Colleges. *A code of practice for the diagnosis and confirmation of death*. London; 2008.

7. Shemie SD, Doig C, Dickens B, et al. Severe brain injury to neurological determination of death: Canadian forum recommendations. *CMAJ*. 2006;174(6 Suppl):S1–S30.

8. Wijdicks EFM. The diagnosis of brain death. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344:1215–1221.

9. American Clinical Neurophysiology Society. Guideline 3: minimum technical standards for EEG recording in suspected cerebral death. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2006;23:97–104.

10. Nuwer MR, Aminoff M, Desmedt J, et al. IFCN recommended standards for short-latency somatosensory evoked potentials. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1994;91:6–11.

11. Guérit JM, Amantini A, Amodio P, et al. Consensus on the use of neurophysiological tests in the diagnosis of brain death. *Clin Neurophysiol*. 2009;120:934–946.

12. Starr A, Achor LJ. Auditory brain-stem responses in neurological disease. *Arch Neurol*. 1975;32:761–768.

13. Monteiro LM, Bollen CW, van Huffelen AC, et al. Transcranial Doppler ultrasonography to confirm brain death: a meta-analysis. *Intensive Care Med*. 2006;32:1937–1944.

14. Frampas E, Videcoq M, de Kerviler E, et al. CT angiography for brain death diagnosis. *AJNR Am J Neuroradiol*. 2009;30:1566–1570.

15. Dupas B, Gayet-Delacroix M, Villers D, et al. Diagnosis of brain death using CT angiography. *Neuroradiology*. 1998;40:740–745.

16. Kricheff II, Pinto RS, George AE. Angiographic findings in brain death. *Radiology*. 1978;127:635–639.

17. Donohoe KJ, Frey KA, Gerbaudo VH, et al. Procedure guideline for brain death scintigraphy. *J Nucl Med*. 2003;44:846–851.

18. Flowers WM, Patel BR. Radionuclide evaluation of cerebral perfusion in suspected brain death. *J Nucl Med*. 2000;41:33–39.

19. Zirpe K, Pandit R, Gurav S, Mani RK, Prabhakar H, Clerk A, Wanchoo J, Reddy KS, Ramachandran P, Karanth S, George N, Vaity C, Shetty RM, Samavedam S, Dixit S, Kulkarni AP. Management of potential organ donor: Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine position statement. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2024;28(Suppl 2):S249-S278. doi:10.5005/jp-journals-10071-24698

CHAPTER 6

SECTION-A: POST-CERTIFICATION MANAGEMENT AND ORGAN DONATION PROTOCOL

F) THE ROADMAP FROM BSD CERTIFICATION TO ORGAN HARVESTING

G) ORGAN PROCUREMENT AND ALLOCATION PROTOCOLS
- B.1. Organ Procurement Protocol
- B.2. Current National Framework: NOTTO Allocation Scoring and Algorithm
- B.3. State-Level Allocation Strategies
- B.4. Proposed Unified National Allocation Protocol

H) ORGAN RETRIEVAL AND PRESERVATION: BEST PRACTICES AND PROTOCOLS
- C.1. Scientific and Ethical Principles of Organ Retrieval
- C.2. Standard Organ Retrieval Technique
- C.3. Machine Perfusion: Advanced Organ Preservation

I) IMPLEMENTATION FRAMEWORK

J) MONITORING AND EVALUATION

SECTION-B: SELECTION OF BRAINSTEM DONOR

A) GENERAL DONOR EVALUATION

B) KIDNEY SELECTION AND MANAGEMENT

C) LIVER SELECTION AND MANAGEMENT

D) HEART SELECTION AND MANAGEMENT

E) LUNG SELECTION AND MANAGEMENT

F) PANCREAS AND INTESTINE

G) SPECIAL CONDITIONS AND EMERGING RISKS

H) COLD ISCHEMIA TIME (CIT)

I) IMPLEMENTATION FRAMEWORK

J) MONITORING AND EVALUATION

AUTHOR(s):

Dr. Rahul Pandit, Dr. Kapil Zirpe, Dr. Vivek Kute, Dr. Sourabh Sharma, , Dr. Arpita Ray Chaudhury, Dr. Surya Kumar Dube

Department and Affiliation

1. Chair Critical Care, Emergency and all Reliance Foundation Healthcare Initiatives, Sir H. N. Reliance Foundation Hospital, Mumbai, Maharashtra.
2. Head, Neuro Trauma Intensive Care Unit, Grant Medical Foundation, Ruby Hall Clinic, Pune.
3. Professor and Unit Head, Nephrology and Transplantation Institute of Kidney Diseases and Research Center and Dr. H L Trivedi Institute of Transplantation Sciences, (IKDRC-ITS), and the Gujarat University of Transplantation Sciences (GUTS), Ahmedabad, Gujarat.
4. Assistant Professor, Department of Nephrology, SMS Medical College, Jaipur.
5. Professor and HOD, Department of Nephrology, NBMCH/ IPGMER, Kolkata.
6. Professor, Neuroanaesthesiology and Critical Care, All India Institute of Medical Sciences (AIIMS), New Delhi.

SECTION-A: POST-CERTIFICATION MANAGEMENT AND ORGAN DONATION PROTOCOL

INTRODUCTION

1. Background

Brain-Stem Death (BSD) certification constitutes a legally recognized determination of death and forms the cornerstone of deceased organ donation programs in India. Despite advances in transplantation science and national policy initiatives, the interval between BSD certification and organ retrieval remains a critical and vulnerable phase. Standardized donor management protocols during this phase significantly improve organ utilization rates and post-transplant graft survival. Equally important are the ethical, legal, and organizational dimensions of post-certification management. Informed consent from near relatives, as mandated by Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), requires clear communication regarding the concept of Brain-Stem Death as legal death, delivered with sensitivity and cultural competence. The involvement of trained transplant coordinators and institutional ethics mechanisms is essential to ensure that consent processes are voluntary, transparent, and free from conflict of interest. Furthermore, organ procurement and allocation must be conducted through nationally approved systems coordinated by State and National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organizations (SOTTO/NOTTO), ensuring equity, traceability, and accountability.

2. Context

This chapter addresses the structured management of the deceased donor following BSD certification, integrating statutory requirements with best practices. By delineating standardized pathways for donor maintenance, organ procurement, allocation, retrieval, and preservation, it aims to strengthen uniformity, quality, and public confidence in deceased organ donation and transplantation programs. Although this chapter focuses on post-certification management, early notification of the institutional transplant coordinator when Brain-Stem Death is anticipated facilitates timely preparation and reduces avoidable delays after certification.

3. Objectives of the Chapter

This chapter aims to:

1. Describe the standardized pathway from BSD certification to organ retrieval.
2. Summarize the legal, ethical, and administrative requirements governing post-certification management.
3. Review the current national and selected state organ allocation systems.

4. Propose a harmonized national allocation framework for deceased donor kidney transplantation.
5. Outline best practices in organ procurement, retrieval, and preservation to improve organ utilization and transplant outcomes.

A) THE ROADMAP FROM BSD CERTIFICATION TO ORGAN HARVESTING

The declaration of BSD marks the formal recognition of death under Indian law. However, it simultaneously initiates a highly structured and time-sensitive process aimed at enabling ethical and effective deceased organ donation. The roadmap from BSD certification to organ harvesting includes a sequence of interdependent clinical, legal, ethical, and administrative steps (Table 1). Immediately following BSD certification by the authorized board of medical experts, the treating team transitions from therapeutic intent to donor-focused physiological support. This phase requires meticulous donor management to counteract the systemic inflammatory response and neuroendocrine instability that commonly follow Brain-Stem Death. Concurrently, timely notification of the hospital transplant coordination team and the appropriate SOTTO/NOTTO is mandatory to initiate the organ donation workflow.

Family counselling and consent acquisition constitute a key ethical component of this roadmap. In accordance with THOTA, informed consent must be obtained from the legally defined near relatives, unless prior donor authorization is available. Counselling should be conducted by trained transplant coordinators in collaboration with clinicians, emphasizing the legal status of BSD as death, the voluntary nature of donation, and respect for the family's values and beliefs. Whenever feasible, the discussion regarding organ donation should be temporally separated from the communication of Brain-Stem Death ("decoupling"), allowing families adequate time to understand and accept the diagnosis before donation is discussed. This approach improves informed decision-making, minimizes perceived conflicts of interest, and strengthens public trust in the donation process. No organ retrieval activities may commence without valid documented consent and completion of all statutory clearances.

Following consent, comprehensive donor evaluation is undertaken to determine organ suitability, while parallel administrative processes are completed. Organ allocation is performed through centralized, transparent systems managed by SOTTO/ROTTO/NOTTO, ensuring equitable distribution based on medical urgency, compatibility, and established national criteria. Only after confirmation of allocation are retrieval teams mobilized, culminating in surgical organ procurement performed under standardized aseptic and ethical protocols.

Phase	Key Activities	Responsible Authority	Legal Considerations	Mandatory Documentation
BSD Certification	Completion of two sets of Brain-Stem Death tests; declaration of death	Board of Medical Experts as prescribed under THOTA	Irreversibility of brainstem function; compliance with statutory testing interval	BSD Certification Forms (as per THOTA Rules)
Immediate Donor Stabilization	Hemodynamic support, ventilation optimization, temperature and electrolyte control	Treating ICU Team	Prevention of hypotension, hypoxia, endocrine collapse to preserve organ viability	ICU charts, donor management records
Notification and Coordination	Intimation to transplant coordinator, hospital administration, SOTTO/NOTTO	Hospital Transplant Coordinator	Early coordination reduces ischemia time and improves allocation efficiency	Notification logs
Family Counselling	Explanation of BSD as legal death; discussion of organ donation	Registered Transplant Coordinator with Clinician support	Ethical principles of autonomy, voluntariness, non-coercion	Counselling notes
Consent for Donation	Obtaining written informed consent from near relatives (or verification of donor pledge)	Transplant Coordinator	Mandatory under THOTA; donation cannot proceed without valid consent	Consent Forms

Donor Medical Evaluation	Medical history, laboratory testing, imaging, serology	Treating Team and Retrieval Specialists	Assessment of organ suitability and transmissible disease risk	Evaluation reports
Medico-Legal Clearance	Police and forensic clearance in applicable cases	Hospital Administration	Mandatory in medico-legal deaths; retrieval only after clearance	Police/Forensic clearance
Organ Allocation	Matching and allocation through centralized registry	SOTTO/ROTTO/NOTTO	Equity, transparency, urgency-based allocation	Allocation records
Mobilization of Retrieval Teams	Coordination of multi-organ retrieval teams	Transplant Coordinator	Minimization of warm ischemia time	Retrieval schedules
Organ Harvesting	Surgical retrieval of organs	Authorized Retrieval Teams	Standardized surgical technique; ethical handling of donor	Operative and retrieval notes
Post-Retrieval Care	Reconstruction of body; handover to family	Hospital Team	Preservation of dignity of the deceased	Handover documentation

Table 1: *Roadmap from BSD Certification to Organ Harvesting*

B) ORGAN PROCUREMENT AND ALLOCATION PROTOCOLS

Organ procurement and allocation represent the most ethically sensitive and operationally complex components of deceased donor transplantation. Following Brain-Stem Death (BSD) certification and valid consent under the THOTA, organ procurement must proceed through standardized, transparent, and equitable mechanisms that maximize graft utility while ensuring justice and public trust. International experience and scientific evidence consistently demonstrate that centralized allocation systems governed by objective medical criteria result in improved transplant outcomes and enhanced societal acceptance of

deceased organ donation. Standardized procurement and allocation pathways not only promote equitable access but also reduce unnecessary organ discard by facilitating timely evaluation, allocation, and retrieval.

Deceased donor organs are scarce societal resources, necessitating allocation frameworks grounded in ethical principles of equity, utility, urgency, and transparency. Modern allocation systems worldwide integrate these principles using validated scoring tools (e.g., MELD for liver, lung allocation score, status-based heart allocation) combined with immunological compatibility and logistical feasibility. Procurement begins with the identification of medically suitable organs through standardized donor evaluation, followed by allocation using centralized registries that minimize subjective decision-making and conflicts of interest.

B.1. Organ Procurement Protocol

Organ procurement is a regulated, time-critical clinical process that begins immediately after lawful BSD certification and valid informed consent, and culminates in surgical retrieval of transplantable organs. A nationally standardized procurement protocol is essential to ensure ethical integrity, inter-state uniformity, optimal organ quality, and public trust. Evidence from international transplant systems and critical care literature demonstrates that structured procurement pathways significantly reduce organ discard rates, ischemic injury, and procedural variability, thereby improving graft outcomes. Following BSD certification under the THOTA, the treating institution must activate the organ procurement pathway through the designated transplant coordinator. Donor evaluation, donor maintenance, allocation coordination, and retrieval planning must proceed in parallel to minimize delays. Organ suitability should be determined by comprehensive functional assessment rather than chronological age alone, recognizing that appropriately selected expanded-criteria donors can provide satisfactory transplant outcomes. The treating ICU team retains responsibility for physiological donor support, while procurement and transplant teams must remain functionally independent to avoid conflicts of interest. Mandatory communication with SOTTO/NOTTO ensures transparency, traceability, and equitable organ distribution.

Surgical procurement must be performed only by authorized, trained retrieval teams using standardized multiorgan retrieval techniques. Systemic heparinization, rapid vascular control, uniform cold perfusion, and precise documentation of ischemia times are non-negotiable elements of the protocol. All steps must be auditable, reproducible, and compliant with national reporting requirements. Respectful reconstruction of the donor's body and dignified handover to the family are integral ethical obligations. This protocol establishes a minimum national standard adaptable to varying resource levels, while allowing progressive integration of advanced practices without compromising equity or legality **(Table 2).**

Phase	Mandatory Actions	Responsible Authority	Rationale
1. Trigger and Activation	BSD certification completed; transplant coordinator notified within 1 hour	BSD certification board; hospital administration	Early activation reduces warm ischemia
2. Legal and Ethical Clearance	Written informed consent; medico-legal clearance if applicable	Transplant coordinator; hospital ethics	Ensures THOTA compliance and voluntariness
3. Donor Evaluation	Medical history, labs, imaging, serology	Treating ICU team	Prevents transmission and organ discard
4. Registry Entry	Upload donor data to SOTTO/NOTTO portal	Transplant coordinator	Enables transparent allocation
5. Donor Maintenance	Hemodynamic, ventilatory, endocrine optimization	ICU team	Preserves organ viability
6. Allocation Confirmation	Organ acceptance and retrieval authorization	SOTTO/NOTTO	Ensures equitable distribution
7. Retrieval Team Mobilization	Credentialed teams deployed; OR readiness	Hospital + retrieval teams	Minimizes cold ischemia time
8. Surgical Procurement	Heparinization, cross-clamp, cold perfusion, multiorgan retrieval	Authorized retrieval surgeons	Reduces ischemia–reperfusion injury
9. Documentation	Record warm/cold ischemia times, organ quality	Retrieval team	Quality assurance and audit
10. Post-retrieval Care	Body reconstruction; dignified family handover	Hospital team	Ethical obligation, public trust

Table 2: *Organ Procurement Protocol: Stepwise Framework for Uniform Adoption*

B.2. Current National Framework: NOTTO Allocation Scoring and Algorithm

In India, NOTTO provides a nationally applicable scoring system and allocation algorithm intended to balance equity, urgency, and logistical feasibility in a low–donation-rate environment **(Table 3)**. The present model is primarily waiting-time driven, with dialysis vintage forming the backbone of allocation. Incremental points are awarded for select equity modifiers, including paediatric age, prior graft failure, sensitization (PRA), vascular access crisis, previous living donation, and near relatives of deceased donors. In parallel, an algorithmic allocation pathway prioritizes local utilization, paediatric-to-paediatric allocation, blood group compatibility, urgent listing, and multi-organ transplantation, with an explicit intent to minimize cold ischemia time.

Criterion	Points Awarded
Dialysis vintage	+1 per month
Prior immunological graft failure (≤3 months)	+3 per event
Paediatric age	+3 (<6 yrs); +2 (6–<12 yrs); +1 (12–<18 yrs)
Vascular access failure	+2 (failed AVF); +4 (failed AV graft after AVF)
PRA >20%	+0.5 per 10% increment
Previous living donor	+5
Near relative of deceased donor (THOTA definition)	+5

Table 3: *NOTTO Deceased Donor Kidney Allocation: Scoring Criteria and Weightage*

B.3. State-Level Allocation Strategies

Recognizing regional heterogeneity, several states and institutions have developed context-specific, multi-parameter point systems, operating under NOTTO oversight but tailored to local infrastructure and donation volumes **(Table 4)**. These models represent varying emphases on equity and utility and provide valuable lessons for national harmonization. Southern and western states (e.g., Telangana, Gujarat, Maharashtra) and tertiary institutions (e.g., PGIMER, Chandigarh) have progressively incorporated registration vintage, graded age points, female recipient priority, sensitization scoring, age-group matching, and reciprocity principles (previous living donation, near relatives of deceased donors). Gujarat and PGIMER additionally mandate advanced immunological work-up, including single-antigen bead assays, enabling more specific sensitization-based allocation.

These state-specific adaptations demonstrate that one-size-fits-all allocation is neither feasible nor desirable in the current Indian context, given disparities in laboratory capacity, transplant volume, and administrative oversight. However, unchecked heterogeneity risks ethical inconsistency and inter-state inequity. Figure 1 depicts deceased donor kidney transplant activity across Indian states and the corresponding allocation models in use, illustrating concentration of donation activity in select southern and western regions and wide variation in allocation sophistication.

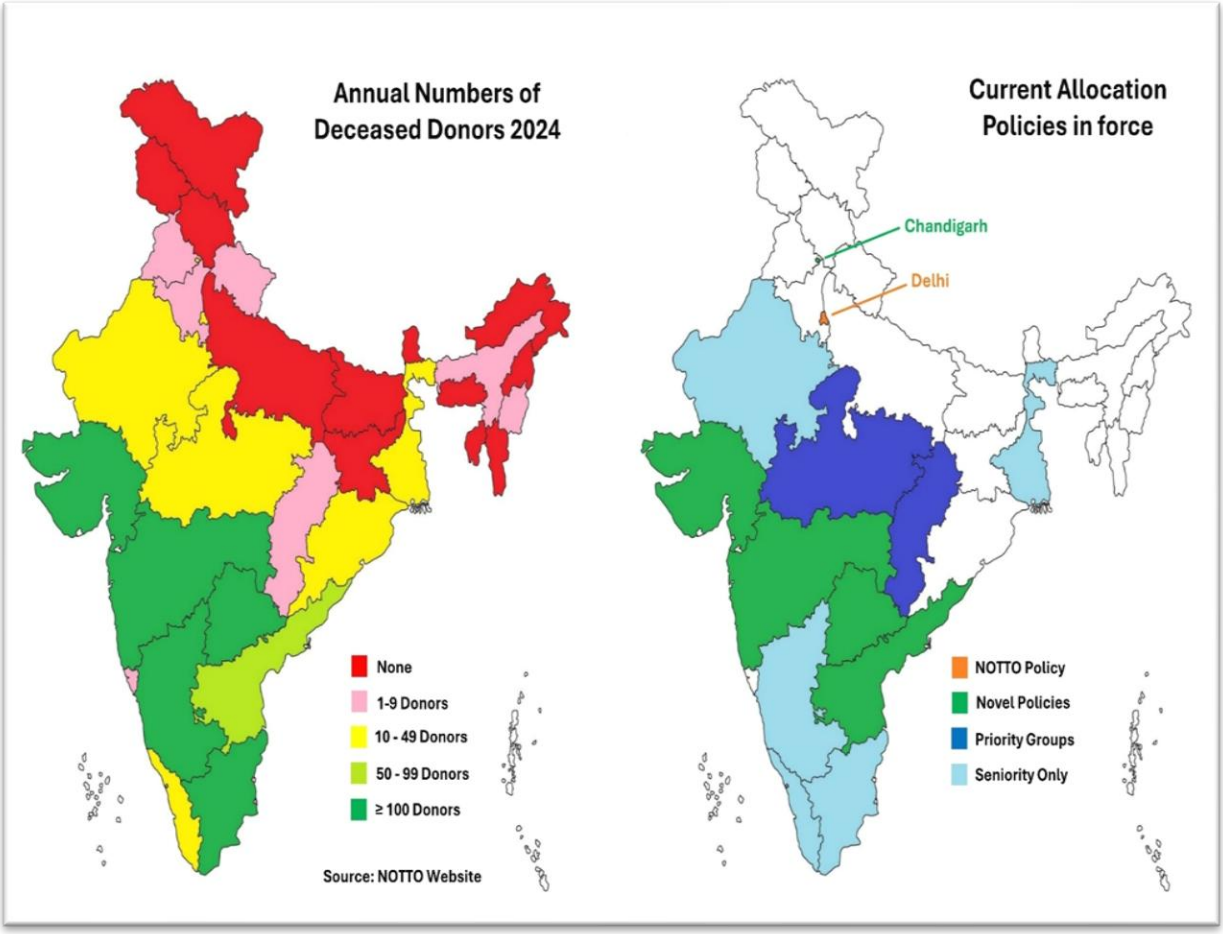


Figure 1: *Deceased Donor Kidney Transplant Activity in India and Prevalent Allocation Policies*

ALLOCATION VARIABLES: NOTTO AND STATE POLICIES											
Consideration	**NOTTO**		**Telangana**		**Gujarat**		**PGIMER**		**Maharashtra**		**Other States**
	Points	RW*	**Points**	RW	**Points**	RW	**Points**	RW	**Points**	RW	
Dialysis (each month)	**1**	Ref	**0.1**	Ref	**-**	-	**1**	Ref	**0.1**	Ref	-
Registration (each month)	**-**		**0.1**	1	**1-6**[4]	REF[4]	**-**	-	**0.1**	1	✓
Previous Living donor	**5**	5	**3**	30	**6**	36	**50**	50	**10**	100	-
Near relative of deceased donor	**5**	5	**-**	-	**-**	-	**40**	40	**-**		-
Prev graft failure (Additive)	**3**[1]	3	**2**	20	**3-6**[5]	13-36	**20**	20	**2**	20	-
Age of recipient: Graded	**1-3**	1-3	**1-3**[2]	10-30	**2-6**	12-36	✓[6]	20	**1-3**	10-30	-
Vascular access crisis	**2-4**	2-4	**0.5-3**[3]	5-30	**-**	-	**-**	-	**0.5**	5	-
Points for Sensitization	**0.5-4**	0.5-4	**1-5**	10-50	**0-14**	36+48	**30**	30	**0-10**	0-100	-
Age Group Match	-	-	**2**	20	**-**	-	✓[7]		✓[8]	20	-
Points for Females	-	-	**-**	-	**2**	12	**-**	-	**1**	10	-
HLA Match (per antigen match)	-	-	**0-6**[4]	10-60	**0-6**	0-36	**-**	-	**-**	-	-
Familial Disease	-	-	**-**	-	**-**	-	**10**	10	**-**	-	-

*__RW: Relative Weightage__: Added advantage given, expressed in months of dialysis (or registration) **1**. Early, Immunological only **2**. 3-45 years **3**. Early (≤ 3 months) 4. 1 for each antigen match. Not in use 4. Upper limit fixed (36 months) **5**. Upto 12 months **6.** Ungraded, <15 years **7**. Marginal kidneys to Elderly **8**. Categories: <18 years, 18-45 years, >45 years

Table 4: *Comparison of NOTTO and Select State Allocation Policies*

B.4. Proposed Unified National Allocation Protocol

To reconcile national equity with regional feasibility, a Unified National Allocation Protocol is proposed as a phased framework, allowing progressive inclusion of equity- and utility-

oriented parameters as state programs mature. This approach **(Table 5)** aligns with THOTA's federal structure while preserving NOTTO's central coordinating role. This unified protocol preserves waiting time as the anchor, restricts high-impact prioritization to well-defined subgroups, and allows scientific sophistication to scale with infrastructure. Importantly, it avoids exclusionary effects in low-donation settings while enabling data-driven evolution toward a true "One India, One Allocation" system.

Domain	Core National Phase (Mandatory for All States)	Intermediate Phase (Equity-Enhanced)	Advanced Phase (Utility-Optimized)
Eligibility for implementation	All transplant programs	States with ≥20 DDKT/year and basic immunology lab	High-volume states/centers with advanced immunology
Waiting time anchor	Registration date ± dialysis vintage	Same as core phase	Same as core phase
Waiting time scoring	+1 point per month	+1 point per month	+1 point per month
Medical urgency	Defined urgent category (failed vascular access, life-threatening complications)	Urgency adjudicated by state committee	National urgent registry with peer review
Pediatric priority	Mandatory pediatric-to-pediatric allocation	Same as core	Same as core
Female recipient priority	Not included	+2 points	+2 points with audit monitoring
Highly sensitized patients	PRA-based points	Priority tier for PRA >95%	CPRA-based allocation / acceptable mismatch
Immunological assessment	ABO compatibility + CDC crossmatch	SAB for highly sensitized	Virtual crossmatch mandatory
Prior graft failure	+3 points per immunological failure	Same as core	Same as core
Vascular access failure	+2 (failed AVF); +4 (failed AVG after AVF)	Same as core	Same as core

Age matching	Not included	Broad age-group matching	Longevity matching (donor–recipient age, KDPI–EPTS)
Reciprocity	+5 for previous living donors	+5 for previous donors	+5 for donors + near relatives
Multi-organ transplantation	Absolute priority	Absolute priority	Absolute priority
Allocation geography	Local → state → regional → national	Same hierarchy	Optimized to reduce ischemia
Data reporting	Mandatory registry entry	Enhanced dataset	Outcome-linked allocation
Governance & audit	SOTTO oversight	Zonal peer review	National audit and modeling

Table 5: *Proposed Unified National Allocation Protocol for Deceased Donor Kidney Transplantation*

Intermediate Phase refers to allocation enhancements introduced in states or regions with moderate deceased donor transplant activity and verified basic immunological infrastructure. This phase focuses on equity-based refinements, such as female recipient priority, structured urgent listing, and enhanced sensitization handling, while retaining waiting time as the primary allocation anchor.

Advanced Phase applies to high-volume states or apex transplant centers with advanced immunological laboratories and robust data reporting systems. This phase incorporates utility-optimizing strategies, including calculated panel reactive antibody (CPRA), acceptable mismatch programs, and longevity matching, aimed at improving long-term graft survival without compromising national equity.

C) ORGAN RETRIEVAL AND PRESERVATION: BEST PRACTICES AND PROTOCOLS

Organ retrieval and preservation represent the terminal yet decisive phase of the deceased donor pathway following BSD certification. Scientific evidence consistently demonstrates that outcomes of organ transplantation are strongly influenced by the quality of retrieval technique, ischemia management, and preservation strategy. Consequently, contemporary transplant guidelines emphasize standardized surgical retrieval, minimization of ischemic

injury, and judicious adoption of advanced preservation technologies to maximize graft function and utilization. Efficient coordination among allocation authorities, retrieval teams, and recipient centres should aim to minimize cold ischemia time, as prolonged preservation adversely affects graft function and utilization. Under the THOTA, organ retrieval may proceed only after valid BSD certification, informed consent, and completion of statutory clearances. Organ procurement must be conducted within a framework that ensures ethical integrity, transparency, and separation of donor care from transplant decision-making.

C.1. Scientific and Ethical Principles of Organ Retrieval

The primary objectives of organ retrieval are to preserve cellular and endothelial integrity, minimize warm ischemia time, achieve rapid and uniform organ cooling, prevent mechanical and immunological injury, and ensure traceability and accountability **(Table 6).** Retrieval procedures should be performed by authorized, trained surgical teams using standardized multiorgan retrieval protocols. The donor's body must be respectfully reconstructed after organ removal, and dignity of the deceased must be preserved throughout the process.

Domain	Key Requirement	Scientific / Ethical Rationale
Legal compliance	BSD certification and consent under THOTA	Establishes lawful basis for retrieval
Ethical safeguards	Separation of donor and transplant teams	Prevents conflict of interest
Surgical expertise	Trained retrieval surgeons	Reduces iatrogenic injury
Ischemia control	Rapid cross-clamp and cooling	Preserves graft viability
Documentation	Accurate recording of times and findings	Enables audit and outcome correlation
Dignity of donor	Proper reconstruction and handover	Maintains societal trust

Table 6: *Ethical, Legal, and Scientific Principles Governing Organ Retrieval*

C.2. Standard Organ Retrieval Technique

Standard multiorgan retrieval involves midline laparotomy, systemic heparinization, aortic cannulation, and cold perfusion with organ preservation solutions. Topical cooling using sterile crushed ice supplements intravascular perfusion. Organs are retrieved sequentially based on established priorities and coordination between retrieval teams. Accurate recording of cross-clamp time, perfusion start time, and organ removal time is mandatory.

C.3. Machine Perfusion: Advanced Organ Preservation

Machine perfusion provides continuous circulation of preservation solution through the organ, improving microvascular perfusion and mitigating ischemia–reperfusion injury. Machine perfusion, particularly hypothermic machine perfusion (HMP), significantly reduces delayed graft function and improves early graft outcomes, especially in kidney and liver transplantation. Two principal modalities are used are HMP and normothermic machine perfusion (NMP).

D) IMPLEMENTATION FRAMEWORK

1. **Step 1:** Completion of BSD certification and activation of the institutional transplant coordination pathway.
2. **Step 2:** Donor stabilization, family counselling, consent, donor evaluation, organ allocation through SOTTO/ROTTO/NOTTO, retrieval, preservation, and documentation according to standardized protocols.

Roles and Responsibilities

The treating ICU team shall maintain donor physiological stability until retrieval. The registered transplant coordinator shall facilitate counselling, documentation, inter-institutional coordination, and communication with SOTTO/ROTTO/NOTTO. Retrieval teams shall perform procurement using standardized techniques, while allocation authorities shall ensure transparent and equitable organ distribution in accordance with national policies.

E) MONITORING AND EVALUATION

1. Indicators

Indicators should include donor conversion rate, organs transplanted per donor, organ utilization rate, cold ischemia time, graft outcomes, and compliance with mandatory documentation and allocation protocols.

2. Review Mechanism

Hospitals and transplant programmes should periodically review post-certification processes through institutional audits and reporting mechanisms coordinated by SOTTO, ROTTO, and NOTTO to promote continuous quality improvement and uniform implementation of national guidelines.

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

1. **Variability in post-certification practices:** Despite national legislation, considerable inter-institutional variation exists in donor coordination, family counselling, documentation, and allocation practices. Differences in infrastructure, transplant volume, and availability of trained personnel contribute to inconsistencies in implementation.

2. **Balancing equity with organ utilization:** India continues to face low deceased donor rates and marked regional disparities in transplantation activity. Allocation systems must therefore balance equity, transparency, waiting time, urgency, immunological considerations, and logistical feasibility without compromising public trust or increasing organ discard.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. BSD certification is the legal trigger for the deceased organ donation pathway.
2. Standardized post-certification management improves organ utilization and transplant outcomes.
3. Family counselling and informed consent must comply with THOTA.
4. Organ allocation should occur exclusively through transparent SOTTO/ROTTO/NOTTO mechanisms.
5. National harmonization of allocation policies should balance equity, utility, and regional feasibility.
6. Standardized retrieval and preservation practices minimize ischemic injury and improve graft survival.
7. Continuous audit and adherence to national protocols strengthen public confidence in deceased organ donation.

CONCLUSION

Post-certification management following BSD is a critical determinant of the success, integrity, and sustainability of deceased organ donation programs. A structured, legally compliant, and ethically grounded pathway, from BSD certification through donor management, organ procurement, allocation, retrieval, and preservation, is essential to translate the declaration of death into lifesaving transplantation outcomes. Adherence to the THOTA, coupled with coordination through SOTTO/NOTTO, ensures transparency, equity,

and public trust. Scientific evidence underscores the importance of standardized donor maintenance, meticulous retrieval techniques, and optimized preservation strategies, including the judicious use of machine perfusion, to improve organ utilization and graft outcomes. Continuous quality assurance, audit, and capacity building are necessary to maintain uniform standards across institutions. Strengthening these processes within a nationally harmonized framework will enhance the effectiveness of deceased organ donation, maximize the societal benefit of donated organs, and reinforce ethical confidence in the transplant ecosystem.

REFERENCES

1. Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act, 1994 (THOTA). Act of Parliament of India enacted for regulation of removal, storage and transplantation of human organs and tissues for therapeutic purposes and prevention of illegal commercial dealings. Came into force February 4 1995; amended 2011; implemented with Rules 2014. Available at India Code repository.

2. National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO) – Act and Rules under Transplantation of Human Organs & Tissues Act (THOTA) detailing establishment of national network (NOTTO, ROTTO, SOTTO) and regulatory framework for organ retrieval and allocation in India. Directorate General of Health Services, Government of India.

3. National Organ Transplant Act (NOTA) of 1984 (United States) – U.S. federal legislation establishing the Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network (OPTN) and framework for fair allocation and distribution of deceased donor organs.

4. The Final Rule (U.S. organ allocation policy) – national policy requiring equitable organ distribution based on medical judgment, urgency, and geographic considerations, customizing allocation across regions.

5. OPTN Policies & Bylaws (2025 update) – United Network for Organ Sharing policies governing organ allocation criteria, match run requirements, and data standards to ensure fairness and transparency in the U.S. organ transplant system. U.S. HRSA/OPTN official site.

6. Selection, Registration and Allocation Policies – NHS Blood and Transplant (UK) patient selection and organ allocation guidelines outlining evidence-based, equitable criteria for deceased donor organs in the UK transplant system.

7. Martin-Loeches I, Sandiumenge A, Charpentier J, et al. Management of the brain-dead donor in ICU: therapy to improve transplantable organ quality. Intensive Care Med. 2019;45(3):322–330. doi:10.1007/s00134-019-05573-z. (Donor management evidence).

8. Youn TS, Greer DM. Brain death and management of a potential organ donor in the ICU. Crit Care Clin. 2014;30(4):813–831. (Clinical and physiological principles of donor maintenance).

9. Jochmans I, O'Callaghan JM, Schachtner T, et al. Machine perfusion in kidney transplantation: consensus on trial design from the European Society for Organ Transplantation. Transplantation. 2021;105(4):680–693. (Evidence for perfusion technology).

10. Ethics of allocation of donor organs: ethical principles and challenges in fair organ distribution. J Med Ethics Symp. (Review). Common principles include equity and utility, urgency, and outcomes monitoring.

SECTION-B: SELECTION OF BRAINSTEM DONOR

INTRODUCTION

The evaluation and management of deceased organ donors, particularly those following the declaration of brain death, represent a cornerstone of modern transplant medicine. As the disparity between the growing waiting list for organs and the stagnant pool of "perfect" donors widens, a paradigm shift is required—moving from a strategy of exclusion to one of proactive optimization and selective acceptance. This document outlines a structured, evidence-based approach to maximizing the potential of every deceased donor while ensuring the safety and longevity of the transplant recipient.

At the heart of successful donation is the early identification of potential donors within the Intensive Care Unit (ICU). This process necessitates a seamless integration of clinical vigilance and ethical communication. A key recommendation emphasized throughout these guidelines is the concept of decoupling: the deliberate separation of the clinical declaration of brain death from the initial request for organ donation. This separation is vital to maintain public trust, ensuring that families understand that the pursuit of life-saving treatment for their loved one was independent of the possibility of donation.

Donors are categorized into Standard Criteria Donors (SCD) and Expanded Criteria Donors (ECD). While SCDs represent the historical ideal, the use of ECDs—including the elderly, those with Acute Kidney Injury (AKI), or those with controlled comorbidities—is essential to bridge the organ demand gap1. The intensivist acts as the "bridge" in this process, transitioning from a focus on neuroprotection to a focus on multiorgan preservation. This involves rigorous hemodynamic monitoring, hormone replacement therapy, and the prevention of the "catecholamine storm" typical of brain death.

Evaluation focuses on the dual goals of minimizing transmission risks (specifically infections and malignancies) and maximizing organ utility. These guidelines advocate for a nuanced risk-benefit analysis, allowing for the selective acceptance of higher-risk donors. Organ-specific recommendations provide tailored frameworks for kidneys, liver, heart, lungs, pancreas, and intestines, noting that functional stability often outweighs chronological age. Furthermore, the guidelines address contemporary challenges, including mandatory COVID-19 screening and the exclusion of donors with Vaccine-Induced Immune Thrombotic Thrombocytopenia (VITT). Ultimately, by strengthening intensivist-led coordination and expanding donor criteria, the medical community can significantly improve transplantation outcomes and save more lives.

1. Background

Organ transplantation remains the definitive, life-saving intervention for patients suffering from end-stage organ failure. Whether the pathology is end-stage renal disease, decompensated cirrhosis, or refractory heart failure, a transplant often represents the only hope for survival and a return to a functional quality of life. Historically, the primary source of these organs has been deceased donors, specifically those diagnosed with brain death. Despite the success of transplant programs worldwide, we face a global "transplant crisis" characterized by a persistent and widening gap between the number of patients on waiting lists and the availability of viable organs.

2. Context

In the modern clinical landscape, multiple barriers continue to limit donor conversion rates. These range from systemic issues, such as delayed identification of brain death, to social hurdles like inadequate or poorly timed communication with grieving families. Furthermore, overly restrictive donor criteria often lead to the "discard" of organs that could have functioned well in the right recipient.

Recent advancements in critical care and perfusion technologies have changed the status quo. The emergence of Expanded Criteria Donors (ECD) and Donation after Circulatory Death (DCD) has forced a reconsideration of what constitutes a "suitable" organ. We now understand that many organs previously deemed "marginal" can provide excellent long-term outcomes, particularly when matched to the right recipient.

3. Objectives of the Chapter

This comprehensive guide is designed to serve as a roadmap for clinicians involved in the donor journey. Its primary objectives include:

1. **Standardization:** Providing consistent, evidence-based recommendations for the evaluation and physiological management of deceased donors.

2. **Utilization:** Enhancing organ availability by advocating for the expansion of donor criteria and the use of marginal organs under specific, monitored conditions.

3. **Defining Roles:** Clarifying the pivotal role of the intensivist in identifying potential donors and leading the multidisciplinary team during the maintenance phase.

4. **Risk Mitigation:** Outlining clear strategies for assessing the risk of disease transmission (malignancy and infection) to protect the recipient.

5. **Ethical Frameworks:** Improving the communication between medical teams and donor families to ensure informed, voluntary, and compassionate consent processes.

A) GENERAL DONOR EVALUATION

A comprehensive assessment is required to ensure organ viability and recipient safety.

1. **Medical History:** Rigorous review of past hospitalizations, social history (to assess high-risk behaviors), and travel history.

2. **Physical Exam:** Checking for signs of intravenous drug use, occult malignancies, or infections.

3. **Laboratory Screening:** Includes ABO typing, HLA typing, and a full infectious disease panel (HIV, Hep B/C, Syphilis, CMV, EBV).

4. **Hemodynamic Optimization:** Target a Mean Arterial Pressure (MAP) of 65–70 mmHg. Use of vasopressin is preferred over high-dose norepinephrine to minimize vasoconstriction in the peripheral organs.

Absolute Contraindications for Deceased Donor (Infection and Malignancy Related)

a. Infection Related Absolute Contraindications for Donor Organs [12,13]

   1. Uncontrolled Sepsis
   2. Rabies
   3. Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease
   4. Disseminated fungal infection
   5. Viral encephalitis (unknown)
   6. Disseminated tuberculosis

b. Malignancy Related Absolute Contraindications for Donor Organs[14,15]

   1. Active cancer
   2. Melanoma
   3. Hematological Malignancy
   4. Metastatic Disease

B) KIDNEY SELECTION AND MANAGEMENT

Kidneys are the most frequently transplanted organs.

1. **AKI Donors:** Acute kidney injury in the donor does not necessarily preclude donation. Many kidneys with AKI recover fully post-transplant.

2. **Dual Kidney Transplant:** For elderly donors with a low Nephron mass, both kidneys may be transplanted into a single recipient to provide adequate clearance.

3. **Biopsy:** Pre-implantation biopsies can help quantify chronic changes (glomerulosclerosis) to guide the decision to use the organ.

C) LIVER SELECTION AND MANAGEMENT

The liver has a remarkable regenerative capacity, making criteria more flexible.

1. **Age:** There is no "cutoff" age for liver donation; successful transplants have occurred from octogenarian donors.

2. **Steatosis:** Macrovesicular steatosis (fatty liver) >30% is associated with higher failure rates, but mild steatosis is acceptable[5].

3. **Viral Status:** Livers from Hepatitis C-positive donors can now be safely transplanted into HCV-negative recipients thanks to highly effective Direct-Acting Antiviral (DAA) therapies[6].

D) HEART SELECTION AND MANAGEMENT

The heart is highly sensitive to the catecholamine surge of brain death.

1. **Echocardiography:** Every potential heart donor must have an echo. If the Ejection Fraction (EF) is low initially, it should be re-evaluated after 12–24 hours of optimization, as "stunned myocardium" often recovers[7].

2. **LV Hypertrophy:** Significant hypertrophy (>1.4 cm wall thickness) is a contraindication due to poor preservation tolerance[8].

3. **Age:** Generally preferred under 55, though older donors are considered if coronary angiography is clean.

4. **Table 1** provides standard and expanded criteria for donor heart transplants.

HEART DONOR CRITERIA[14-16]		
Parameter	**Standard Criteria**	**Expanded (Marginal) Criteria**
Age	< 50 years	50–65 years (sometimes up to 70 with caution)
Cardiac History	No history of CAD, HTN, or cardiomyopathy	Mild, controlled HTN or limited risk factors

Hemodynamics	Stable, minimal inotropes	Moderate inotropic support acceptable
Ejection Fraction (EF)	≥ 50–55%	40–50% if reversible (e.g., stunning)
ECG	Normal	Minor abnormalities acceptable
Coronary Arteries	Normal angiography (if indicated)	Mild CAD acceptable (no critical stenosis)
Troponin Levels	Normal	Mild elevation acceptable if improving
Structural Abnormalities	None	Minor abnormalities acceptable
Infection Status	No active infection	Treatable infection acceptable
Cause of Death	Non-cardiac (e.g., trauma, SAH)	Cardiac cause acceptable if function recovered
Ischemic Time	< 4 hours	May extend slightly with preservation techniques
Donor–Recipient Match	Ideal size match	Mild mismatch acceptable

Table 1: *Standard vs Expanded Heart Donor Criteria*

E) LUNG SELECTION AND MANAGEMENT

Lungs are prone to neurogenic pulmonary edema and aspiration.

1. **Oxygenation:** A PaO_2/FiO_2 ratio >300 mmHg is ideal.
2. **Recruitment:** Aggressive pulmonary hygiene and lung recruitment maneuvers are essential[9].
3. **Smokers:** A history of smoking is not an absolute contraindication unless significant emphysema or a high pack-year history exists.
4. **Table 2** provides standard and expanded criteria for donor lung transplants.

LUNG DONOR CRITERIA[14-17]		
Parameter	**Standard Criteria**	**Expanded (Marginal) Criteria**
Age	< 55 years	Up to 65–70 years
Smoking History	< 20 pack-years	> 20 pack-years acceptable
PaO_2/FiO_2 Ratio	> 300 mmHg	200–300 mmHg acceptable
Chest X-ray	Clear	Mild infiltrates acceptable

Bronchoscopy	Clear, no secretions	Mild secretions, manageable
Pulmonary Infection	None	Treatable infection acceptable
Ventilation Duration	< 5 days	> 5 days acceptable
Aspiration History	None	Possible if resolved
Trauma	No lung contusion	Mild contusion acceptable
ABG Stability	Stable oxygenation	Moderate impairment acceptable
PEEP Requirement	Low (<5 cm H_2O)	Higher acceptable if oxygenation adequate
Donor History	No lung disease	Mild COPD/asthma acceptable
Ischemic Time	< 6–8 hours	Extended with EVLP (ex vivo lung perfusion)

Table 2: *Standard v/s Expanded Lung Donor Criteria*

F) PANCREAS AND INTESTINE

These organs remain the most sensitive to ischemia and donor instability.

1. **Selection:** Preferred from young (15–40 years), hemodynamically stable donors with no history of diabetes or heavy alcohol use.

2. **Trauma:** Abdominal trauma often precludes intestinal donation due to the risk of bacterial translocation.

G) SPECIAL CONDITIONS AND EMERGING RISKS

1. **COVID-19:** All donors must undergo NAT (Nucleic Acid Testing). While lung donation from COVID-positive donors is generally avoided, non-lung organs may be considered if the donor is asymptomatic and the cycle threshold (Ct) values are high.

2. **VITT:** Donors who died from Vaccine-Induced Immune Thrombotic Thrombocytopenia should generally be avoided for organ donation due to the high risk of catastrophic thrombotic events in the recipient.

H) COLD ISCHEMIA TIME (CIT)

CIT refers to the time the organ is chilled and without blood supply. Exceeding these limits significantly increases the risk of delayed graft function. So, **Table 3** provides the time limit for CIT.

Organ	Recommended Maximum Cold Ischemia Time (CIT)[10,11,14-17]
Kidney	<36 HOURS
Liver	<12 HOURS
Heart	<4-6 HOURS
Lungs	<6-8 HOURS
Pancreas	<12-18 HOURS
Intestine	<6-8 HOURS

Table 3: *Time Limit for Cold Ischemia Time (CIT)*

I) IMPLEMENTATION FRAMEWORK

1. Step 1: Identification and Referral

Every hospital should have a "trigger" protocol where the ICU notifies the transplant team when a patient meets specific clinical criteria, regardless of the physician's personal opinion on suitability.

2. Step 2: Formal Evaluation

This involves the "Donor Management Bundle":

i. Invasive arterial monitoring.

ii. Central venous pressure monitoring.

iii. Correction of electrolytes (especially Sodium, aiming for <155 mEq/L): While 130 to 155 mEq/L is often targeted, serum sodium levels up to160 mEq/L or slightly higher may be accepted depending on the organ (e.g., kidneys) and overall donor condition. Serum sodium levels over 160 to 165 mEq/L can cause organ damage (especially liver) and impact graft function, requiring active management.

iv. Hormone Replacement Therapy (Levothyroxine, Methylprednisolone, and Insulin).

Roles and Responsibilities

i. Intensivist: The "Captain of the Ship" until the donor enters the OR(Operation Room). Focuses on physiological stability.

ii. Transplant Coordinator: Manages the legalities, family liaison, and the logistics of the surgical recovery teams.

iii. Transplant Surgeon: Makes the final "call" on organ acceptance based on visual inspection and clinical data.

J) MONITORING AND EVALUATION

To ensure the growth of a donation program, hospitals must track key performance indicators **(KPIs):**

1. Conversion Rate: The percentage of eligible donors who actually become actual donors.

2. Organs Transplanted Per Donor (OTPD): A measure of how well organs were managed and utilized.

3. Graft Survival: Tracking the 1-year and 5-year survival of organs retrieved from the facility.

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

1. **Low Consent Rates**

   The most significant bottleneck in the donation process is family refusal. This often stems from poor communication. If the same physician who delivers the news of death immediately asks for organs, the family may feel a conflict of interest exists. This underscores the need for "decoupling" and the involvement of trained donor coordinators who specialize in bereavement and consent.

2. **Underutilization of Marginal Donors**

   There is a pervasive "fear of failure" among transplant surgeons and physicians. The risk of primary graft non-function leads to the rejection of organs from donors with mild AKI, elderly donors, or those with certain infections. However, data shows that for many patients on the waiting list, the risk of dying while waiting for a "perfect" organ is far higher than the risk of accepting a marginal one[3].

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. Proactive Management: The transition from palliative care to donor management must be swift. The "Rule of 100s" (SBP >100mmhg, Urine Output >100ml/hr, PaO-2 >100mmhg) serves as a useful, albeit simplified, target.

2. Trust is Paramount: Decoupling the death notification from the donation request is the single most effective way to improve family consent rates.

3. Expanding the Pool: Age alone should not be a reason to reject a donor. Functional assessment via imaging and lab trends is far more predictive of graft success.
4. Infection Control: While active sepsis in a donor is a concern, most bacterial infections can be managed by treating the donor and continuing antibiotics in the recipient.
5. Kidney Innovation: AKI donors and "marginal" kidneys should be utilized, often through dual-transplantation or placement in older recipients.
6. Lungs and Heart: Functional testing (echo and blood gases) should be serial. An organ that looks "bad" on admission may become a viable transplant after 24 hours of ICU optimization.
7. Ischemia Matters: Every hour of cold ischemia reduced improves the "longevity" of the organ. Logistics must be optimized to keep CIT as low as possible.
8. The Role of the Intensivist: Successful organ donation is not just a surgical triumph; it is the result of meticulous, high-quality critical care provided in the final hours of the donor's life.

CONCLUSION

Maximizing the potential of deceased organ donation requires a fundamental shift from rigid donor exclusion to proactive, evidence-based optimization and expanded utilization. As the disparity between waiting lists and available organs continues to grow, optimizing the management of standard criteria donors while safely expanding criteria to include marginal, elderly, or acute kidney injury donors is essential to bridge the critical supply gap.

A successful donation ecosystem depends on a structured, multi-step approach centered on early identification, standardized clinical management, and rigorous donor evaluation. Decoupling the clinical declaration of brain death from the initial request for organ donation remains a pivotal practice to preserve public trust and maintain ethical communication with grieving families. Once donation is initiated, active physiological management—guided by the intensivist—is critical. Transitioning from neuroprotection to proactive organ preservation requires meticulous hemodynamic targeting, hormone replacement therapy, and the active prevention or mitigation of brain-death-induced catecholamine surges.

Furthermore, shifting from strict chronological age limits to serial functional assessments enables the safe acceptance of organs previously deemed non-viable, such as stunned myocardium or livers with mild steatosis. By standardizing risk-benefit evaluations for infections and malignancies, while simultaneously minimizing cold ischemia times through

streamlined logistics, clinical teams can protect recipient safety while improving long-term graft survival.

Ultimately, realization of donor potential demands seamless interdisciplinary collaboration between intensivists, transplant coordinators, and surgeons to execute donor bundles, navigate legal requirements, and track conversion rates. By embedding evidence-based management and expanded criteria into routine critical care, healthcare systems can minimize organ discard and save more lives.

REFERENCES

1. Stratta, Robert J., et al. "Increased kidney transplantation utilizing expanded criteria deceased organ donors with results comparable to standard criteria donor transplant." *Annals of surgery* 239.5 (2004): 688-697.
2. Anwar, ASM Tanim, and Jae-myeong Lee. "Medical management of brain-dead organ donors." *Acute and Critical Care* 34.1 (2019): 14-29.
3. Saidi, R. F., and SK Hejazii Kenari. "Challenges of organ shortage for transplantation: solutions and opportunities." *International journal of organ transplantation medicine* 5.3 (2014): 87.
4. Puri, Pankaj, Abhinav Kumar, and Mohd Qaleem. "Donor evaluation protocol for live and deceased donors." *Journal of Clinical and Experimental Hepatology* 14.1 (2024): 101217.
5. McCormack, Lucas, et al. "Liver transplantation using fatty livers: always feasible?." *Journal of hepatology* 54.5 (2011): 1055-1062.
6. Torres-Diaz, J. A., et al. "Hepatitis C virus-positive donors in HCV-negative recipients in liver transplantation: Is it possible in Mexico?." *Revista de Gastroenterología de México (English Edition)* 88.4 (2023): 392-403.
7. Casartelli, Marilena, et al. "Wait, treat and see: echocardiographic monitoring of brain-dead potential donors with stunned heart." *Cardiovascular Ultrasound* 10.1 (2012): 25.
8. Tong, Calvin KW, and Kiran K. Khush. "New approaches to donor selection and preparation in heart transplantation." *Current Treatment Options in Cardiovascular Medicine* 23.5 (2021): 28.

9. Pergolizzi, Carola, et al. "Strategies for Maximising Lung Utilisation in Donors After Brain and Cardiac Death: A Narrative Review." *Journal of Clinical Medicine* 14.15 (2025): 5380.

10. Belzer FO, & Southard JH. (1988). *Principles of solid-organ preservation by cold storage*. *Transplantation, 45*(4), 673–676.

11. Feng S, Goodrich NP, Bragg-Gresham JL, et al. (2006). *Characteristics associated with liver graft failure: The concept of donor risk index*. *American Journal of Transplantation, 6*(4), 783–790.

12. Ison MG, & Nalesnik MA. (2011). *An update on donor-derived disease transmission in organ transplantation*. *American Journal of Transplantation, 11*(6), 1123–1130.

13. Fishman JA. (2007). *Infection in organ transplantation*. *American Journal of Transplantation, 7*(4), 856–864.

14. Uszczak H, Lowenstein SE, Crow L, Roll GR, McCalmont TH, Arron ST. Potential for overlooked melanoma in solid organ donors with a severely dysplastic nevus. JAAD Case Rep. 2018 Aug 11;4(7):682-683. doi: 10.1016/j.jdcr.2018.04.018. PMID: 30112454; PMCID: PMC6092521.

15. Turra V, Manzi J, Rombach S, Zaragoza S, Ferreira R, Guerra G, Conzen K, Nydam T, Livingstone A, Vianna R, Abreu P. Donors With Previous Malignancy: When Is It Safe to Proceed With Organ Transplantation? Transpl Int. 2025 Jan 24;38:13716. doi: 10.3389/ti.2025.13716. PMID: 39926359; PMCID: PMC11802283.

16. International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation. (2021). *The International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation guidelines for the care of heart transplant recipients*. *The Journal of Heart and Lung Transplantation, 40*(9), 1131–1151.

17. International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation. (2015). *A consensus document for the selection of lung transplant candidates*. *The Journal of Heart and Lung Transplantation, 34*(1), 1–15.

18. Costanzo MR, Dipchand A, Starling R, et al. (2010). *The International Society of Heart and Lung Transplantation guidelines for the care of heart transplant recipients*. *The Journal of Heart and Lung Transplantation, 29*(8), 914–956.

19. Weill D, Benden C, Corris PA, et al. (2015). *A consensus document for the selection of lung transplant candidates*. *The Journal of Heart and Lung Transplantation, 34*(1), 1–15.

CHAPTER 7

SOMATIC SUPPORT AND MULTIDISCIPLINARY MANAGEMENT AFTER DECLARATION OF BRAIN-STEM DEATH

AUTHOR(s):

Dr. Vivek Kute, Dr. Arpita Ray Chaudhury, Dr. Amlendu Yadav, Dr. Madhuri Kurdi, Dr. Ridhima Sharma, Dr. Sukhminder Jit Singh Bajwa

Department and Affiliation

1. Professor and Unit Head, Nephrology and Transplantation Institute of Kidney Diseases and Research Center and Dr. H L Trivedi Institute of Transplantation Sciences, (IKDRC-ITS), and the Gujarat University of Transplantation Sciences (GUTS), Ahmedabad, Gujarat.
2. Professor and HOD, Department of Nephrology NBMCH/ IPGMER, Kolkata.
3. Professor and HOD, Department of Emergency Medicine, ABVIMS & Dr. RML Hospital, New Delhi.
4. Professor, Department of Anaesthesia, Karnataka Medical College and Research Institute, Hubli, Karnataka.
5. Associate Professor, Department of Anaesthesia & Critical Care, AIIMS, Nagpur, Maharashtra.

6. Secretary, Indian Society of Anaesthesiologists (ISA). Dean/Principal, Prof. Anaesthesiology & Intensive Care, M. M. College of Medical Sciences & Research, Sadopur, Ambala, Haryana.

INTRODUCTION

The moment brain-stem death is declared, the clinical team faces a paradox that sits at the very heart of organ transplantation: a patient who is legally dead but whose organs remain biologically alive, and whose care in the next few hours will determine whether those organs can give life to others. This chapter addresses what happens in that critical window, not just the physiology, but the coordinated human effort required to honour it.

In the intensive care unit, this creates a unique clinical paradigm: the management of a physiologically 'live' body without a functioning central nervous system. This somatic support is not merely a technical exercise but a vital bridge to organ transplantation, fetal survival in pregnancy, or the transition of grief for bereaved families [i]. The pathophysiology following BSD is characterized by a 'sympathetic storm,' followed by profound vasoplegia and endocrine collapse[ii]. Without aggressive intervention, multi-organ failure occurs within hours, rendering potential grafts non-viable.

This chapter delineates the management protocols for BSD patients, strictly adhering to the Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine (ISCCM) and National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO) guidelines, while incorporating international consensus for complex scenarios like pregnancy. It also addresses the religious and cultural dimensions of brain death that shape consent conversations across India's diverse communities, and examines the operational barriers within our national allocation network that continue to limit conversion of potential donors into actual transplants.

The guiding principle throughout is straightforward: every brain-dead patient deserves the same standard of physiological care, regardless of donation outcome, because that care reflects both medical excellence and human dignity.

Fig. 1: Multisystemic effects of brainstem death

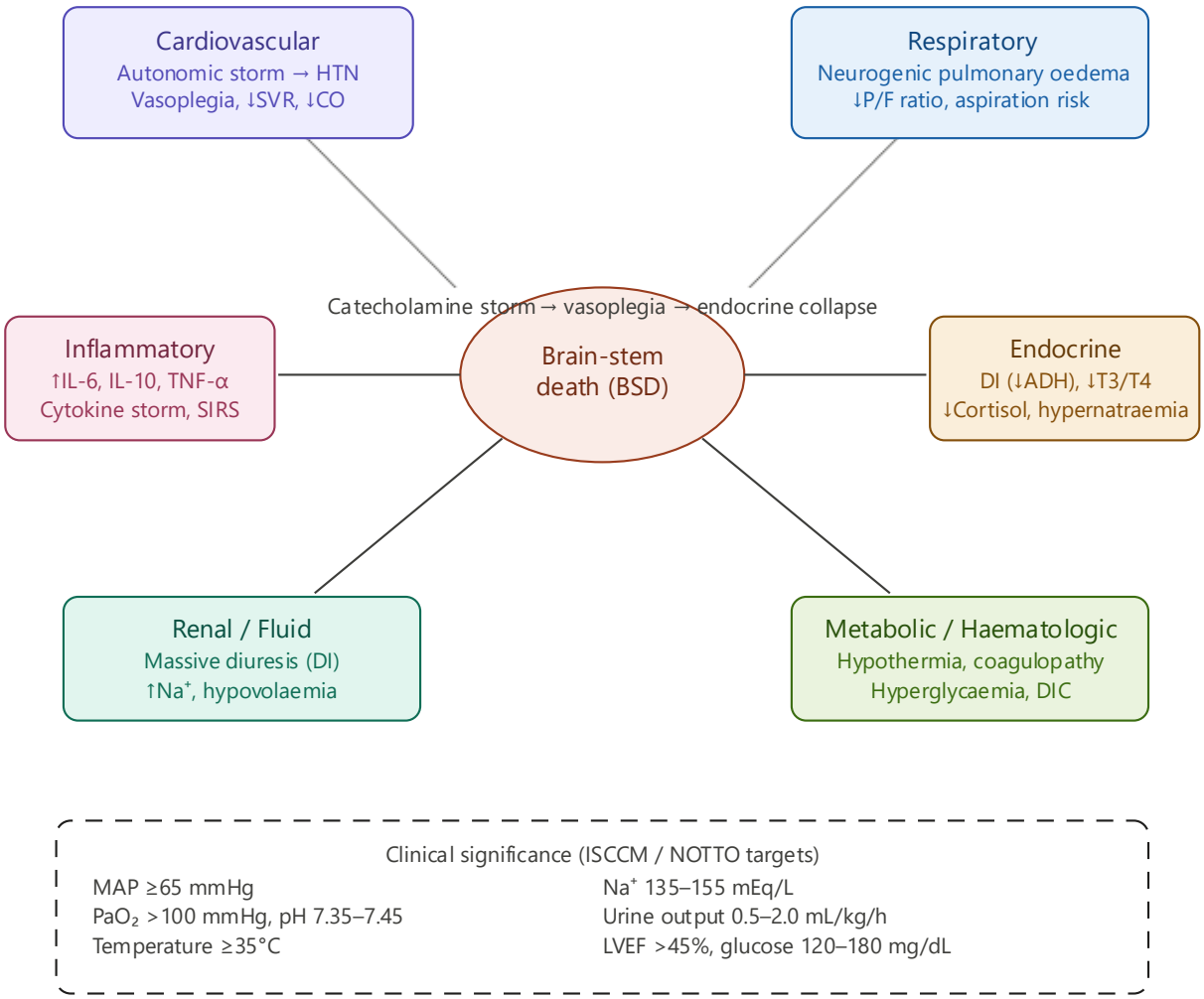


Figure 1: *Multisystemic Effects of Brain-Stem Death*

A) OPTIMIZATION AND MAINTENANCE OF CERTIFIED BSD PATIENT IN ICU

Fig. 2: Main objectives of organ donor management

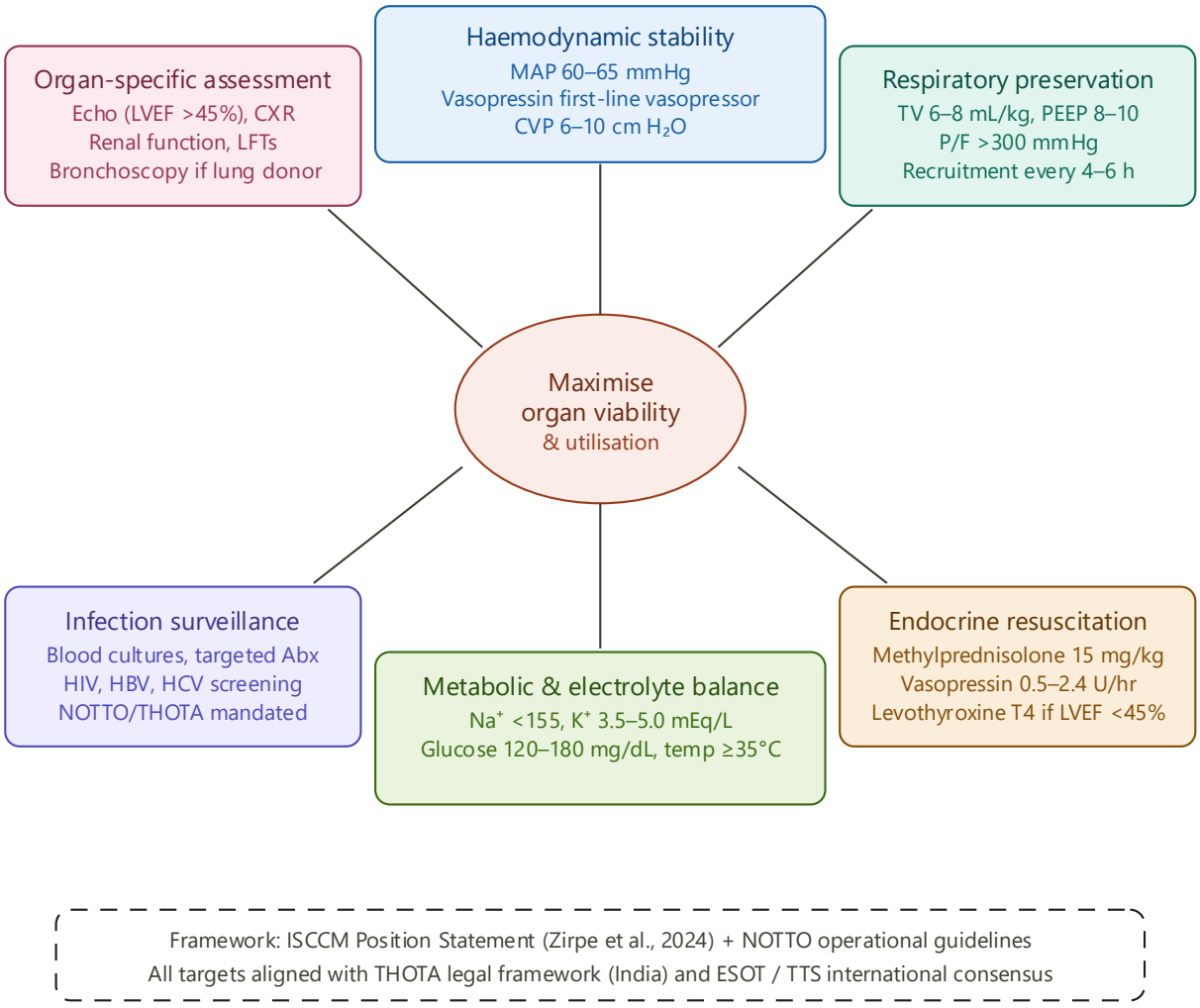


Figure 2: *Main Objectives of Organ Donor Management* **Error! Bookmark not defined.,i**

Parameter	Target Value
Mean Arterial Pressure	60 – 65 mmHg
Heart Rate	60 – 120 bpm
Central Venous Pressure	6 – 10 cm H2O
Urine Output	0.5 – 2.0 mL/kg/h
PaO2	> 70 mmHg

pH	7.35 – 7.45
Blood Sugars	120 – 180 mg/dL
Hemoglobin	> 7.0 g/dL
Body Temperature	36.5°C – 37.5°C
Serum Sodium	135 – 155 mEq/dL
Left Ventricular Ejection Fraction	> 45%

Table 1: *Physiological Targets for Potential Organ Donors (ISCCM/NOTTO)* (Mani et al., 2024)

Complication	Frequency	Management
Diabetes Insipidus	70–80%	Vasopressin/Desmopressin
Hypothermia	100%	Warming blankets/fluids
Coagulopathy	20%	FFP, Cryoprecipitate
Hypernatremia	60%	5% Dextrose infusion

Table 2: *Common Complications and Their Approximate Incidence in BSD Management (Anwar & Lee, 2019; Meyfroidt et al., 2019)*

Intervention	Requirement
Eye Care	Polyethylene film or moist gauze
Oral Hygiene	Chlorhexidine swabs every 4-6h
Bed Position	30-45 degree head tilt
Suctioning	Closed system tracheal suction
Bowel Care	Stress ulcer prophylaxis

Table 3: *General ICU Bundle for the Deceased Donor (Mani et al., 2024)*

A.1. Haemodynamic Management

As intracranial pressure rises and brainstem ischaemia progresses from the rostral to the caudal sections, a massive release of catecholamines, epinephrine, norepinephrine, and dopamine, ensues **Error! Bookmark not defined.**. This surge, the 'autonomic storm,' results in severe hypertension, tachycardia, and increased systemic vascular resistance. The heart faces immense afterload, which can trigger subendocardial ischaemia and neurogenic stress cardiomyopathy [ii]. Haemodynamic phases are compared in **Table 4.**

Phase	Hemodynamic State	Key Feature	Management
Autonomic Storm	Hyperdynamic	Tachycardia, HTN	Esmolol (short-acting)

Vasoplegic State	Hypodynamic	Low SVR, Hypotension	Fluid, Vasopressin
Endocrine Collapse	Metabolic Failure	Hypoglycemia, Hypothermia	HRT Bundle

Table 4: *Comparison of Hemodynamic Changes in BSD (Anwar & Lee, 2019)*

Flow Chart 1: The VIPP Approach for Hypotension **Error! Bookmark not defined.**,i,**Error! Bookmark not defined.**

1. V: Ensure normocapnia (PaCO2 35-45) and SpO2 >92%.
2. I: Fluid challenge (500mL crystalloid); target CVP 6-10.
3. P: If LVEF <45% on echo, start Dobutamine or Milrinone.
4. P: Start Vasopressin 0.04 U/min; add Norepinephrine if needed.

The cornerstone of haemodynamic management is maintaining MAP 60-65 mmHg. First-line therapy consists of careful volume resuscitation using isotonic crystalloids or colloids (target CVP 6–10 cm H_2O)**Error! Bookmark not defined.**.Vasopressin (0.5–2.4 units/hour) is the preferred first-line vasopressor as it simultaneously treats central diabetes insipidus and haemodynamic instability. Norepinephrine (0.05–0.3 mcg/kg/min) may be added as second-line, but doses should be minimized to prevent vasoconstriction of graft microvasculature.[i]

A.2. Fluid and Electrolyte Management

Electrolyte targets for organ preservation are listed in **Table 5**. Diabetes insipidus, manifesting as urine output >4 mL/kg/h, hypernatraemia (Na >155 mEq/L), and rising serum osmolarity, is managed with vasopressin (0.5–2.4 units/h IV) or desmopressin (1–4 mcg IV q6h) **Error! Bookmark not defined.**,i.

Electrolyte	Target
Sodium	< 155 mEq/L
Potassium	3.5 – 5.0 mEq/L
Magnesium	1.8 – 2.4 mg/dL
Phosphorus	2.5 – 4.5 mg/dL
Calcium	1.1 – 1.3 mmol/L

Table 5: *Electrolyte Targets for Organ Preservation (Anwar & Lee, 2019; Mani et al., 2024)*

A.3. Respiratory and Lung Management

For potential lung donors, lung-protective ventilation is critical. Ventilator settings: tidal volumes 6–8 mL/kg predicted body weight; PEEP 5–10 cm H_2O. Targets: PaO_2 >70–100 mmHg; pH 7.35–7.45.

Respiratory targets for lung donation are listed in **Table 6**, and lung donor eligibility criteria are detailed in **Table 7**. Frequent suctioning and recruitment manoeuvres are necessary to clear the lungs.**Error! Bookmark not defined.**

Parameter	Goal
Tidal Volume	6 – 8 mL/kg
PEEP	8 – 10 cm H2O
P/F Ratio (PaO2/FiO2)	> 300 mmHg
Peak Airway Pressure	< 30 cm H2O
Recruitment Maneuvers	Every 4 – 6 hours

Table 6: *Respiratory Targets for Lung Donation (Anwar & Lee, 2019; Mani et al., 2024)*

Criteria	Requirement
Age	< 55 years
Smoking History	< 20 pack-years
Chest X-Ray	Clear, no infiltrates
P/F Ratio	> 300 on PEEP 5, 100% O2
Bronchoscopy	No purulent secretions

Table 7: *Criteria for Lung Donor Eligibility (Anwar & Lee, 2019)*

A.4. Hormonal Replacement Therapy

Flow Chart 2: Detailed Bedside Maintenance Protocol for Deceased Donor Management **Error! Bookmark not defined.-Error! Bookmark not defined.**

1. **Diagnosis of BSD**: Two clinical exams (including apnea test) by authorized committee.
2. **Notification**: Mandatory reporting to NOTTO/SOTTO (in India).
3. **Physiological Reset**: Discontinue sedation; start HRT.
4. **Target Stabilization**: Achieve MAP >65, UO >0.5 mL/kg/h, Na <155.
5. **Organ Evaluation**: Echocardiography, CXR, P/F ratio, Renal function tests.

6. **Procurement**: Maintain support until the cross-clamp in the operating theater.

The 'Triple Therapy' or 'Hormonal Bundle' consists of methylprednisolone, vasopressin, and thyroid hormone (T3/T4). Corticosteroids: methylprednisolone (15 mg/kg or 250 mg bolus followed by 100 mg/h) reduce systemic inflammatory response and stabilize haemodynamics[Error! Bookmark not defined.]. Thyroid supplementation: levothyroxine (T4) or T3 is indicated for donors with unstable haemodynamics or reduced ejection fraction (LVEF <45%). The hormonal replacement therapy bundle protocol is detailed in **Table 8.**

Component	Medication	Dosing Strategy
Steroids	Methylprednisolone	15 mg/kg or 250mg bolus
Thyroid	Levothyroxine (T4)	20 mcg bolus, 10 mcg/hr
Vasopressor	Vasopressin	0.5 – 2.4 units/hr
Insulin	Regular Insulin	Titrate to glucose 120-180

Table 8: *Hormonal Replacement Therapy Bundle Protocol (Frenette et al., 2020)*

B) SPECIFIC CLINICAL SCENARIOS

B.1. Management in Case of Organ Donation

Figure 3: Algorithm for Deceased Donor Management After BSD Declaration (ISCCM/NOTTO/THOTA Framework) [Error! Bookmark not defined.-Error! Bookmark not defined.]

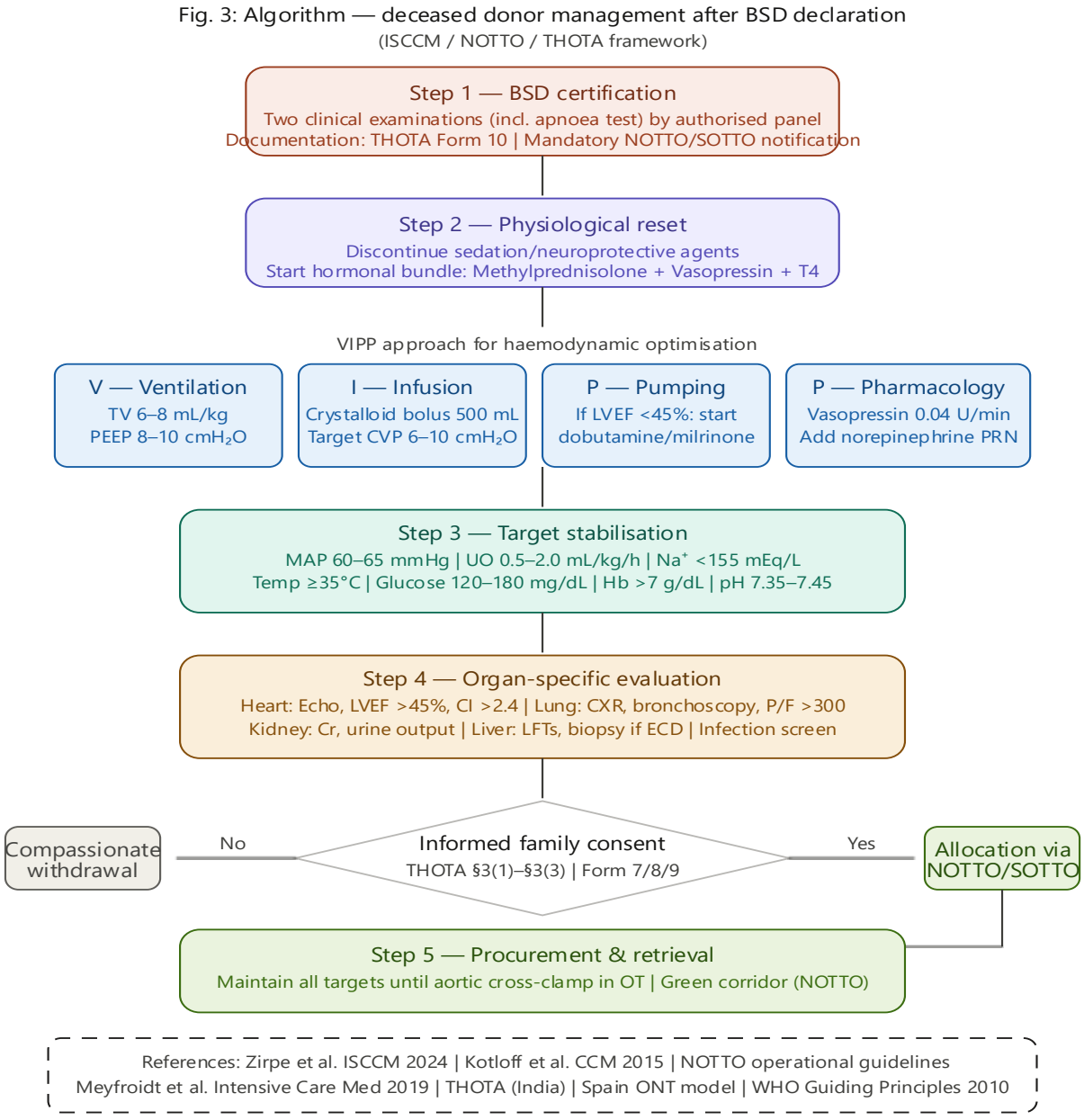


Figure 3: *Algorithm for Deceased Donor Management After BSD Declaration (ISCCM/NOTTO/THOTA Framework)*[1-4]

Once consent is obtained, management follows the 'Donation Optimization Extended Care Bundle'[i]. The focus is on graft-specific physiological targets: Heart, aim for LVEF >45% and Cardiac Index >2.4 L/min/m^2; Liver, glucose control (120–180 mg/dL) and electrolyte stability; kidney, maintain MAP >65 mmHg and urine output 0.5–2 mL/kg/h.

Absolute contraindications and standard vs. expanded criteria for organ donation are shown in **Tables 9-11**.

Category	Specific Contraindication
Malignancies	Metastatic neoplasm, Acute Leukaemia, Active Lymphoma, Melanoma (with <5-year follow-up).
Infections	Untreated sepsis of unknown origin; Rabies; Dengue (viremic phase); Active tuberculosis.
Viral Diseases	HIV (standard cases); Uncertain viral encephalitis; Febrile meningoencephalitis.
Organ Specific	Cirrhosis (for liver); CKD (for kidney); LVEF < 45% (for heart); Advanced COPD (for lung).
General	Age > 90 years; Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease.

Table 9: *Absolute Contraindications for Organ Donation: Quick Clinical Exclusion Checklist*

Contraindication category	Representative conditions	Why donation is avoided
Prion disease	Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease, variant CJD	Near-certain transmission risk with no effective screening or treatment
Disseminated malignancy	Metastatic solid organ malignancy	High risk of donor-derived cancer transmission
High-risk haematological or lymphoid malignancy	Active leukaemia, lymphoma, primary CNS lymphoma	Systemic or occult dissemination with major transmission potential
Rabies or unexplained transmissible encephalitis	Proven rabies, suspected viral encephalitis of unclear cause	Near-universal fatal transmission risk
Uncontrolled systemic infection	Severe uncontrolled sepsis with unacceptable transmissible risk	High likelihood of life-threatening recipient infection
Active untreated tuberculosis	Untreated active TB	Significant transmission risk unless appropriately treated and risk-assessed
Severe emerging transmissible infections	Ebola, SARS, MERS, West Nile virus in relevant settings	Major recipient mortality risk and limited mitigation options

HIV infection	Context-specific	Traditionally contraindicated except within regulated HIV-to-HIV transplant programmes

Table 10: *Absolute Contraindications to Organ Donation: Risk-Based Clinical Explanation*

Domain	Standard-Criteria Donor	Expanded-Criteria Donor
General concept	Donor without major predictors of inferior graft survival	Donor with recognized characteristics associated with higher graft risk but acceptable utility in selected recipients
Age	Usually younger donor; commonly **<50 years**	**≥60 years**, or **50–59 years** with additional risk factors
Hypertension	Absent or minimal	Long-standing hypertension may be present
Diabetes	Usually absent	Selected diabetic donors may be considered after careful assessment
Renal function	Preserved terminal renal function; normal creatinine generally expected	Terminal creatinine elevation or reduced renal reserve may be present
Cause of death	Non-cerebrovascular causes often preferred	Cerebrovascular death contributes to ECD classification
Histology, where used	Normal or near-normal	Mild chronic changes may still be acceptable
Haemodynamic course	Minimal instability	Prior hypotension or vasopressor exposure may be acceptable if organ function is preserved after optimization
Ischaemia time	Standard cold ischaemia time	Prolonged cold ischaemia time may be present and increases graft risk
Expected graft profile	Better projected graft longevity and more predictable graft function	Higher risk of delayed graft function or reduced graft longevity, but potential survival benefit over remaining on dialysis
Allocation approach	Standard allocation	Often preferentially considered for older or higher-risk recipients after informed risk–benefit discussion

Table 11: *Standard vs. Expanded Criteria for Donation, with Kidney Donor Stratification*

The role of ICU care in somatic support for certified BSD donors is presented in **Table 12** [6,7,8,9,10].

Domain of ICU Care	Clinical Objective	Key Interventions & Targets
Haemodynamic	Maintain tissue perfusion; "Rule of 100s"	MAP ≥ 65–70 mmHg; Systolic BP > 100 mmHg; CVP 6–10 mmHg; Minimize vasopressors.
Respiratory	Lung preservation & oxygenation	Protective ventilation: TV 6–8 mL/kg; PEEP 8–10 cmH_2O; PaO_2 > 100 mmHg; FiO_2 < 0.4.
Endocrine	Hormonal Resuscitation Therapy	Vasopressin for DI; Methylprednisolone (15 mg/kg); Insulin for Glucose 140–180 mg/dL.
Fluid/Electrolytes	Correct metabolic derangement	Maintain Urine Output 0.5–3 mL/kg/hr; Serum Na^+ < 150 mEq/L; K^+ 3.5–5.0 mEq/L.
Thermoregulation	Prevent metabolic injury	Active warming (blankets/fluids); Target core temperature ≥ 35°C–36°C.
Renal Protection	Preserve graft viability	Avoid nephrotoxins; maintain normovolemia; RRT if refractory acidosis/hyperkalemia.
Infection Control	Donor-derived infection prevention	Strict hand hygiene; Propped-up position (30°); Cultures (Blood/Urine/Sputum).
Family Liaison	Ethical support & consent	Trained intensivist/coordinator led communication; focus on "the gift of life."

Table 12: *Role of ICU Care in Somatic Support for Certified BSD Patients*

B.2. Management Without Organ Donation

In instances where donation is not possible, due to family refusal, legal restrictions, or medical contraindications, somatic support is typically withdrawn. Family-centred transition: support may be briefly maintained to allow family members to process the loss. Legal compliance: in India, the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA) regulate the declaration of death; once BSD is certified, continuing life support indefinitely is medically futile **Error! Bookmark not defined.**.

B.3. Management in Case of Pregnancy

Somatic support in a brain-dead pregnant mother is one of the most ethically and clinically challenging tasks in medicine. This involves 'prolonged somatic support' to reach fetal viability [iii]. Clinical goal: sustain the mother as a 'biological incubator' until the fetus reaches 28–32 weeks or shows signs of distress [iv]. Maternal MAP should be kept slightly higher (70–80 mmHg) to ensure placental perfusion; haemoglobin should be maintained >10 g/dL [v]. Management targets specific to brain-dead pregnancy are outlined in **Table 13** and **Flow**

Chart 3. Management requires a multidisciplinary team including intensivists, obstetricians, neonatologists, and an ethics committee [6].

Flow Chart 3: Management of Brain-Dead Pregnancy

1. **Identification**: Confirm BSD and confirm fetal heart rate/gestational age.
2. **Multidisciplinary Meeting**: Discuss viability (Is the fetus >24 weeks?).
3. **Ethical Clearance**: Family consent and Institutional Ethics Board approval.
4. **Biological Incubation**: Intensive maternal support.
5. **Delivery Planning**: C-section at 30-32 weeks or earlier if fetal distress (reversing the donor priority).

Factor	Target/Protocol	Rationale
MAP	70 – 80 mmHg	Placental perfusion
Hemoglobin	> 10 g/dL	Fetal oxygenation
Nutrition	2500 – 3000 kcal/day	Fetal growth
Thyroid	Strict T4 replacement	Fetal neurodevelopment
Monitoring	Daily CTG/USG	Fetal wellbeing

Table 13: *Management Targets in Brain-Dead Pregnancy (Esmaeilzadeh et al., 2010; Dodaro MG, et al., 2021)*

C) CONSIDERING RELIGIOUS, CULTURAL AND MORAL BELIEFS

The perception of death is not purely biological; it is deeply rooted in socio-cultural and religious frameworks[14]. Major world religious positions on brain death and organ donation are summarized in **Table 14**.

Religion	Stance on BSD	Key Cultural Nuance
Hinduism	Generally Acceptable	Viewed as "Daan"
Islam	Majority Accept	IFA-OIC Resolution accepts it as death
Buddhism	Variable	Concerns about consciousness departure
Judaism	Variable	Conflict between respiratory and heart death
Catholicism	Fully Accept	Seen as an act of charity and love

Table 14: *Religious Views on Brain Death (Abdeldayem et al., 2016; Atreya et al., 2023; Chamsi-Pasha & Albar, 2017)*

Hinduism generally accepts BSD, viewing the body as a temporary vessel; organ donation is often framed as 'Vidhya Daan' [15]. The majority of Islamic legal bodies accept BSD as death[16], though individual families may associate death only with cessation of the heartbeat[17]. Buddhism presents unique challenges as some believe consciousness lingers until the body

is cold. Secular ethics focuses on the 'Dead Donor Rule,' ensuring organ procurement does not cause death, satisfied by the rigorous BSD declaration process[18].

D) INDIA-SPECIFIC CONSIDERATIONS AND OPERATIONAL FRAMEWORK

Practical hurdles in deceased organ donation in India are catalogued in **Table 15**, and the integrated clinical, operational, and legal framework for donor management is presented in **Table 16**. The Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA/THOA) provides the legal framework. The three-tier network, NOTTO (national), ROTTO (regional), SOTTO (state), coordinates allocation. The 'ISCCM Position Statement on Management of Potential Organ Donor [2] provides actionable guidance adapted to Indian ICU capabilities and resource variability.

Operational domain	Typical challenge	Likely consequence
Donor maintenance resources	Financial and logistical constraints during prolonged ICU support	Inconsistent donor optimization and reduced organ utilization
Retrieval logistics	Time mismatch between abdominal, thoracic, and other retrieval teams	Delay, prolonged warm/cold ischaemia, and avoidable organ loss
ICU protocol adherence	Variable use of structured donor management bundles	Uneven haemodynamic, endocrine, and metabolic optimization
Coordination across agencies	Delays between ICU teams, transplant coordinators, allocation networks, and retrieval teams	Reduced efficiency and missed opportunities
Documentation and workflow burden	Legal, administrative, and communication steps may be fragmented	Slower progression from certification to retrieval
Training and experience	Variable familiarity with donor optimization principles across centres	Lower conversion of potential donors to utilized donors

Table 15: *Practical Hurdles in Deceased Organ Donation in India*

Stage	Clinical priority	Operational priority	Legal / regulatory anchor
Identification of potential donor	Recognize severe irreversible brain injury and poor neurological prognosis	Notify transplant coordinator early	THOTA donor pathway initiation provisions

Brain-stem death certification	Maintain physiological stability during assessment	Arrange authorized certification process	Section 3(6), Form 10 framework
Donor optimization	Preserve perfusion, oxygenation, temperature, endocrine and metabolic stability	Maintain ICU checklist-based management	Duty of responsible medical team under applicable rules
Infection and organ assessment	Exclude unacceptable transmission risk and assess organ suitability	Coordinate testing and specialty review	Required medical evaluation before donation
Family counselling and consent	Sensitive, clear communication	Ensure trained personnel and documentation	Consent provisions and statutory forms
Allocation	Maintain donor stability until final allocation	Interface with SOTTO/ROTTO/NOTTO systems	Allocation under statutory network rules
Retrieval coordination	Minimize delay and preserve organ quality	Synchronize retrieval teams and transport pathways	Institutional and network compliance
Reporting and registry entry	Record outcomes and adverse events	Submit required data	Registry and reporting obligations

Table 16: *Integrated Clinical, Operational and Legal Framework for Donor Management*

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

The hours that follow certification of brain-stem death remain, paradoxically, among the least protocolized in all of critical care. The clinician is asked to sustain, with considerable precision, a body from which the person has already departed, and to do so while the family is still absorbing news it has scarcely begun to believe. Physiologically, the transition from catecholamine storm to vasoplegic collapse is swift and unforgiving; management that is reactive rather than anticipatory almost invariably arrives too late for the graft. Hormonal replacement, although embedded in most position statements, rests on observational and heterogeneous evidence, and the targets that favour one organ frequently disadvantage another — the fluid loading that protects the kidney is precisely what floods the marginal lung. Beyond physiology lie the harder problems: the moral discomfort of treating intensively after death, the absence of any recognized standard of care once donation is declined, the vanishingly small evidence base for somatic support in pregnancy, and, in India,

an uneven distribution of trained coordinators, ICU capacity and allocation efficiency that continues to turn potential donors into missed opportunities.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. Certification of brain-stem death ends the patient's life but not the clinician's obligation. The same standard of physiological care is owed whether or not donation follows, because dignity and medical excellence are not contingent upon organ retrieval.

2. The post-declaration cascade — autonomic storm, vasoplegia, endocrine failure and systemic inflammation — is predictable in both sequence and timing. Management should therefore be pre-emptive and bundled, not improvised at the bedside once instability has declared itself.

3. A structured bundle — restoration of euvolaemia, vasopressin-led vasopressor support, lung-protective ventilation, hormonal replacement and meticulous control of sodium, glucose and temperature — preserves the greatest number of transplantable organs, in accordance with ISCCM and NOTTO guidance.

4. Central diabetes insipidus is near-universal after brain-stem death, and uncorrected hypernatraemia remains one of the most easily avoidable causes of graft dysfunction and donor loss.

5. Organ-specific targets compete. The trade-off between lung and kidney, in particular, should be resolved explicitly by the multidisciplinary team rather than by default in favour of whichever organ the attending clinician knows best.

6. Somatic support in the brain-dead pregnant patient has no protocol and no trial evidence; it requires individualized, ethics-committee-supported care directed at fetal maturation, with delivery planned rather than precipitated.

7. Religious and cultural fluency is not an adjunct to donor management but the medium through which consent, trust and grief are negotiated; in India it is the difference between a conversation and a refusal.

8. System-level gains now depend less on physiology than on logistics: trained transplant coordinators, timely NOTTO/SOTTO notification, and honest audit of every missed donor.

CONCLUSION

The management of the brain-dead patient demands a systematic, protocol-driven, and multidisciplinary approach. Physiological targets summarized in Table 1 form the backbone of all ICU interventions. The hormonal bundle (Table 8), lung-protective ventilation (Table 6 and 7), and electrolyte management (Table 5) are essential to maximize organ viability. Scenario-specific protocols for organ donation, non-donation, and pregnancy (Tables 13) enable personalized care. Religious and cultural sensitivities (Table 14) require proactive communication. India-specific challenges (Tables 15 and 16) highlight gaps requiring policy attention. Adherence to ISCCM/NOTTO guidelines [2] within a structured organ donation framework offers the best potential to convert BSD declarations into life-saving transplantations.

REFERENCES

1. Anwar A, Lee JM. Medical Management of Brain-Dead Organ Donors. Acute Crit Care. 2019;34(1):14–29. doi:10.4266/acc.2019.00430

2. Mani RK, Karanth S, Prabhakar H, et al. Management of Potential Organ Donor: Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine — Position Statement. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2024;28(S2):S249–278. doi:10.5005/jp-journals-10071-24698

3. Gunst J, Souter MJ. Management of the brain-dead donor in the intensive care unit. Intensive Care Med. 2024;50(6):964–967. doi:10.1007/s00134-024-07409-4

4. Meyfroidt G, Gunst J, Martín-Loeches I, et al. Management of the brain-dead donor in the ICU: general and specific therapy to improve transplantable organ quality. Intensive Care Med. 2019;45(3):343–353. doi:10.1007/s00134-019-05551-y

5. Frenette AJ, Williamson D, Weiss MJ, et al. Worldwide management of donors after neurological death: a systematic review and narrative synthesis of guidelines. Can J Anaesth. 2020;67(12):1839–1857. doi:10.1007/s12630-020-01815-0

6. Zirpe K, Pandit R, Gurav S, et al. Management of Potential Organ Donor: ISCCM Position Statement. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2024;28:S249–S278.

7. Zirpe KG, Tiwari AM, et al. Recommendations for Evaluation and Selection of Deceased Organ Donor: Position Statement of ISCCM. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2022;26(S2):S43–S50.

8. Pandit RA, Zirpe KG, et al. Management of potential organ donor: Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine: Position statement. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2017;21:303-316.

9. https://notto.mohfw.gov.in/WriteReadData/Final_sop/OT/OT.pdf

10. Nileshwar A. Care of the brain dead organ donor. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2022

11. Esmaeilzadeh M, Dictus C, Kayvanpour E, et al. One life ends, another begins: Management of a brain-dead pregnant mother — A systematic review. BMC Med. 2010;8:74. doi:10.1186/1741-7015-8-74

12. Reinhold A-K, Kredel M, Markus C, Kranke P. Vaginal delivery in the 30+4 weeks of pregnancy and organ donation after brain death in early pregnancy. BMJ Case Rep. 2019. doi:10.1136/bcr-2019-231601

13. Dodaro MG, Seidenari A, Marino IR, Berghella V, Bellussi F. Brain death in pregnancy: a systematic review focusing on perinatal outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2021;224(5):445-469. doi:10.1016/j.ajog.2021.01.033

14. Skowronski G, Ramnani A, Walton-Sonda D, et al. A scoping review of the perceptions of death in the context of organ donation and transplantation. BMC Med Ethics. 2021;22(1):109. doi:10.1186/s12910-021-00734-z

15. Atreya A, Bastola P, Bhandari S, Nepal S, Bhandari PS. Brain Death and Organ Transplantation in Nepal: Navigating Cultural, Legal, and Ethical Landscapes. Transpl Int. 2023. doi:10.3389/ti.2023.11882

16. Chamsi-Pasha H, Albar MA. Ethical dilemmas at the end of life: Islamic perspective. Avicenna J Med. 2017;7(2):68–74. doi:10.4103/2231-0770.203608

17. Abdeldayem H, El-Kased AF, El-Shaarawy A, et al. Religious Concepts in Organ Transplantation. In: In Tech eBooks. 2016. doi:10.5772/62401

18. Erlinger LR. Guidelines for supporting a pregnant patient with brain death: a case discussion and literature review. J Neonatal Perinatal Med. 2017;7(8):p86. doi:10.5430/jnep.v7n8p86

CHAPTER 8

ROLE OF STAKEHOLDERS

A) ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF INDIVIDUAL STAKEHOLDERS IN BSD CERTIFICATION, MONITORING, SURVEILLANCE AND AUDITING
   - A.1. Physicians
   - A.2. Critical Care Nurse
   - A.3. Transplant Coordinator
   - A.4. Hospital Administrators

B) ROLE OF NURSES IN END-OF-LIFE CARE AND ORGAN DONATION COORDINATION.

C) COMMUNICATION STRATEGIES IN BRAIN DEATH AND ORGAN DONATION - BEST PRACTICES FOR SENSITIVELY INITIATING AND FACILITATING DISCUSSIONS WITH STAKEHOLDERS, INCLUDING APPROACH TO FAMILIES AND HEALTHCARE TEAMS.

D) COUNSELING FAMILIES: EFFECTIVE COMMUNICATION STRATEGIES FOR CONSENT

AUTHOR(s):

Dr. Madhuri Kurdi, Dr. Ridhima Sharma, Dr. Sukhminder Jit Singh Bajwa, Dr. R M Chhabra

Department and Affiliation

1. Professor, Department of Anaesthesia, Karnataka Medical College and Research Institute, Hubli, Karnataka.
2. Associate Professor, Department of Anaesthesia & Critical Care, AIIMS, Nagpur, Maharashtra.
3. Secretary, Indian Society of Anaesthesiologists (ISA). Dean/Principal, Prof. Anaesthesiology & Intensive Care, M. M. College of Medical Sciences & Research, Sadopur, Ambala, Haryana.
4. Senior Consultant Physician, Max Super Speciality Hospital, Shalimar Bagh & Saroj Super Speciality Hospital, Rohini, New Delhi.

INTRODUCTION

Brain-Stem Death (BSD) represents the irreversible cessation of all brainstem functions. A fundamental paradox of modern end-of-life care is that this declaration of death can simultaneously enable the restoration of life in others through deceased organ donation. In India, BSD is legally recognized as a valid declaration of death under the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), 1994 and its subsequent amendments and 2014 Rules. BSD certification allows organ donation to take place prior to cardiac arrest, forming the legal and ethical foundation of the nation's regulated deceased donor program.

The necessity for robust BSD protocols is underscored by a severe gap in healthcare supply and demand in India, over 300,000 patients await life-saving organ transplants annually, yet fewer than 5,000 transplants are performed. Bridging this gap requires a seamless, highly regulated, and ethically sound process that connects end-of-life care with organ procurement.

Realizing this mandate involves a complex intersection of clinical excellence, legal compliance, and deep ethical sensitivity. Implementation relies on a continuous chain of key stakeholders—treating physicians, critical care nurses, transplant coordinators, and hospital administrators—where each serves an indispensable role. Treating physicians diagnose BSD via standardized reflex and apnoea testing, while critical care nurses maintain physiological stability through hemodynamic, ventilatory, and hormonal support. Transplant coordinators guide the process by handling family counseling, legal documentation, and organ allocation via NOTTO portal submissions. Finally, hospital administrators establish governance, provide infrastructure, ensure training, and oversee quality audits to support seamless, compliant operations.

Failure at any point along this continuum can compromise the organ donation process. This chapter delineates the precise clinical, ethical, and administrative obligations of each stakeholder within the THOTA framework, alongside guidelines established by NOTTO. Additionally, it addresses special considerations in BSD management, including pediatric protocols, medicolegal procedures, infectious disease screening, contraindications to donation, cultural competency, and conflict resolution mechanisms.

Figure 1

A) ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF INDIVIDUAL STAKEHOLDERS IN BSD CERTIFICATION, MONITORING, SURVEILLANCE AND AUDITING

A.1. Physicians

Physicians — particularly intensivists, neurologists, anesthesiologists, and other registered medical practitioners — serve as the primary diagnosticians and certifiers of BSD.

a. Certification of BSD

Brain stem death is heralded by the loss of brain stem function prior to cardiac arrest, and this window period should be utilized for structured and sensitive counselling of relatives, in accordance with legal and ethical requirements, as well as for the systematic execution of established protocols for organ retrieval and transplantation.

In India, BSD certification is a legal and medical process governed by the THOTA and elaborated in NOTTO guidelines. BSD is defined as irreversible cessation of all brain stem functions, verified through specific clinical criteria — coma with known cause, absence of brain stem reflexes, and apnea confirmed on repeated testing with an interval of at least six hours. Certification is carried out by a **Board of Medical Experts**, typically consisting of:

1. Registered Medical Practitioner in charge of the hospital;
2. An independent specialist nominated by the appropriate authority;
3. A neurologist/neurosurgeon (or substitute specialist such as intensivist);
4. The physician treating the patient.

All members must be independent of the transplant team to avoid conflicts of interest. This panel performs repeated neurological examinations and signs Form 10 to officially certify BSD. Furthermore, in 2014, an amendment to the THOA rules was made, which provided for selecting an anaesthetist/intensivist, surgeon/physician in the event of the non-availability of a neurosurgeon/neurologist. It underscores the importance of registration and approval by NOTTO (National Organ & Tissue Transplant Organisation) for testing and declaring BSD.

It is mandatory to repeat all prescribed tests after a minimum interval of six hours to prevent observer error and ensure accurate documentation of the clinical state. The second BSD has significant legal implications. A second positive test confirms BSD, and according to the BSD certificate, THO Rules 2014 Form 10 must be completed. Notably, there is a dilemma in society and relationships regarding brain death and cardiac death. This is a time when a physician should provide counseling to alleviate anxiety and thoroughly explain the procedure and its outcomes. Refusal to consent is crucial in this scenario, and according to the law, treatment must continue without withdrawal or withholding. Indian law does not permit disconnecting the ventilator from the patient, emphasizing the importance of counseling and obtaining consent for organ transplant without ambiguity before the second test. Furthermore, the patient should be managed accordingly.

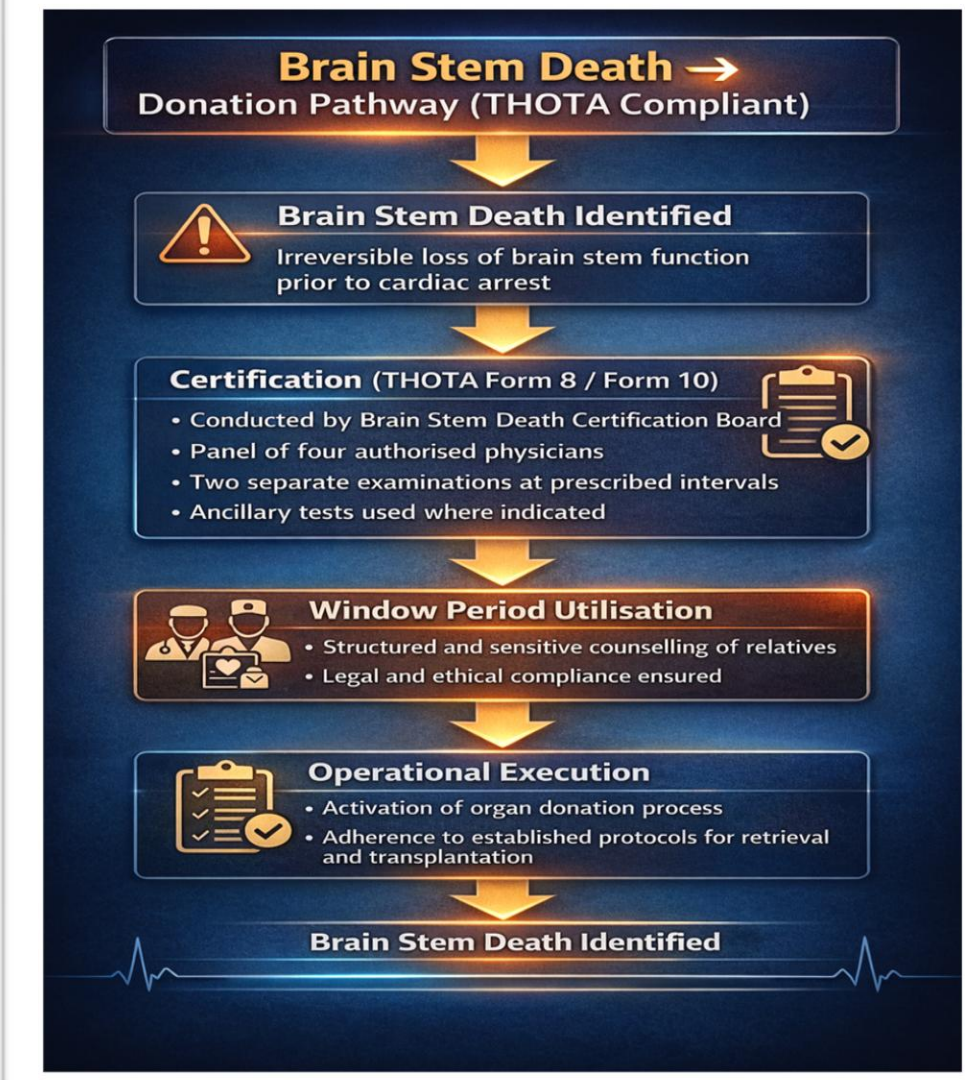


Figure 2

Journal analyses highlight the legal and procedural nuances of this certification process. Some authors argue that current laws in India are not accompanied by uniform clinical SOPs across states, resulting in inconsistent practices. (Lippincott Journals) Rigorous physician training and adherence to structured protocols enhance accuracy and public trust in the process.

b. Clinical Oversight and Communication

Maintenance of the Brain-Stem Dead donor is a critical statutory and clinical responsibility of the treating physician.

Maintaining a Brain-Stem Dead donor is a specialized science and a daunting responsibility, as these patients are physiologically fragile, characterized by extreme haemodynamic instability, and require meticulous monitoring and optimization to preserve organ viability.

Once BSD is certified, physicians ensure stabilization of donor physiology to preserve organs and communicate results sensitively to families. Effective communication is necessary to explain that BSD signifies death even when cardiac function persists — a crucial ethical consideration in organ donation. Recent position statements emphasize that ICU physicians should immediately inform the transplant coordination team after BSD diagnosis to streamline the donation process. (PMC)

The treating physician represents the first and most critical link in the organ transplantation chain, initiating the process at the point of brain stem death declaration and continuing until successful organ retrieval and transplantation. This constitutes an important role and responsibility, extending beyond certification to encompass ethical oversight, physiological stabilization of the donor, effective communication with the family, and coordination with the transplant team. At its core, the physician navigates the profound transition in which the end of one life offers the possibility of life for others—a process that must be approached with sensitivity, dignity, and strict adherence to THOTA's legal and ethical framework.

Confirmation of the BSD is achieved by repeating the entire procedure described above a second time after a gap of at least 6 hrs., by strict compliance with the protocol

1. The presence of a set of 4 doctors, as mentioned previously, who perform the first and second apnea tests.
2. The physician involved in harvesting and transplant should not be part of the team performing the test.
3. Every step of the first test should be replicated in the second step.
4. As per the prescribed Brain-Stem Death certification protocol, death is recorded at the completion of the second set of tests, defined as the moment when the patient is reconnected to the ventilator after the second apnoea test. This aligns with the Brain-Stem Death certification procedure under THOTA Forms (Form 10) and Rules, which require repeated testing to ensure persistence of the clinical state.

After identifying a patient with BSD, a race against time begins, which is often arduous. The basic science behind the BSD donor is based on physiological considerations in stabilizing the BSD patient till the time of harvesting the organ for transplant.

Furthermore, the NOTTO Skill Centre scheme provides financial support to selected collaborating institutions and medical colleges, as well as to NOTTO-performing transplants, to establish skill centres under NOTTO's auspices to train physicians, including surgeons for

tissue and organ retrieval, neurologists, anaesthesiologists, neurosurgeons, and intensivists for brain death.

There is a requirement to designate an Intensivist doctor at the hospital as the responsible/nodal officer for early identification of a BSD person and coordination, in lieu of the transplant coordinator. Also, there is a provision of a transplant coordinator in all transplant and retrieval centres for counselling and encouraging the family of the deceased person to motivate them for organ donation.

For simplicity, **"Rule of 100"** is considered paramount for these subsets comprising;

SBP >100
Urine output > 100 ml/hr
Pao2 > 100mmg
Hb >100g/l
Blood glucose 100mg/dl

It is well recognised that a successful brain-dead donor programme requires a highly efficient, multidisciplinary team involving the intensivist, neurophysician, transplant coordinator, and counsellor. It is pivotal to uphold the highest standards of donor management and organ maintenance to ensure optimal organ quality for the recipient. Hence, optimised management of the potential donor prior to and after the diagnosis of Brain-Stem Death is essential for maximising organ yield and ensuring organ suitability for transplantation. Healthcare personnel in the intensive care unit are expected to demonstrate professional and respectful conduct at all times, and diagnostic or therapeutic interventions should be limited to those necessary to facilitate organ donation.

A.2. Critical Care Nurse

Critical care nurses are essential to bedside care, continuous monitoring, and early identification of changes in neurological status crucial for BSD recognition. They occupy a central and continuous position in the care of BSD patients, and in the effective conduct of the deceased organ donation process. Working within the statutory provisions of the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), 1994 (as amended), and in alignment with the operational frameworks of NOTTO, ROTTO, and SOTTO, the critical care nurse contributes to donor stability, ethical bedside practice, and consistent adherence to established protocols until completion of organ retrieval.

a. Identification, Continuous Clinical Monitoring and Surveillance

In patients with suspected or certified Brain-Stem Death, the critical care nurse undertakes vigilant and uninterrupted monitoring of neurological and physiological parameters. Effective surveillance often predicts impending BSD and triggers activation of certification protocols. Brain-Stem Death is frequently associated with marked autonomic instability; therefore, close observation of haemodynamic variables, respiratory parameters, temperature, urine output, and metabolic status is required. Their meticulous documentation of neurological and physiological data complements the clinical assessments of physicians and provides essential evidence during certification and audits. Early recognition of physiological deterioration and prompt communication with the treating physician are essential to minimise secondary organ injury and to maintain donor suitability.

b. Donor Maintenance and Organ Preservation

Donor maintenance following Brain-Stem Death represents a specialised area of critical care nursing. These patients are physiologically fragile and often demonstrate significant haemodynamic and metabolic instability. The critical care nurse plays a key role in implementing prescribed donor management strategies, including ventilatory support, fluid and electrolyte optimisation, temperature control, hormonal therapy where indicated, and infection prevention measures. The overarching aim is preservation of organ function and optimisation of graft quality for transplantation.

c. Ethical Bedside Conduct and Professional Responsibility

Care of the Brain-Stem Dead patient must be delivered with dignity, respect, and professional integrity at all times. The critical care nurse is expected to uphold an ethical bedside environment, recognising the unique context in which the death of one individual enables the survival of others. Clinical procedures and investigations should be undertaken only when necessary to support donor maintenance and the organ donation process, and must remain compliant with prevailing legal and ethical requirements.

d. Documentation, Surveillance, and Legal Compliance

Accurate and contemporaneous documentation forms a core responsibility of the critical care nurse in BSD management. All relevant clinical observations, interventions, and communications related to Brain-Stem Death certification and donor care should be clearly recorded. Such documentation supports compliance with THOTA provisions, facilitates institutional and regulatory audits, and ensures transparency and accountability across the donation pathway.

e. Communication and Supportive Interaction with Families

Although formal counselling and consent for organ donation are conducted by trained transplant coordinators, the critical care nurse provides continuous supportive care to the patient's family. Research indicates that they often provide emotional support and preliminary explanations about brain death before transplant coordinators or physicians take over detailed discussions. Through compassionate presence, clear explanations within the nurse's professional scope, and respectful communication, the nurse helps sustain trust in the healthcare team during a period of significant emotional distress. Their role in relaying updates and easing distress significantly impacts consent rates for organ donation and overall family experience.

f. Multidisciplinary Coordination

The critical care nurse functions as a vital link within the multidisciplinary team, coordinating with intensivists, neurologists, transplant coordinators, operating theatre personnel, and hospital administration. This role includes facilitating timely investigations, ensuring logistical readiness for organ retrieval, and maintaining continuity of care until the donor is formally transferred for transplantation procedures.

g. Training, Capacity Building, and Quality Assurance

Healthcare institutions are encouraged to ensure that critical care nurses involved in BSD management receive structured training aligned with national guidelines and NOTTO advisories. Ongoing participation in education programmes, audits, and quality improvement initiatives helps strengthen donor management practices and sustain high standards of care.

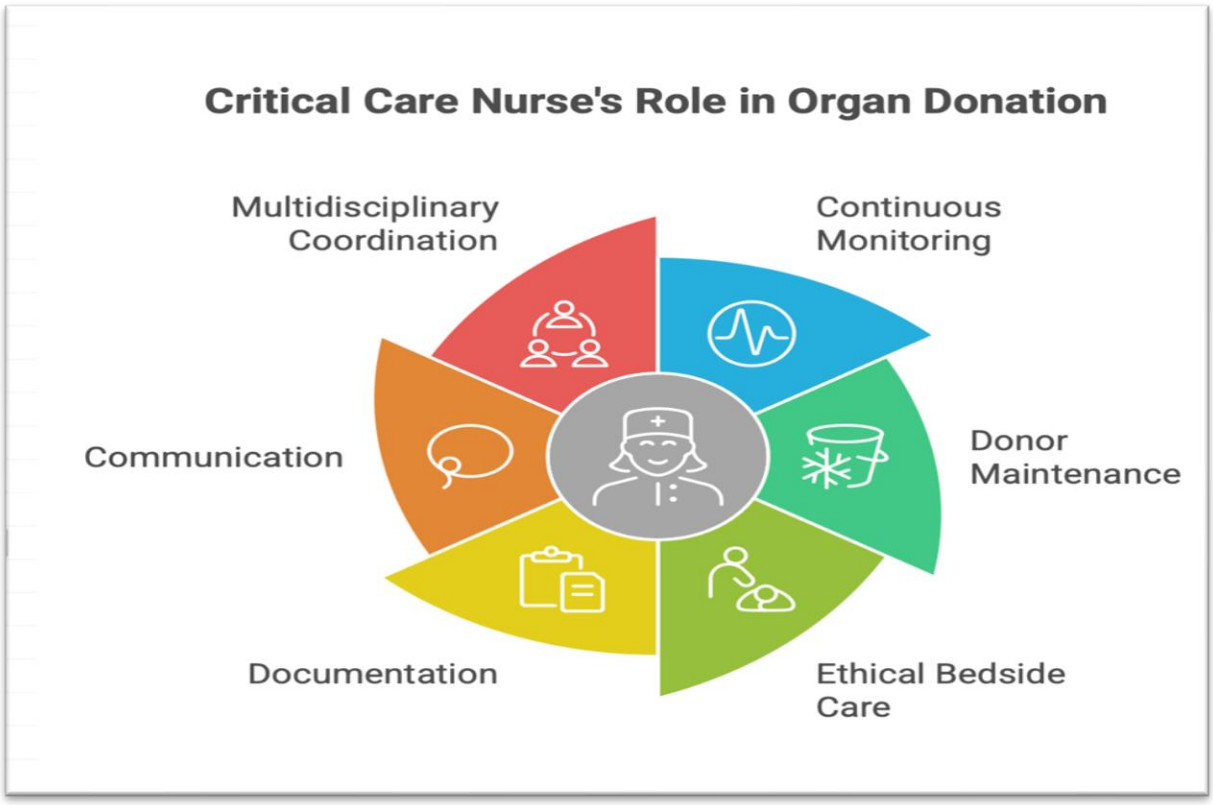


Figure 3: *Role of Nurses in Organ Donation*

A.3. Transplant Coordinator

The Transplant Coordinator is a legally mandated and pivotal stakeholder in the deceased organ donation pathway under the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), 1994 (as amended), and Rules thereunder. Training programs guided by NOTTO curricula emphasize their functions in clinical, legal, and counselling domains. Within the framework of NOTTO, ROTTO, and SOTTO, the Transplant Coordinator facilitates the ethical, transparent, and timely execution of organ donation following BSD certification, serving as the central link among the donor family, the treating team, the transplant teams, and the regulatory authorities.

a. Identification and Notification of Potential Donors

The Transplant Coordinator plays a key role in ensuring the early identification and notification of potential Brain-Stem Dead donors at registered hospitals. In coordination with intensivists and treating physicians, the coordinator facilitates timely notification to the appropriate SOTTO/ROTTO, enabling initiation of the deceased donation process in accordance with national guidelines.

b. Family Counselling, Coordination and Consent Facilitation

One of the core responsibilities of the Transplant Coordinator is to undertake structured, sensitive, and non-coercive counselling of the next of kin following confirmation of brain stem death. Once BSD is certified, transplant coordinators facilitate family consent by explaining legal implications, potential for donation, and available options. Counselling shall be conducted with empathy, clarity, and respect for cultural and emotional considerations, ensuring that consent for organ donation is obtained strictly in compliance with THOTA provisions. Even when individuals have pledged to donate organs, next-of-kin consent is required under Indian law. Coordinators therefore engage with relatives to secure legally valid consent and ensure that documentation (Form 8) is completed correctly. The coordinator must ensure that families are adequately informed and supported throughout the decision-making process.

Transplant Coordinators also interact with police and postmortem doctors in medico-legal cases to ensure that organ retrieval does not interfere with cause of death determination, thereby safeguarding legal and ethical compliance.

c. Legal Documentation and Regulatory Compliance

Transplant coordinators maintain records related to BSD certification, consent status, organ suitability, and donor-recipient matching data transmitted to NOTTO registries. They ensure accurate entries in national databases, which support surveillance and auditing initiatives crucial for improving deceased organ donation rates.

The Transplant Coordinator is responsible for ensuring completion, verification, and secure maintenance of all statutory documentation related to Brain-Stem Death certification and organ donation, including THOTA-prescribed forms, consent status, organ suitability, and donor-recipient matching data transmitted to NOTTO registries. They ensure accurate entries in national databases essential for legal validity, surveillance, transparency, and subsequent audit by appropriate authorities. The coordinator shall also ensure compliance with reporting requirements to NOTTO/ROTTO/SOTTO.

d. Coordination of Organ Allocation and Logistics

Following consent, the Transplant Coordinator coordinates with NOTTO/ROTTO/SOTTO for organ allocation in accordance with national allocation policies. Responsibilities include liaising with retrieval and transplant teams, scheduling organ retrievals, coordinating operating room logistics, and facilitating transport arrangements to minimize cold ischaemia time and preserve organ quality.

e. Donor Dignity and Ethical Oversight

Throughout the organ donation process, the Transplant Coordinator is responsible for upholding the dignity of the Brain-Stem Dead donor and maintaining ethical standards of care. This includes ensuring respectful handling of the donor, appropriate communication with the family, and adherence to principles of equity, transparency, and non-commercialisation as mandated by THOTA.

f. Multidisciplinary Communication and Continuity of Care

The Transplant Coordinator functions as the nodal point of communication among physicians, critical care nurses, counsellors, retrieval teams, transplant surgeons, hospital administration, and regulatory bodies. Effective coordination and timely information exchange are essential to ensure seamless continuity of care from donor identification to organ retrieval and transplantation.

g. Post-Donation Support, Reporting, and Quality Assurance

Following organ donation, the Transplant Coordinator facilitates post-donation communication with donor families, including acknowledgment and, where appropriate, follow-up support. The coordinator also contributes to data reporting, audit processes, and quality improvement initiatives, supporting institutional and national efforts to strengthen deceased organ donation programmes.

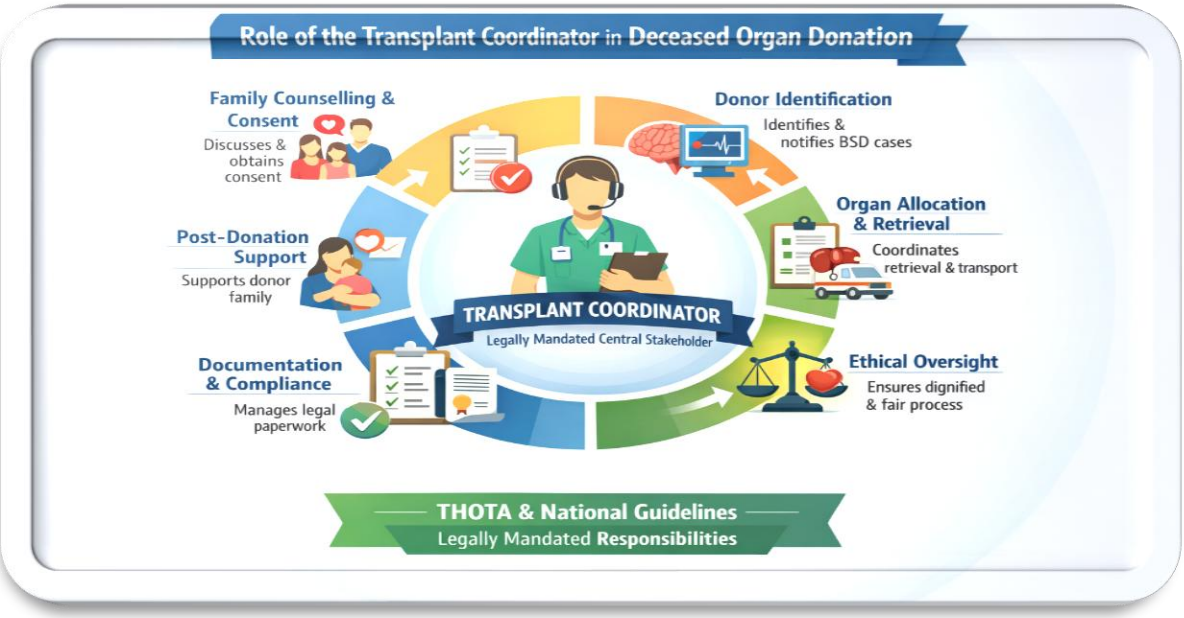


Figure 4: *Role of Transplant Coordinator in Organ Donation*

A.4. Hospital Administrators

Under the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), 1994 (as amended), the hospital administrator bears overarching institutional responsibility for ensuring the lawful, ethical, and effective implementation of Brain-Stem Death certification and deceased organ donation processes. Hospital administration provides the governance framework within which clinical, nursing, and coordination teams function, and is critical to sustaining a transparent, compliant, and auditable organ donation programme.

a. Governance and Regulatory Responsibilities

The Hospital Administrator shall ensure that the institution is duly registered under THOTA for organ retrieval and/or transplantation, as applicable, and that all activities related to Brain-Stem Death certification and deceased organ donation are conducted strictly in accordance with statutory provisions, rules, and national guidelines issued by the Ministry of Health and Family Welfare. The administrator shall establish, notify, and periodically review institutional policies and standard operating procedures for the identification, certification, referral, documentation, reporting, and management of Brain-Stem Death cases donors, a prerequisite for quality care and legal compliance.

b. Institutional Systems and Infrastructure

The Hospital Administrator is responsible for ensuring the availability of adequate infrastructure, trained manpower, logistics, and support services required for donor identification, maintenance, counselling, organ retrieval, and transplantation. This includes appointing and providing functional support for qualified transplant coordinators; facilitating multidisciplinary coordination among intensive care units, operating theatres, laboratories, blood banks, and administrative departments; and ensuring uninterrupted access to essential equipment, medications, and monitoring facilities.

c. Ethical Oversight and Legal Compliance

The Hospital Administrator shall ensure that the ethical principles of dignity, transparency, non-coercion, and respect for donor families are upheld at all stages of the Brain-Stem Death and deceased donation process. Administrative oversight shall ensure proper documentation, informed consent processes, compliance with reporting requirements to NOTTO/ROTTO/SOTTO, and adherence to national organ allocation policies, thereby preventing conflicts of interest, malpractice, or procedural deviations.

d. Monitoring, Surveillance, and Audit

The Hospital Administrator shall establish mechanisms for institutional monitoring, surveillance, and periodic audits of Brain-Stem Death certification and deceased organ donation activities. This includes reviewing compliance with THOTA provisions, evaluating donor identification and conversion rates, assessing the completeness of documentation, and participating in quality improvement initiatives to strengthen deceased organ donation outcomes.

Recent directives from NOTTO (in coordination with SOTTOs and ROTTOs) emphasize monthly reporting of BSD cases and corrective actions to improve identification and donation rates. These data help identify missed opportunities and inform policy changes at institutional and national levels.

e. Auditing and Quality Improvement

Auditing functions include reviewing certification timelines, adherence to THOTA norms, completeness of documentation, and outcomes of organ donation referrals. These audits identify gaps in protocol implementation and contribute to continuous quality improvement. Institutions that embed such audits into governance frameworks improve trust and performance in organ donation pathways.

f. Training, Capacity Building, and Program Sustainability

The Hospital Administrator shall facilitate regular multidisciplinary training, sensitization, and capacity-building programmes for staff, including physicians, nurses, and coordinators, involved in Brain-Stem Death and organ donation to implement BSD protocols and family communication strategies effectively. Administrative leadership is responsible for fostering a supportive institutional culture, ensuring sustainability of the deceased organ donation programme, and integrating organ donation activities within broader hospital governance and public health objectives.

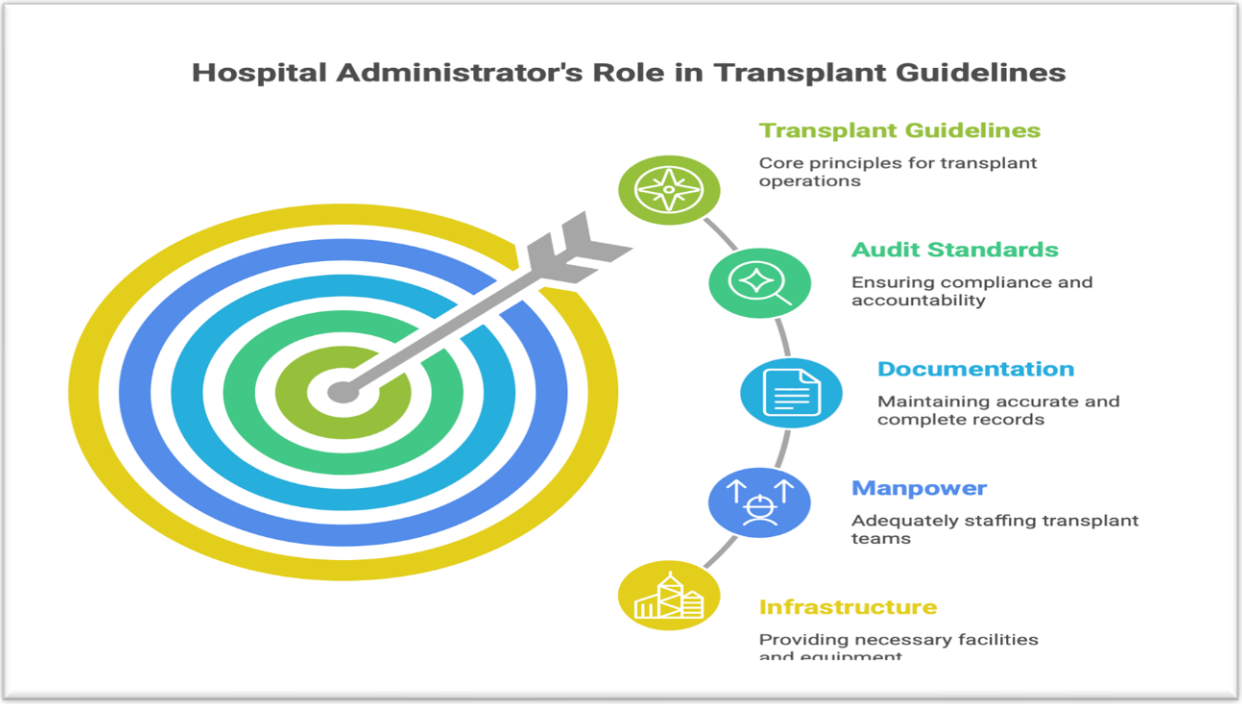


Figure 5: *Role of Hospital Administrator in Transplant Guidelines*

B) ROLE OF NURSES IN END-OF-LIFE CARE AND ORGAN DONATION COORDINATION

Critical care nurses play a pivotal role in delivering compassionate, patient- and family-centred end-of-life care while supporting the deceased organ donation pathway. Their continuous bedside presence enables them to build trust with families, preserve patient dignity, ensure culturally sensitive care, and provide continuity of support throughout the end-of-life journey. Compassionate care should continue irrespective of whether organ donation is ultimately pursued.

Nurses contribute to the success of deceased organ donation programmes not only through clinical care but also by strengthening institutional systems. International experience has shown that trained nurses with designated responsibilities in organ donation improve multidisciplinary coordination, facilitate early referral of potential donors, support implementation of institutional protocols, and enhance the overall efficiency of the donation process. Rather than replacing the role of the transplant coordinator, they function as an important link between the intensive care team, transplant coordinator, hospital administration and donor family, ensuring timely communication and continuity of care.

This role requires a combination of clinical competence, communication skills, emotional intelligence and organizational ability. Nurses also contribute by educating intensive care and emergency department staff, promoting awareness of organ donation within the hospital, and encouraging adherence to standard operating procedures. Participation in simulation-based training, multidisciplinary debriefings, clinical audits and review of missed donation opportunities enables continuous evaluation of institutional practices and promotes quality improvement. Monitoring programme performance against institutional and national benchmarks can further help identify barriers and guide corrective measures.

Successful organ donation programmes have consistently demonstrated that investment in nursing leadership, structured education and quality assurance improves donor identification, family confidence and overall programme performance. Models such as the **Spanish Organ Donation Programme**, together with Indian initiatives including **TRANSTAN (Tamil Nadu)** and **Jeevandan (Telangana)**, highlight the value of trained nursing professionals as integral members of the multidisciplinary donation team. Healthcare institutions should therefore encourage competency-based training and identify experienced nurses to serve as organ donation resource nurses or donor champions, working alongside transplant coordinators to strengthen implementation of NOTTO guidelines according to local resources and institutional needs.

C) COMMUNICATION STRATEGIES IN BRAIN DEATH AND ORGAN DONATION - BEST PRACTICES FOR SENSITIVELY INITIATING AND FACILITATING DISCUSSIONS WITH STAKEHOLDERS, INCLUDING APPROACH TO FAMILIES AND HEALTHCARE TEAMS

Effective communication is fundamental to ethical end-of-life care and successful deceased organ donation. Communication should be viewed as a planned, multidisciplinary process rather than a single conversation**,** ensuring that families receive clear, consistent and transparent information throughout the patient's care.

Before meeting the family, the treating physician, critical care team, nursing staff and transplant coordinator should conduct a pre-family communication huddle to review the patient's clinical status, identify potential communication challenges, agree on the objectives of the discussion and assign communication roles. A designated lead communicator, supported by the multidisciplinary team, helps maintain consistency, avoids conflicting information and strengthens family confidence.

Healthcare institutions should establish standard communication pathways and communication checklists for brain stem death and organ donation discussions to ensure that information is conveyed in a structured, timely and compassionate manner.

Communication should continue as the family's understanding evolves, allowing adequate opportunities for questions, clarification and emotional support throughout the decision-making process.

Communication excellence should be strengthened through structured education, simulation-based training, role-play exercises and interdisciplinary workshops involving intensivists, nurses, transplant coordinators, emergency physicians and other stakeholders. Such training improves communication skills, team coordination and preparedness for emotionally challenging situations while promoting a consistent institutional approach.

Continuous quality improvement should be an integral part of communication practice. Multidisciplinary debriefing following every donation opportunity, irrespective of the outcome, should be encouraged to review communication processes, identify good practices, analyse system-level barriers and implement corrective measures. Periodic communication audits, review of missed donation opportunities and incorporation of family feedback, where appropriate, further support institutional learning and service improvement.

Successful organ donation programmes worldwide have demonstrated that standardised communication processes, defined team roles, structured communication training and routine debriefing are integral to high-quality donation systems. Healthcare institutions may adapt these evidence-informed practices within the NOTTO framework according to local resources and institutional needs.

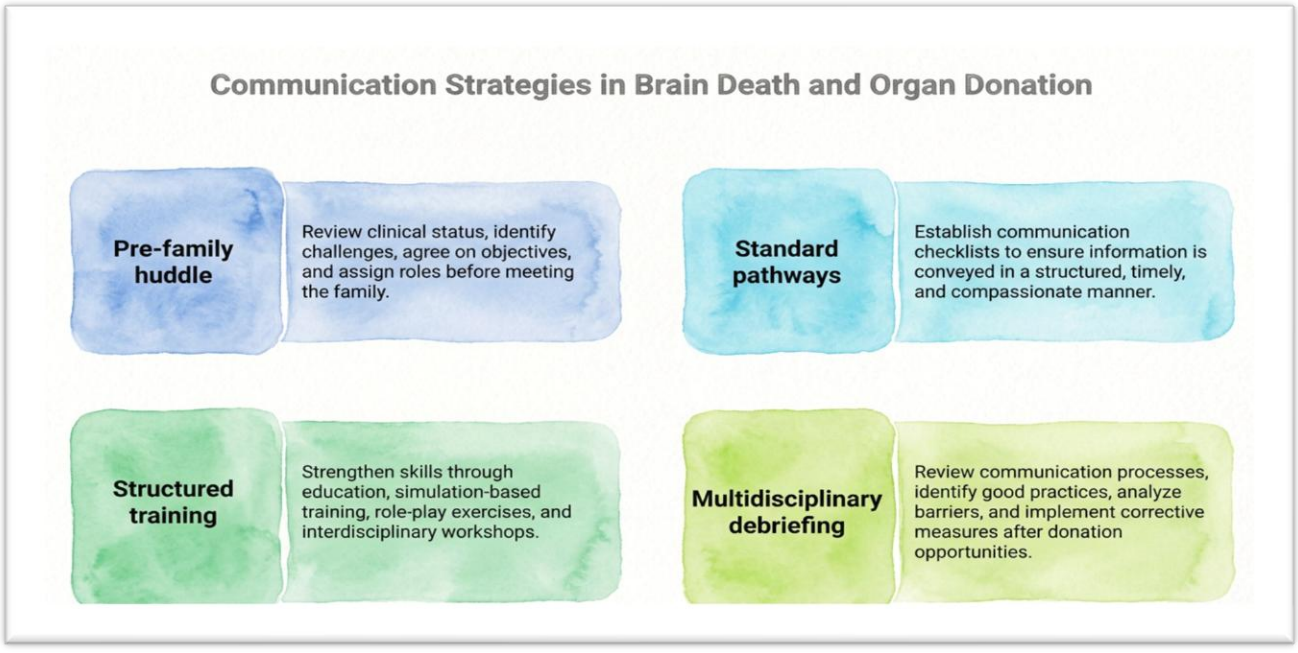


Figure 6: *Communication Strategies in Brain Death and Organ Donation*

D) COUNSELLING FAMILIES: EFFECTIVE COMMUNICATION STRATEGIES FOR CONSENT

Counselling families for deceased organ donation is a sensitive, structured and family-centred process that aims to facilitate an informed, voluntary and unhurried decision. The primary objective is not to persuade families to donate but to ensure that they receive accurate information, adequate emotional support and sufficient opportunity to make a decision consistent with the patient's values and the family's beliefs.

Counselling should preferably be conducted by trained professionals, including the transplant coordinator in collaboration with the treating team, after the family has understood and accepted the diagnosis of brain stem death. Discussions should be held in a private, comfortable environment using simple, non-technical language. Families should be encouraged to express their concerns and emotions, while healthcare professionals should actively listen and respond with empathy, honesty and respect.

Counselling should address common concerns regarding the organ donation process, including maintenance of the donor's dignity, the surgical retrieval procedure, funeral arrangements, confidentiality, equitable organ allocation and the legal safeguards provided under the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA)**.** Religious or cultural concerns should be respectfully acknowledged, and misconceptions should be addressed using evidence-based information without exerting pressure or influencing the family's decision. Families may be encouraged to reflect on the known wishes, values and beliefs of the patient, recognising that organ donation can be an opportunity to honour the patient's preferences while fully respecting the family's role in decision-making.

International best practices emphasise that counselling is a continuing process rather than a single discussion**.** Canadian Blood Services recommends that conversations should progress according to the family's understanding, emotional readiness and informational needs, allowing adequate time for reflection whenever feasible. Similarly, NHS Blood and Transplant advocate a personalised, family-centred approach that recognises the individuality of each family and supports shared decision-making throughout the counselling process.

Families should continue to receive compassionate care irrespective of their decision regarding organ donation. Where donation is declined, respectful bereavement support should continue without prejudice. When consent is provided, counselling should extend throughout the donation process by providing regular updates, explaining subsequent procedures and offering ongoing emotional support. Healthcare institutions should periodically evaluate family experiences, identify opportunities for improvement and

strengthen counselling skills through continuing professional education to promote high-quality, family-centred organ donation service.

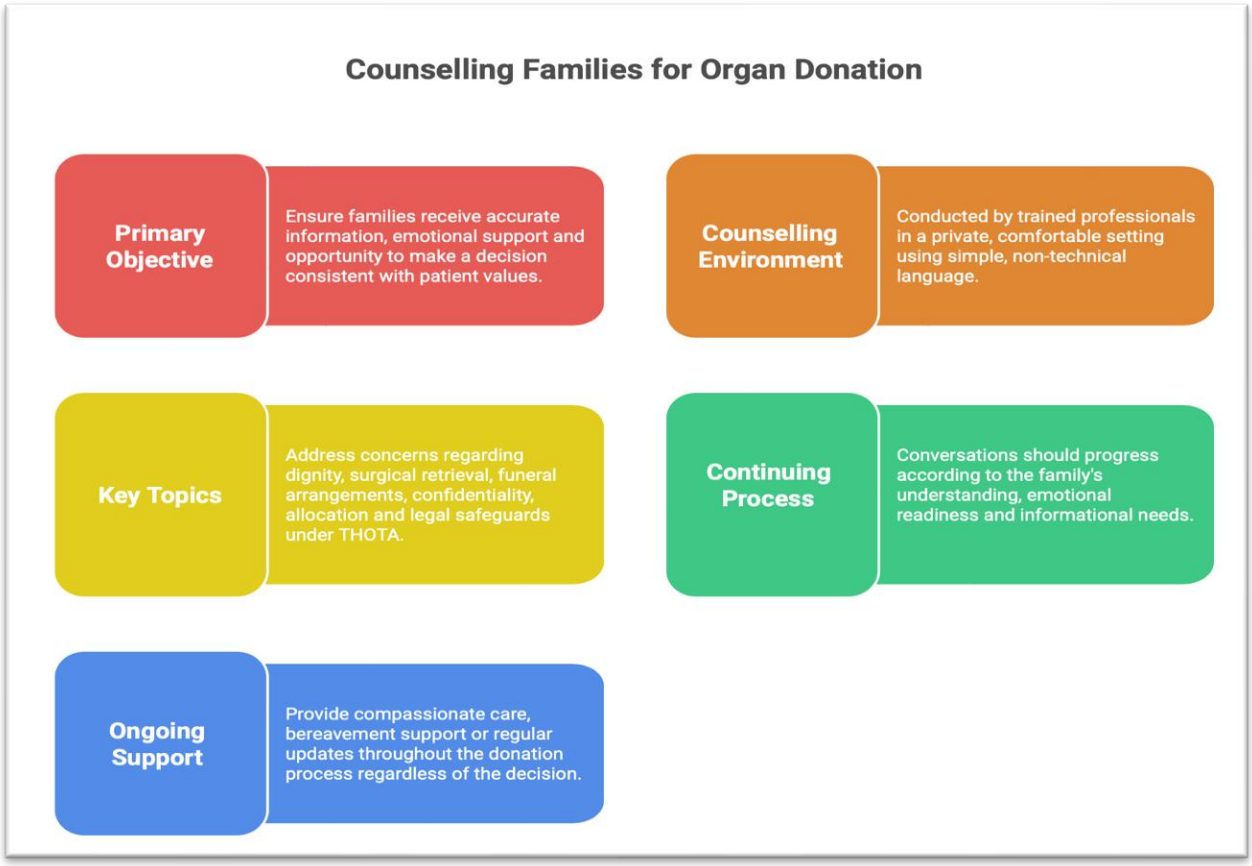


Figure 7: *Counselling Families for Organ Donation*

CONCLUSION

Brain stem death remains a medical, ethical, and regulatory fulcrum in deceased organ donation. It is a coordinated chain of responsibility involving the physicians who ensure diagnostic accuracy and legal compliance; critical care nurses who perform essential monitoring and family support; transplant coordinators who link clinical findings with consent and logistics; and hospital administrators who anchor protocols, surveillance, and audits that uphold quality and public safety. Together, these stakeholders operationalize standards of care encapsulated in THOTA and promoted by NOTTO, ensuring that BSD certification and organ donation processes are effective, accountable, and respectful of both donor and recipient rights. Strengthening this continuum of accountability through standardized protocols, multidisciplinary collaboration, capacity building and continuous quality improvement will be essential for improving deceased organ donation outcomes and advancing transplantation services in India.

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

1. Delayed recognition and notification of potential brain stem–dead donors.
2. Variability in institutional practices for brain stem death certification and donor management.
3. Limited availability of trained transplant coordinators and specialized critical care personnel.
4. Inadequate communication skills and limited simulation-based training for healthcare professionals.
5. Persistent public misconceptions regarding brain stem death and organ donation.
6. Cultural, religious and emotional barriers influence the family decision-making.
7. Incomplete documentation and inconsistent compliance with THOTA and NOTTO guidelines.
8. Limited institutional audit, feedback mechanisms and quality improvement programmes.

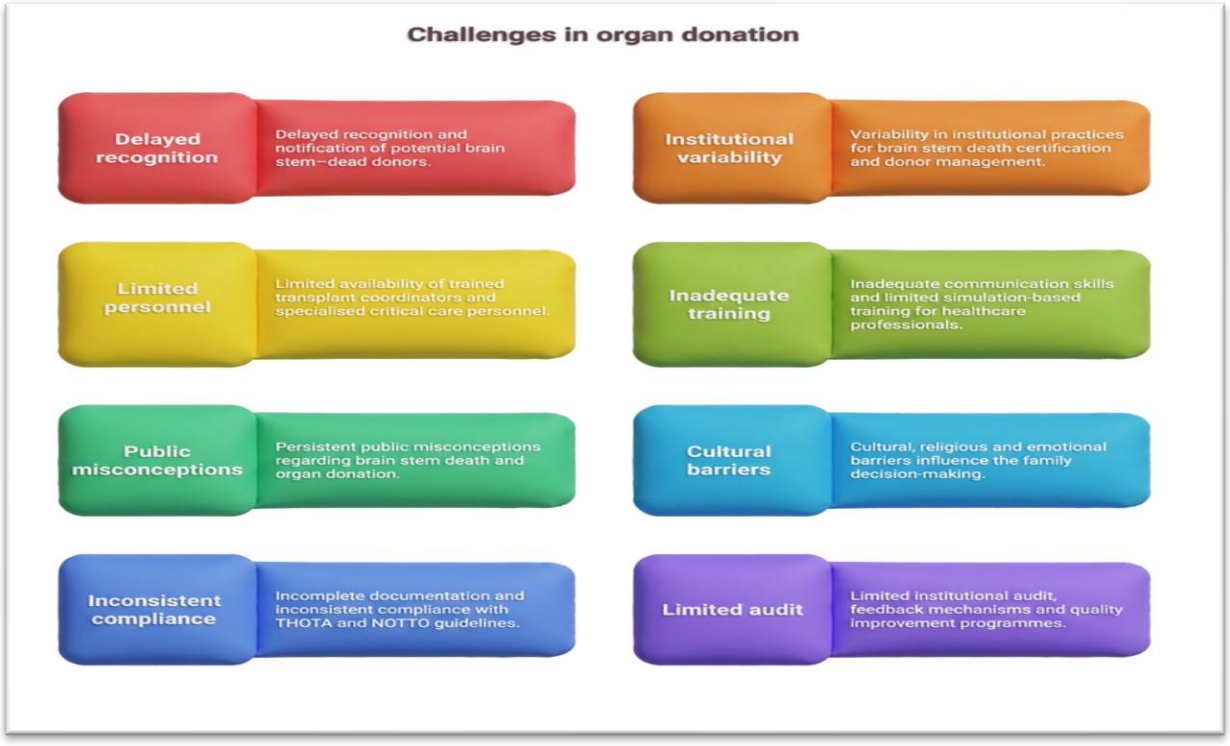


Figure 8: *Challenges in Organ Donation*

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. Brain stem death certification and deceased organ donation require coordinated multidisciplinary teamwork.
2. Clearly defined roles and responsibilities improve efficiency, transparency and legal compliance.
3. Early donor identification, timely notification and optimal donor management maximize organ utilization.
4. Standardized communication pathways and structured family counselling strengthen trust and informed decision-making.
5. Continuous education, simulation-based training, communication audits and multidisciplinary debriefing promote institutional excellence.
6. Adherence to THOTA, NOTTO guidelines and ethical principles remain central to maintaining public confidence in deceased organ donation programmes.

REFERENCES

1. Srivastava V, et al. Brain stem death certification protocol and donor pool expansion. PMC: Med J Armed Forces India. 2017 Jun 17;74(3):213–216
2. Pandit RA, et al. Management of potential organ donor: ISCCM position statement. PMC:Med J Armed Forces India. 2017 Jun 17;74(3):213–216
3. Intensive care nurses' roles in guiding families toward donation. PubMed: Pak J Med Sci. 2019 Jul-Aug;35(4):1115-1121
4. Brain Death (Nursing) StatPearls, NCBI Bookshelf. (NCBI)
5. National Course Curriculum for Transplant Coordinators, NOTTO. (notto.mohfw.gov.in)
6. Monitoring BSD cases and hospital reporting obligations. *ETHealthworld/NOTTO directive*. (ETHealthworld.com)
7. Certification of Brain Stem Death in India (Gracious N). Am J Med J: *Amrita Journal of Medicine* 16(2):p 71-76, Apr–Jun 2020.

8. Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India. The Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act, 1994 (as amended) and the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Rules, 2014. New Delhi: Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India. (notto.mohfw.gov.in)

9. National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organisation (NOTTO). *Guidelines for Deceased Organ Donation*. New Delhi: Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India.

10. National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organisation (NOTTO). *National Transplant Manual*. New Delhi: Directorate General of Health Services, Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India. https://notto.mohfw.gov.in

11. National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organisation (NOTTO). *National Course Curriculum for Transplant Coordinators*. New Delhi: Directorate General of Health Services, Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India. Available from: https://notto.mohfw.gov.in

12. National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organisation (NOTTO). *Frequently Asked Questions on Organ and Tissue Donation and Transplantation*. Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India. Available from: https://notto.mohfw.gov.in

13. Dhanwate AD. Brainstem death: a comprehensive review in Indian perspective. *Indian J Crit Care Med*. 2014;18(9):596-605. doi:10.4103/0972-5229.140151.

14. McKeown DW, Bonser RS, Kellum JA. Management of the heart-beating brain-dead organ donor. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(Suppl 1):i96-i107.

15. Wood KE, Becker BN, McCartney JG, D'Alessandro AM, Coursin DB. Care of the potential organ donor. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;351:2730-2739.

16. Houlihan P. The nurse's role in organ donation from a brainstem-dead patient: management of the family. Intensive Crit Care Nurs. 1992;8(3):140-148.

17. Coyle ME, et al. Intensive care nurses' experiences of caring for brain-dead organ donor patients. *Crit Care Resusc*. 2001;3(2):93-97.

18. Flodén A, Berg M, Forsberg A. ICU nurses' perceptions of responsibilities and organisation in relation to organ donation. *Intensive Crit Care Nurs*. 2011;27(6):305-316.

19. Morgan C, Wright J, Wolf R. Organ procurement: the role of the transplant coordinator. Transplant Proc. 1991;23(5):2541-2543.

20. Bajwa SJS, Khanna S, Kah TL, Jithendra T, Hrishi AP, Kurdi MS, et al. Indian expert consensus on intra-operative consciousness monitoring using processed electroencephalogram-based indices: a Delphi-based approach. Indian JAnaesth. 2026;70(4):526-546. doi:10.4103/ija.ija_111_26.

21. Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine. Management of the potential organ donor: ISCCM position statement. *Indian J Crit Care Med*. 2018;22(Suppl 2):S1-S18.

22. Mauri M, Ambrosi E, Bozzi F, et al. The role of specialist nurses in organ and tissue donation: an integrative literature review. *Healthcare (Basel)*. 2022;10(12):2471.

23. Matesanz R, Domínguez-Gil B. Strategies to optimize deceased organ donation. *Transplant Rev (Orlando)*. 2007;21(4):177-188.

24. Government of Telangana. *Jeevandan Programme: Role and Responsibilities of Transplant Coordinators*. Department of Health, Medical and Family Welfare. Available from: https://www.jeevandan.gov.in

25. Tamil Nadu Network for Organ Sharing (TRANSTAN). *Cadaver Organ Donation Programme*. Government of Tamil Nadu.

26. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. *Organ donation for transplantation: improving donor identification and consent rates for deceased organ donation (CG135)*. London: NICE; 2011. Updated 2016.

27. NHS Blood and Transplant. *Best Practice Guidance for Deceased Organ Donation*. Bristol (UK): NHS Blood and Transplant. Available from: https://www.odt.nhs.uk/deceased-donation/best-practice-guidance/. Accessed 16 Jul 2026.

28. World Health Organization. WHO Guiding Principles on Human Cell, Tissue and Organ Transplantation. *Transplantation*. 2010;90(3):229-233.

29. Canadian Blood Services. End-of-Life Conversations with Families of Potential Donors: Leading Practices in Offering the Opportunity for Organ Donation. Ottawa (ON): Canadian Blood Services; 2014. Available from: https://profedu.blood.ca/en/organs-and-tissues/practices-and-guidelines/deceased-donation/end-life-conversations-families. Accessed 16 Jul 2026.

30. Siminoff LA, Gordon N, Hewlett J, Arnold RM. Factors influencing families' consent for donation of solid organs for transplantation. JAMA. 2001;286(1):71-77.

31. Rodrigue JR, Cornell DL, Howard RJ. Organ donation decision: comparison of donor and non-donor families. Am J Transplant. 2006;6(1):190-198.

CHAPTER 9

ETHICAL DILEMMAS AND CONFLICT RESOLUTION

A) THE LEGAL AND MEDICAL QUAGMIRE OF 'BRAIN-STEM DEATH'

A.1. Defining Brain-Stem Death
A.2. A Fractured Legal Landscape
A.3. The Doctor's Dilemma
A.4. Infrastructural Hurdles

B) ETHICAL, RELIGIOUS AND CULTURAL CONSIDERATIONS IN BRAIN STEM DEATH AND ORGAN DONATION AND THEIR RESOLUTION

B.1. Ethical Issues in Organ Donation when Death is Determined by Neurologic Criteria
B.2. The Cultural and Psychological Landscape of Consent
B.3 Religious and Cultural Perspectives

C) BRAINSTEM DEATH DECLARATION: BEYOND ORGAN TRANSPLANTATION

AUTHOR(s):

Dr. Roop Gursahani, Dr. Srinivas Samavedam, Dr. J. Divatia

Department and Affiliation

1. Consultant & Section Incharge, Neurology & Palliative Medicine, P.D. Hinduja Hospital, Mumbai.
2. Immediate past president, Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine. Chief Intensivist, Ramdevrao Hospital, Hyderabad, Telangana.
3. Head, Critical Care, Lilavati Hospital and Research Centre, Mumbai.

INTRODUCTION

India's healthcare system is confronted by a profound and persistent challenge: a severe shortage of transplantable organs, resulting in one of the lowest organ donation rates in the world. This critical gap between demand and supply leads to the innumerable deaths of patients who could otherwise be saved. The barriers to organ donation are not singular but multifaceted, forming a complex labyrinth of legal ambiguity, systemic failures, deeply rooted cultural beliefs, and diverse religious doctrines. This document provides a detailed analysis of these obstacles, examining the intricate interplay of factors that hinder the declaration of brain-stem death and the subsequent act of organ donation. By dissecting these challenges, we can better understand the landscape of public health, ethics, and tradition in modern India[18]. The analysis begins with the foundational legal and medical complexities surrounding the concept of brain-stem death, which serves as the primary gateway to deceased organ donation.

A) THE LEGAL AND MEDICAL QUAGMIRE OF 'BRAIN-STEM DEATH'

The legal recognition of 'brain-stem death' is the strategic cornerstone of India's deceased organ donation program. However, as a recent High Court of Kerala case has highlighted, significant ambiguity surrounding its definition and its conflict with other national laws creates a foundational obstacle that reverberates through the entire system. This legal and medical quagmire is not a single problem but a chain reaction of systemic failure: a fractured legal landscape directly causes an ethical dilemma for physicians, which in turn exacerbates the infrastructural hurdles that limit donation potential, undermining the very framework designed to save lives.

A.1. Defining Brain-Stem Death

Under India's Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act, 1994 (the Act), 'brain-stem death' is defined as the stage at which all functions of the brain-stem have "permanently and irreversibly ceased." Certification of this state is a rigorous process conducted by a Board of Medical Experts. The diagnosis requires a series of tests to confirm the absence of brain-stem reflexes and the capacity to breathe, including:

1. **Gag Reflex:** Testing the response at the back of the throat.
2. **Corneal Reflex:** Testing the eye's response to stimulus.
3. **Pupillary Size & Light Reflex:** Checking for pupil reaction to light.

4. **Apnoea Test:** Confirming the absence of spontaneous breathing when removed from a ventilator.

Crucially, the rules mandate that the patient must be examined twice, with an interval of approximately six hours, before brain-stem death can be officially declared. This cautious, repetitive protocol is designed to prevent diagnostic error and build confidence in a diagnosis that is often counter-intuitive to grieving families who see a body that remains warm and has a mechanically supported heartbeat.

A.2. A Fractured Legal Landscape

A critical source of conflict arises from the fact that 'brain-stem death' is recognized only within the context of organ donation law. Other seminal Indian statutes do not acknowledge this definition, creating a fractured and contradictory legal landscape.

The Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (1994)	Other Key National Laws
Explicitly defines a "deceased person" as including an individual who has suffered "brain-stem death."	**The Registration of Births and Deaths Act (1969):** Defines death as the "permanent disappearance of all evidence of life," a definition that excludes a brain-stem dead patient whose heart and body are artificially oxygenated by a ventilator. **The Indian Penal Code (1860):** Defines death simply as the "death of a human being," a negative definition that defaults to the traditional understanding of cardiopulmonary cessation.

Table 1:*THOTA v/s Other Key National Laws*

A.3. The Doctor's Dilemma

This legislative vacuum creates a precarious legal and ethical dilemma for medical professionals, placing them in a direct conflict between legal positivism and medical ethics. Doctors cannot legally remove life support from a patient certified as 'brain-stem dead' unless it is for the purpose of organ donation. If a family is informed that their relative is "dead" but refuses consent for donation, physicians are legally barred from withdrawing the ventilator. This places them in an impossible situation:

1. **Legal Risk:** Removing life support without the sanction of organ donation could expose them to criminal charges, including negligence or murder, as other laws do not recognize the patient as deceased.

2. **Ethical Obligation:** They are simultaneously bound by an ethical duty to allocate scarce resources, such as ICU beds and ventilators, to patients who have a chance of recovery.

A.4. Infrastructural Hurdles

These legal and ethical challenges are compounded by significant infrastructural problems. The diagnosis of brain-stem death necessitates an ICU with facilities for mechanical ventilation and cardiac support. However, such ICUs are few, perpetually overburdened, and concentrated in large metropolitan cities. The legal ambiguity surrounding brain-stem death disincentivizes hospitals from allocating these scarce resources to maintain legally "not-dead" patients for potential donation. This forces them to prioritize critically ill patients who can be saved, leading to the neglect of many potential donors and further constricting the already limited supply of organs. This complex web of legal, medical, and infrastructural barriers sets the stage for the equally challenging human and cultural dimensions of obtaining consent.

B) ETHICAL, RELIGIOUS AND CULTURAL CONSIDERATIONS IN BRAIN STEM DEATH AND ORGAN DONATION AND THEIR RESOLUTION

B.1. Ethical Issues in Organ Donation when Death is Determined by Neurologic Criteria

The Beauchamp-Childress principles of bio-medical ethics[1] are based on common or universal morality. Respect for autonomy, beneficence, non-maleficence and justice are an overarching set of general moral norms that are shared across cultures, religions, communities, societies and institutions. The following discussion focusses on the 4 main principles and analyses their application but other ethical concepts and issues that may arise in clinical settings are also listed.[2,3.]

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="2">AUTONOMY
BENEFICENCE</td><td rowspan="2">MEDICAL INDICATIONS
(Beneficence, Non-maleficence)</td><td rowspan="3">Informed consent
Autonomy (patient goals)
Surrogate appropriateness
Assess decisional capacity</td><td rowspan="4">Professionalism
Professional competence
Evidence based practice
Responsibilities to peers and institutions
Flag conflict of interest (team, or surrogate)
Truth telling
Trust/fiduciary responsibility</td></tr>
<tr><td>NON-MALEFICENCE
JUSTICE</td><td>QUALITY OF LIFE:
(Beneficence, Non-maleficence, Autonomy)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Dignity,
Honesty,
Fidelity, Integrity
Compassion
Empathy,</td><td>PATIENT PREFERENCE
(Autonomy)</td><td>Duty to provide care
Duty to warn
Non-judgmental regard
Confidentiality</td></tr>
<tr><td>CONTEXTUAL/EXTERNAL
(Justice, Loyalty, Fairness)</td><td>Justice (fair allocation of scarce resources)
Justified paternalism</td><td>Futility (furthers no goals)
Beneficence /caring (team goals)
Minimize harm</td></tr>
</table>

Figure 1: *Beauchamp-Childress Principles of Bio-Medical Ethics*

a. Respect For Autonomy

The key decision makers for donation are the patient and the patient's family and informed consent must remain the cornerstone of decision making.

1. **Patient donor:** All of us have the right to altruistic goals as humans and this can include organ donation after death, recorded in various forms or even just stated verbally to family. This is the Opt-In format. This may require recorded first-person authorization and may be legally binding (hard opt-in). If the family can overrule, this is termed a soft opt-in. Opt-out systems proceed with donation unless patient refusal is recorded (hard opt-out) or if family objects (soft opt-out)[4].

2. **Informed consent:** Lay people do not understand that the DNC process is complex and will involve an apnea test, which itself can cause further neurologic deterioration due to anoxia[5]. Japan is the only jurisdiction where organ donors have to provide informed advance consent for Brain-Stem Death (BSD) determination[6].

3. **Surrogate (family caregivers):** In a recent report from Netherlands, most donor families give a utilitarian reason for agreeing to donate[7]: body parts are worthless after death and someone else can be helped. This gives meaning to an unexpected tragedy. Most have no regrets and can justify the decision months after the loss. The donors are quite likely to have expressed a wish to donate and may have also registered this wish. A study from Gujarat[8] showed that the decision making is a complex process. Multiple family members may be involved before the decision making. Bigger network size makes for a longer decision-making time. Families who refuse donation emphasize the integrity of the body and their wish to protect the body of their loved one from violation, which is seen as both a right and a responsibility[10]. Non-donor patients are also unlikely to be registered for donations although

objections to validly recorded organ donation wishes occur in about 10% of cases in the UK[4]. The non-donor families may ascribe this to religious beliefs although authorities of all major religions have confirmed that DNC and organ donation is acceptable. About half of the refusing families in the Netherlands studies[9] confirm prolonged ambivalence for months about the correctness of their refusal especially if they had been in a dilemma when they were contacted for donation during the actual illness. They ascribed their refusal to the following reasons:

I. feeling overwhelmed by the short period between notification of death and the request for donations;

II. inadequate support from other relatives or healthcare professionals;

III. not being accustomed to speaking about death;

IV. feeling incompetent to decide, and

V. procedural delays and complexity. These papers also emphasize the importance of donor registration, since this seems to prevent the dilemmas in those families that do donate. All donor families in the Netherlands studies confirmed the value of following the wishes of the deceased. In contrast, the refusing families believed that they had more right to decide than the deceased, since they would have to live with the decision. Family discord does not seem to have been an issue on either side.

b. Beneficence

For patients whose death is determined by neurologic criteria, organ donation is a way of fulfilling life plans and values, especially if altruism is a core part of their identity. Individuals do have posthumous interests (e.g. reputation, not allowing waste, etc.) and acceptance of their donation can be termed beneficence. This also provides meaning and consolation for families[11] who report reduced grief burden, and this also indirectly is in the patient's best interest. Since non-maleficence is eliminated by the death of the donor, the donor's posthumous interests dominate the risk benefit balance.

c. Non-Maleficence

"Do no harm" needs ensuring that organ retrieval does not contribute to death nor causes added suffering or burden to the patient or families[12,13]. The Dead Donor Rule is critical for operationalizing non-maleficence and also makes certain that the donor cannot experience pain. Enthusiasm for retrieval should not in any way influence prognostic judgement. Patient's prior wishes (e.g. refusal for donation) must be respected and family coercion or manipulation must be avoided since both harm the patient's posthumous interests. Added

procedures after DNC may not harm the donor in a strict sense but there are considerations such as respect for the body, family distress, and societal intuitions about treating the dead. Thus, prolonged somatic support to optimize organs can be seen as a moral harm. Oversight mechanisms are required precisely to ensure non-maleficence.

d. Justice

Justice in organ donation after death by neurologic criteria (DNC) is protected by making the whole system fair: who is asked to donate, how organs are allocated, and how communities are treated[14,15,16,17]. Patients who might be potential organ donors must be chosen consistently, avoiding donor mining in public hospitals or working preferentially in well-resourced private hospitals. Allocation systems must balance utility (maximizing overall benefit) with equity (fair chances for all eligible patients), using transparent medical criteria such as urgency, likelihood of benefit, waiting time, and sometimes geography. These allocation rules must be publicly available, based on sound medical judgment, monitored for disparities, and periodically revised to correct inequities. Donated organs are a national resource and public consultation is essential in designing allocation criteria and exercising oversight. Directed donation must be avoided except in special circumstances which must be transparently disclosed. Israeli law allows prioritization of those whose first-degree relatives have been donors. Financial incentives are permitted in Iran for live organ donation but it is unacceptable for OD/DNC. Clinicians have the responsibility of advocacy to ensure that the system works fairly.

These principles cannot be applied in the absence of professional fidelity and integrity. A commitment to human dignity and compassion must be visible and practiced.

B.2. The Cultural and Psychological Landscape of Consent

Beyond the legal definitions and medical protocols, the decision to donate organs is a profoundly personal and cultural act. In India, this decision is shaped by a default 'opt-in' system that presumes dissent, the powerful dynamics of the family unit, and the complex psychological responses to the trauma of sudden loss and the unfamiliar concept of brain-stem death.

a. The 'Opt-In' System and Awareness Deficit

India operates under an 'opt-in' model for organ donation, where individuals are presumed to have refused consent unless they have explicitly stated otherwise. This system is heavily burdened by a significant awareness deficit. A survey of the public in Northern India reveals a telling paradox:

- An overwhelming majority (81.2%) are willing to donate their organs.

- However, a similarly large majority (80.1%) believe that a lack of awareness is the single biggest reason for the country's low donation rates.

This gap suggests that the presumption of dissent is often not a conscious choice but a consequence of ignorance, leading to missed opportunities for donation.

b. The Power of Family and the 'Relative Veto'

The family plays a central and legally mandated role in the consent process, reflecting a culture where communitarian decision-making often takes precedence over concepts of individual autonomy. The Transplantation Act allows any single 'near relative'—a broad category including a spouse, parents, children, siblings, grandparents, and grandchildren—to veto the decision to donate. The law provides no hierarchy among these relatives, meaning a single dissenting voice can halt the entire process. The cultural importance of this dynamic is underscored by survey data showing that **88.4%** of people believe the views of their family are important in making the decision to donate.

c. Psychological Coping Mechanisms in Practice

In the face of a traumatic brain-stem death diagnosis, families and even medical professionals often employ psychological defense mechanisms to cope. These mechanisms, deeply influenced by cultural context, manifest in several distinct ways:

1. **Rationalization:** This mechanism allows individuals to construct a consciously tolerable explanation for a traumatic event, thereby mitigating psychic pain. One mother coped with her son's death by viewing his donation as a way for him to "live in others." In another case reflecting the cultural premium placed on sons and beliefs in rebirth, a female recipient with two daughters rationalized her transplant from a young boy by considering him the "son" she never had, who was now always with her.

2. **Projection:** This mechanism involves shifting unwanted feelings or blame onto others. It is not merely a personal psychological response but a symptom of the wider, systemic mistrust in the healthcare system. A neurosurgeon, conflicted by the process, referred to the transplant coordinator as "Yam Raj" (the God of Death). Similarly, patients on the waiting list for an organ cope with their frustration by blaming the government for their plight. This projection of blame is fueled by a system the public believes is broken, with 40.3% citing lack of faith as a barrier and 95.7% believing a black market for organs exists.

3. **Denial:** This involves refusing to accept a painful reality. Confronted with the unfamiliar diagnosis of brain-stem death, families may refuse to accept it as final. Because the patient's body remains warm and the heart continues to beat with

ventilator support, they hold onto the hope of a miracle. In one documented case, the father of a brain-stem dead patient simply left the hospital and stopped responding to calls, effectively abandoning the decision-making process by denying the reality of the situation.

These psychological responses highlight the need for sensitive and culturally attuned communication, which must also navigate the diverse religious doctrines that shape Indian society.

B.3. Religious and Cultural Perspectives

a. A Multi-Faith Perspective on Life, Death, and Donation[19]

In a country as deeply religious as India, spiritual and scriptural interpretations of the body, soul, and the meaning of death are central to the public's acceptance of modern medical concepts like brain death and organ donation. The major faiths practiced in India offer distinct, though often overlapping, perspectives on this complex ethical issue.

I. Hinduism

Hindu theology provides strong support for the concept of organ donation. A core belief is the distinction between the physical body, a temporary and perishable vessel, and the soul **(*Ātmā*),** which is eternal and unchangeable. This philosophical detachment from the physical form frames organ donation not as a mutilation of the self but as a final act of service. This is further reinforced by powerful mythological examples of selfless sacrifice **(*tyaag*),** such as:

- **Maharshi Dadhichi,** a sage who donated his own bones to the Gods to create an indestructible weapon.
- **King Shibi,** who offered his own flesh to a hawk to save the life of a dove.

These stories embed the act of donation deep within the cultural and religious fabric as a praiseworthy and noble deed.

II. Islam

Within Islam, the issue is more complex, with differing scholarly interpretations leading to a lack of unanimous consensus.

1. **The Majority View:** Most Muslim scholars and major bodies like the International Islamic Fiqh Academy (IIFA) accept brain death as true death. They permit organ

donation, framing it as a life-saving act of charity and citing the Qur'anic principle that "if anyone saved a life, it would be as if he saved the life of all mankind."

2. **Conflicting Minority Views:** A notable minority holds conflicting positions. The Indian Fiqh Academy has declared that cadaver donation constitutes mutilation and is an affront to the sanctity of the body. Another ruling asserts that a brain-stem dead person is not "Islamically dead" until the heart stops completely. This lack of a unified clerical position creates uncertainty. The differing compositions of these scholarly bodies may offer an insight: the IIFA, which accepted brain death, is composed of both Muslim scholars and medical professionals, whereas the Indian Fiqh Academy is composed wholly of scholars, suggesting that the inclusion of medical expertise can directly influence theological-legal rulings.

III. Christianity

Christianity generally accepts the concepts of brain death and organ donation. This acceptance is rooted in the theological principle of ***imago dei*** (the image of God), which imparts inherent dignity to human life. The ethical framework is guided by Jesus's teachings, particularly the commandment to ***"Love your neighbor as yourself".*** Organ donation is widely viewed as a profound expression of this love. Pope Francis has characterized the act as a "testimony of love for our neighbor," a sentiment shared across most Christian denominations.

IV. Sikhism

The Sikh faith views organ donation as an exemplary act of selfless service, or ***Seva***, a core principle of the religion. Saving a human life is considered a paramount duty, and donating one's organs is seen as the greatest form of ***Seva***. Sikh teachings emphasize that the physical body is merely a temporary vassal for the soul, which continues its journey after death. Therefore, allowing the body's organs to give life to another is fully consistent with Sikh philosophy.

V. Buddhist Philosophy

Buddhist philosophy supports organ donation through its foundational concept of ***Anatta***, or ***"not-self."*** This doctrine posits that what we perceive as a permanent "self" is actually a temporary aggregate of constantly changing physical and mental components **(*khandhas*).** Because the body and mind are seen as impermanent, composite phenomena, there is no eternal, essential self that must be kept whole after death. This philosophical detachment from the physical form removes any metaphysical impediment to donating organs, which are simply parts of a transient material assembly.

Ultimately, even where religious doctrine provides a clear path to donation, its practical application is contingent upon a foundation of public trust in the secular institutions tasked with managing the process—a foundation that, as we will see, is dangerously eroded.

b. Systemic Barriers and Public Mistrust[20]

Individual, cultural, and religious beliefs do not exist in a vacuum. They are profoundly influenced by pervasive systemic flaws and a deep-seated lack of public trust in India's healthcare system. These institutional shortcomings, which contribute to what sociologists term "institutional delegitimization," create formidable barriers that compound personal hesitations and significantly hinder efforts to increase organ donation rates.

I. Lack of Faith in the Healthcare System

Public mistrust is a significant impediment. Survey data from Northern India reveals the extent of this problem:

- **40.3%** of respondents believe a lack of faith in the healthcare system is a primary reason for poor donation rates in the country.
- Among those personally unwilling to donate, **42.9%** cite this lack of trust as their specific reason.

This sentiment suggests a widespread fear that the system may not act in the patient's best interest, a perception that directly impacts willingness to consent to donation.

II. Perceptions of a Black Market and Fear of Disfigurement

Public apprehension is fueled by two powerful and widespread fears. First is the belief in a rampant black market for organs. An overwhelming majority—**95.7%** of people surveyed—believe that illegal organ trading occurs in India. This perception fosters suspicion around the entire donation process. Second is the fear of bodily mutilation. The survey found that nearly half of the population fears that organ donation leads to the disfigurement of their loved one's body, a concern that touches upon deeply held beliefs about respect for the deceased.

III. Procedural and Bureaucratic Hurdles

Beyond public perception, the organ donation process is fraught with procedural and bureaucratic obstacles that cause critical delays and add to the trauma of grieving families. Key hurdles include:

- **Data and Registries:** Most states need to activate state-level advisory committees and uniform organ transplant registries to efficiently match donors with recipients.
- **Decision Timelines:** A mandatory, centralized timeline for decisions by Authorization Committees needs to be implemented, which can reduce avoidable delays.
- **Medico-Legal Cases:** Procedures in medico-legal cases, such as those involving accidents, are particularly cumbersome. Families may be required to obtain permissions from police in two different jurisdictions—the site of the accident and the location of the hospital—causing painful and taxing delays that exacerbate the emotional toll on a family in crisis.

These systemic failures not only obstruct the practical process of donation but also erode the public trust necessary for the program's success.

C) BRAIN-STEM DEATH DECLARATION: BEYOND ORGAN TRANSPLANTATION

Death is an inevitable consequence of life; anyone who is born has to die. In India, all births and deaths have to be registered as per The Registration Of Births And Deaths Act, 1969.[21] Under this law, "death" means the permanent disappearance of all evidence of life at any time after live-birth has taken place. "Permanent disappearance of all evidence of life" has been interpreted as the irreversible loss of consciousness, and cessation of breathing and circulation. The Transplantation of Human Organs and Act (THOA), 1994[22] was passed to facilitate and regulate organ and tissue transplantation, and to lay down rules and regulations for declaration of brain death. THOA defined brain-stem death as the stage at which all functions of the brain stem have permanently and irreversibly ceased and is so certified under sub-section (6) of section 3 of the Act. Further, as per THOA 1994, a "deceased person" means a person in whom permanent disappearance of all evidence of life occurs, by reason of brain-stem death or in a cardio-pulmonary sense, at any time after live birth has taken place. Thus, the THOA 1994 recognizes that person is dead either because he has suffered brain-stem death or cardiopulmonary death,[22] whereas the Registration Of Births And Deaths Act, 1969 requires all evidence of life to be absent,[21] and effective excludes a brain-stem dead patient whose heart is beating.

When the family of a brain-stem dead patient (referred to in this manuscript as brain-dead) potential organ donor has consented for organ donation, the process of declaration of brain-death is well-defined under the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Rules (THOTA Rules), 2014.[23] However the situation is not clear when the brain-dead patient is not a potential organ donor, or when there is no consent for organ donation. This situation is far from uncommon; in fact, a majority of brain-dead patients will not become organ donors. In

one of the only prospective studies from India, 55 out of 2820 patients (1.9%) patients admitted to the ICU were brain-dead. Of these 55 brain-dead patients, 33 were potential organ donors, but only 16 (29%) actually donated organs. Thus 71% of brain-dead patients were not organ donors.[24]

Brain-stem death was recognized as a legal entity under the THOA 1994, an act designed to enable cadaveric organ transplantation. It is therefore widely *assumed* that brain-stem death can only be declared in the context of organ donation; however, the *Act does not explicitly state that brain-death cannot be declared in the non-donor patient.* It would be paradoxical that the same patient can be declared dead in one situation (an organ donor) and not in another (non-organ-donor)! It is essential to explicitly and clearly harmonize the legal position on this issue. This will not only enable medical practitioners to manage non-donor brain-dead patients appropriately, but may indirectly lead to more families being amenable to requests for organ donation.

The motivations for individuals or families to consent for organ donation usually are the desire to benefit other individuals in need of organs, and to "live on" in others even after death. However, a majority of the families of brain-dead patients who are suitable to become organ donors do not give consent for organ donation, and opt for continuing intensive care and life-sustaining treatments for various reasons. These include the hope of a miracle, religious or moral beliefs, the desire to "do everything" or being unwilling to take responsibility for the decision to donate their loved one's organs. If the law enables doctors to declare and certify brain-dead patients as dead and withdraw all life-supporting treatments once brain-death is confirmed as per the established procedure, it is perhaps possible that some families may consider organ donation rather than continuing futile treatment.

In the current situation, however, the non-organ donor brain-stem dead patient poses several dilemmas for the practicing doctor in the ICU.

1. Should Such Patients be Declared Dead and Ventilatory and Cardiovascular Support Withdrawn Once Brain-Death is Confirmed?

In the brain-dead patient, while the patient has permanent loss of consciousness and breathing, artificial respiration is being given by the ventilator in the intensive care unit (ICU). The heart is beating and the blood pressure can be maintained with vasoactive agents. The family can see the electrical activity of the heart on the ECG monitor in the intensive care unit. It becomes difficult for families to accept that these patients are indeed 'dead', especially when organ donation is not a possibility. Apart from a clear legal position, societal awareness is therefore essential, as well as repeated counselling by the medical team. Families may be given some time to reconcile with the facts

Declaration of brain-death must be clearly and explicitly delinked from organ donation.

2. Should the non-organ donor brain-stem dead patient be treated and receive life-sustaining treatments that may be withheld or withdrawn as per the wishes of the family, as would happen with any other ICU patient

Continuing life support in any brain-dead patient cannot be ethically justified:

1. It violates the ethical principle of beneficence, as there is no benefit that can accrue by treating a patient who is already dead
2. It leaves the medical team and hospital open to accusations of profiteering by continuing to treat a dead patient, as cardiopulmonary death may take hours or even days to occur
3. It also violates the principle of non-malfeasance, as there is potential for harm to the patient and family, including loss of dignity, offering false hope, mental agony and financial costs
4. It goes against the principle of justice, as resources that could be utilized to treat salvageable patients are diverted towards "treating" a dead patient

In a living but terminally ill patient, withholding or withdrawal of life sustaining treatments may be carried out as per the procedure laid down by the Supreme Court in the Common Cause case.[25] However by no stretch of imagination can this be extended to the patient who is clinically and legally dead.

3. Should cardiovascular support be withdrawn to allow eventual cessation of cardiac activity resulting from brain-stem death while continuing ventilatory support?

This appears to offer the "middle path", allowing cardiovascular death to occur naturally without withdrawing ventilatory support. This too is difficult to justify on ethical grounds.

However, this may give the family members some time to reconcile themselves to the situation.

4. Potential Solutions

The definition of death should be harmonized under all laws that define death or a deceased person (e.g., Registration Of Births And Deaths Act, 1969, THOA 1994, BNS, etc.) This should embrace the concept of the uniform determination of death, which includes brain-stem death as well as cardiopulmonary death. If a patient is dead by any of these criteria, declaration and certification of death can follow. Declaration of brain-death must be clearly and explicitly

delinked from organ donation. As a safeguard, declaration of brain-stem death should be made strictly as per the provisions of THOTA Rules 2014. In January 2020, Keralam state expanded the scope of the Registration of Births and Deaths Act to include brain-stem death within the meaning of death.[26] This provision must be enacted by law throughout the country.

This will benefit society in multiple ways:

1. It will prevent wastage of resources towards futile treatments
2. It will reduce mental agony and financial distress for families of brain-dead patients undergoing prolonged futile care
3. It may expand the pool of organ donors

However, this must be accompanied by increasing social awareness, education and empathetic counselling and discussions with family members. At no stage should it appear coercive. Not all brain-dead patients are suitable for organ donation, as there may be medical contraindications for organ donation (e.g., age, disseminated malignancy, sepsis, multi-organ failure, etc.). Hence great sensitivity is required when dealing with this situation.

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

1. **Legal Contradictions and Delinking:** A major obstacle is the legislative fracture between the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA) 1994, which recognizes Brain-Stem Death, and the Registration of Births and Deaths Act (1969) alongside the Indian Penal Code (1860), which rely on cardiopulmonary criteria. Because of lack of knowledge, often brain death is linked to organ donation, due to which medical fraternity face severe legal risks if they withdraw mechanical support from non-donor brain-dead patients.
2. **The Doctor's Dilemma and Resource Allocation:** Physicians are trapped between legal liability and ethical obligations. Continuing futile intensive care for non-donors violates ethical principles—wasting scarce ICU resources, increasing financial and emotional strain on families, and risking accusations of hospital profiteering.
3. **The 'Opt-In' Model and Relative Veto:** India’s 'opt-in' organ donation system requires explicit consent. The law permits any single "near relative" to veto donation without a clear hierarchy, allowing one dissenting voice to halt the entire process despite the deceased's prior wishes.

4. **Psychological and Cultural Resistance:** Diagnostic complexity, coupled with seeing a warm body with a mechanically supported heartbeat, causes families to rely on denial, rationalization, or grief-driven hesitation.

5. **Religious Ambiguity and Public Mistrust:** While major Indian faiths generally support donation as an act of service, conflicting interpretations—particularly among local religious scholars regarding bodily integrity—create donor hesitation. This is further worsened by systemic mistrust, widespread fears of an organ black market, fears of bodily disfigurement, and cumbersome medico-legal delays across multiple police jurisdictions.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. **Harmonization of Death Laws is Essential:** National statutes must be unified so that death determination legally encompasses both brain-stem and cardiopulmonary criteria across all frameworks, mirroring recent legal updates in Kerala.

2. **Explicitly Delink Brain Death from Organ Donation:** Brain-stem death certification must be legally decoupled from organ procurement. Legally defining brain-stem death as absolute death across all clinical scenarios will prevent futile resource consumption, protect clinicians from liability, and grant dignity to patients.

3. **Bioethical Integrity Governs Donation:** Ethical organ retrieval relies on strict adherence to the Dead Donor Rule, upholding autonomy through clear donor preferences, ensuring equity and transparency in national allocation systems, and avoiding financial exploitation.

4. **Understanding Psychological Defense Mechanisms:** Surrogates and clinicians frequently utilize coping mechanisms such as denial, rationalization, and projection during the traumatic transition to brain-stem death. Managing these requires sensitive, culturally attuned, and transparent communication by healthcare teams.

5. **Religious Frameworks Broadly Support Altruism:** Central tenets across major traditions—including Hindu ***tyaag***, Islamic life-saving charity, Christian ***imago dei***, Sikh ***Seva***, and Buddhist ***Anatta***—theologically endorse organ donation. Involving medical experts alongside religious scholars helps resolve doctrinal ambiguities.

6. **Systemic Streamlining Restores Public Faith:** Boosting India's low donation rates requires establishing uniform state-level registries, setting strict decision timelines for Authorization Committees, simplifying multi-jurisdictional medico-legal procedures, and launching public education campaigns to dismantle fears surrounding organ trade and bodily mutilation.

CONCLUSION- CHARTING A PATH FORWARD

Overcoming India's severe organ shortage requires a comprehensive, multi-pronged strategy that moves beyond singular solutions. The challenge is not merely medical but deeply embedded in the nation's legal, social, and cultural fabric. A path forward demands a concerted effort to address the ambiguous legal definition of death, rebuild public trust in the healthcare system, engage respectfully with diverse cultural and religious beliefs, and systematically reform the procedural inefficiencies that plague the donation process. The insights gathered from legal analyses, public surveys, and ethical discourse point toward several key areas for reform.

To navigate this labyrinth and bridge the critical gap between need and reality, the following actions are essential:

1. **Legislative Reform:** Amend national laws, including the Registration of Births and Deaths Act, to establish a uniform definition of death that explicitly includes brain-stem death. This would delink the concept from the sole context of organ donation, providing legal clarity for physicians and reducing ambiguity for the public.
2. **Public Education and Awareness:** Launch sustained and targeted public awareness campaigns using media and the internet. These campaigns must aim to educate the public on the medical reality of brain death, directly address and dispel fears of bodily disfigurement, and work to normalize the concept of organ donation as a final, life-giving act of altruism.
3. **Systemic Streamlining:** Establish a central repository to track organ availability and facilitate efficient matching across states. Impose mandatory and uniform timelines on Authorization Committees to expedite decisions. Critically, simplify the cumbersome procedures for medico-legal cases to reduce painful delays and provide better support to grieving donor families.

REFERENCES

1. Beauchamp TL, Childress JF. Principles of biomedical ethics. 8th ed. New York: Oxford University Press; 2019
2. Toh HJ, Low JA, Lim ZY, Lim Y, Siddiqui S, Tan L. Jonsen's Four Topics Approach as a Framework for Clinical Ethics Consultation. Asian Bioeth Rev. 2018 Mar 23;10(1):37-51.

3. Rhodes R, Alfandre D. A systematic approach to clinical moral reasoning. Clin Ethics 2007; 2:66-70

4. Gardiner D, McGee A, Shaw D. Two fundamental ethical and legal rules for deceased organ donation. BJA Educ. 2021 Aug;21(8):292-299

5. Sulmasy DP, DeCock CA. Rethinking Brain Death-Why "Dead Enough" Is Not Good Enough: The UDDA Revision Series. Neurology. 2023 Aug 15;101(7):320-325

6. Morioka M. Reconsidering brain death: a lesson from Japan's fifteen years of experience. Hastings Cent Rep. 2001 Jul-Aug;31(4):41-6

7. de Groot J, van Hoek M, Hoedemaekers C, Hoitsma A, Smeets W, Vernooij-Dassen M, van Leeuwen E. Decision making on organ donation: the dilemmas of relatives of potential brain dead donors. BMC Med Ethics. 2015 Sep 17;16(1):64

8. Saxena D, Yasobant S, Trivedi P, Bhavsar P. Complexity of Decision-Making!: Case Studies of Cadaveric Organ Donations in Ahmedabad, India. Risk Manag Healthc Policy. 2022 Nov 21;15:2147-2154.

9. de Groot J, van Hoek M, Hoedemaekers C, Hoitsma A, Schilderman H, Smeets W, Vernooij-Dassen M, van Leeuwen E. Request for organ donation without donor registration: a qualitative study of the perspectives of bereaved relatives. BMC Med Ethics. 2016 Jul 11;17(1):38.

10. Kerstis B, Widarsson M. When Life Ceases-Relatives' Experiences When a Family Member Is Confirmed Brain Dead and Becomes a Potential Organ Donor-A Literature Review. SAGE Open Nurs. 2020 Apr 30;6:2377960820922031

11. Sarnaik AA, Clark JA, Meert KL, Sarnaik AP. Views of pediatric intensive care physicians on the ethics of organ donation after cardiac death. Crit Care Med. 2013 Jul;41(7):1733-44.

12. Merchant SJ, Yoshida EM, Lee TK, et al. Exploring the psychological effects of deceased organ donation on the families of the organ donors. Clin Transplant. 2008;22:341–7

13. Ahmadian S, Khaghanizadeh M, Zarghami MH, Khaleghi E, Ebadi A. Tools for the Measurement of Psychological Aspects of Organ Donation among the Families of Brain-dead People. Int J Organ Transplant Med. 2018;9(2):53-67

14. Dalal AR. Philosophy of organ donation: Review of ethical facets. World J Transplant. 2015 Jun 24;5(2):44-51.

15. Bunnik EM. Ethics of allocation of donor organs. Curr Opin Organ Transplant. 2023 Jun 1;28(3):192-196

16. Delmonico FL. International principles of deceased donor organ allocation. Int J Organ Transplant Med. 2013;4(2):41-5.

17. Shaw D, Gardiner D, Ploeg R, Floden A, Cooper J, Pérez-Blanco A, Wind T, Dijkhuizen L, Jansen N, Haase-Kromwijk B. When is directed deceased donation justified? Practical, ethical, and legal issues. J Intensive Care Soc. 2024 Feb 13;25(3):333-338

18. Chaudhary KM, Das A, Jena RK Legal and Ethical Challenges in Organ Donation: A Critical Study on Aspects of Implementation in India. IJFMR Volume 7, Issue 2, March-April 2025

19. Chiramel FD, Kalavampara VS, Ali MM, Singh B, Mohamed ZU. The view of major religions of India on brain stem death and organ donation. Amrita J Med 2020;16:82-6.

20. Dar R Use of Coping Mechanisms in Organ Donation and Transplantation with Distinctive Orientation to Brain Stem Death The International Journal of Indian Psychology ISSN 2348-5396 (e) | ISSN: 2349-3429 (p) Volume 3, Issue 4, No. 60, DIP: 18.01.093/20160304 ISBN: 978-1-365-26308-8 http://www.ijip.in | July-September, 2016

21. The Registration Of Births And Deaths Act, 1969 Act No. 18 Of 1969

22. Transplantation of Human Organs Act, 1994. Act no. 42 of 1994, 8th July 1994.

23. Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Rules, 2014. March 27, 2014

24. Seth AK, Nambiar P, Joshi A, Ramprasad R, Choubey R, Puri P, et al. First prospective study on brain stem death and attitudes toward organ donation in India. Liver Transpl 2009;15:1443-7.

25. Miscellaneous Application No. 1699/2019. Available from: https://isccm.org:9001/static/Highlighted-25360_2019_3_504_41295_Judgement_24-Jan-2023.pdf. Accessed March 10, 2026

26. Health and Family Welfare (B) Department, Kerala G.O.(Ms)No.7/2020/H&FWD, Dated, 19/01/2020.

CHAPTER 10

LEGAL FRAMEWORK AND COMPARATIVE PRACTICES

A) EVOLUTION OF LAWS RELATING TO BRAIN-STEM DEATH IN INDIA &THE WORLD
   - A.1. International Evolution: From Cardiopulmonary Death to Neurological Determination
   - A.2. Clinical Standards as Drivers of Legal Credibility
   - A.3. The Indian Evolution: BSD Recognition Anchored to Transplantation Law
   - A.4. Societal Trust, Consent, and the Legal "Social License" of BSD

B) COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS OF GLOBAL PRACTICES
   - B.1. Conceptual Convergence with Practical Diversity
   - B.2. Variability and Standardization: The Tension that Shapes Credibility
   - B.3. Safeguards Against Conflict of Interest: A Global Ethical Constant
   - B.4. Role of Family Experience and Bereavement Outcomes
   - B.5. Religion, Multicultural Contexts and Plural Legal Cultures
   - B.6. Digital Environments and Misinformation as a Modern Comparative Challenge
   - B.7. System-Level Models and the "Spain Effect"

C) NATIONAL LEGAL FRAMEWORK ON BRAIN-STEM DEATH: THE TRANSPLANTATION OF HUMAN ORGANS AND TISSUES ACT (THOTA), 1994
   - C.1. THOTA's Recognition of Brain-Stem Death
   - C.2. Rules, Procedures and the Role of Implementation
   - C.3. Safeguards Relevant to Public Confidence Under THOTA-Aligned Practice
   - C.4. Legal Frameworks, Ethics, and Societal Acceptance

AUTHOR(s):

Dr. Vivek Kute, Dr. Arpita Ray Chaudhury, Dr. Sourabh Sharma, Dr. Senthil Kumar R

Department and Affiliation

1. Professor and Unit Head, Nephrology and Transplantation Institute of Kidney Diseases and Research Center and Dr. H L Trivedi Institute of Transplantation Sciences, (IKDRC-ITS), and the Gujarat University of Transplantation Sciences (GUTS), Ahmedabad, Gujarat.
2. Professor and HOD, Department of Nephrology, NBMCH/ IPGMER, Kolkata.
3. Assistant Professor, Department of Nephrology, SMS Medical College, Jaipur.
4. Addl. Professor, Department of Forensic Medicine, Postgraduate Institute of Medical Education and Research (PGIMER), Chandigarh.

INTRODUCTION

The determination of death is both a medical judgment and a legal act, carrying profound ethical, social, and public-health implications. Advances in neurocritical care and life-sustaining technologies have fundamentally altered how death is encountered in modern medicine, compelling clinicians and lawmakers to re-examine traditional definitions and legal constructs of death.[1]

With the advent of modern intensive care and mechanical ventilation, traditional cardiopulmonary definitions of death proved insufficient to address situations in which irreversible loss of brain function could coexist with temporarily maintained circulation and respiration, creating a profound ethical and legal dilemma regarding the moment at which death should be declared.[2] This clinical reality necessitated the development of legally recognized neurological criteria for death, commonly referred to as Brain-Stem Death or brain death, to provide a biologically coherent and operationally defensible determination of death.[3]

Over time, jurisdictions across the world have responded to this challenge by embedding neurological standards of death determination within statutory law, professional guidelines, and regulatory frameworks, seeking to balance scientific rigor with ethical legitimacy and public trust. In India, this legal recognition has been formalized through the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act, 1994, which provides the statutory basis for recognizing Brain-Stem Death in the context of deceased organ donation.[4] The accompanying Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Rules, 2014, further operationalize this framework by defining governance mechanisms, procedural safeguards, and institutional responsibilities.[5]

Despite statutory clarity, the societal acceptance of neurological death determination remains closely intertwined with the lived experiences of families at the bedside. Decisions surrounding death declaration and organ donation occur during periods of intense emotional distress, and family understanding, trust, and perception of fairness strongly influence acceptance of both death determination and subsequent donation discussions. Empirical studies have demonstrated that family experiences of communication, transparency, and respect significantly shape decision-making and long-term psychological outcomes.[6,7]Adverse bereavement outcomes, including complicated grief, have been reported when death determination and end-of-life communication are perceived as abrupt, confusing, or inadequately supported.[8]

Public understanding of Brain-Stem Death is further complicated by widespread confusion between irreversible neurological death and other disorders of consciousness, such as coma, vegetative state, or minimally conscious state. These distinctions, although clear in clinical

neuroscience, are often blurred in public discourse and media narratives, contributing to misunderstanding and mistrust.[9] From a policy perspective, scholars have consistently argued that neurological criteria for death represent a defensible and necessary public framework, provided they are implemented with consistency, safeguards, and ethical transparency.[10]

Acceptance of neurological death determination is also shaped by broader public policy considerations, including societal attitudes toward organ donation, perceptions of institutional integrity, and confidence that conflicts of interest are effectively mitigated. Public opinion research highlights that trust in the healthcare system and belief in the fairness of death determination processes are central to consent for organ donation.[11] In pluralistic societies; religious and cultural perspectives further influence acceptance, underscoring the need for culturally sensitive engagement alongside legal recognition.[12]

In the contemporary digital environment, misinformation disseminated through social media has emerged as an additional challenge, with inaccurate claims regarding "recovery after brain death" undermining public understanding and confidence. Such narratives, though scientifically unfounded, exert a powerful emotional influence and complicate efforts to sustain trust in neurological death determination.[13] Recognizing these challenges, international efforts have increasingly focused on harmonizing principles for death determination, strengthening professional standards, and reinforcing ethical legitimacy across jurisdictions.[14]

At the system level, comparative experience demonstrates that coherent legal frameworks, consistent clinical practice, and transparent governance can strengthen public confidence and optimize deceased organ donation outcomes. Countries that have invested in professional coordination, accountability, and sustained public engagement offer valuable lessons for aligning legal recognition of Brain-Stem Death with ethical practice and societal trust.[15]

Against this backdrop, this section examines the evolution of legal recognition of Brain-Stem Death in India and globally, compares key features of international practices, and analyses the Indian statutory framework under the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act, 1994, within its broader ethical and societal context.

A) EVOLUTION OF LAWS RELATING TO BRAIN-STEM DEATH IN INDIA & THE WORLD

Brain-Stem Death(BSD), often used interchangeably with "brain death" in international literature, represents a medico-legal determination of death based on the irreversible cessation of brain(-stem) functions. Its legal evolution reflects the convergence of advances

in neurocritical care, end-of-life ethics, and societal expectations of transparent death determination.[1–3,10]

A.1. International Evolution: From Cardiopulmonary Death to Neurological Determination

For centuries, law and custom equated death with the permanent cessation of circulation and breathing. With mechanical ventilation and modern intensive care, it became possible to maintain cardiopulmonary function despite catastrophic and irreversible brain injury. This technological shift created a legal and ethical dilemma: a patient could appear "alive" by traditional cardiopulmonary signs while lacking any capacity for consciousness and spontaneous breathing, with no prospect of recovery.[1–3]

A major milestone in the modern legal-ethical framing of death determination was the work of the US President's Commission (1981), which articulated a comprehensive medical, legal, and ethical basis for defining death, including neurological criteria.[3] This work helped consolidate the "whole-brain" concept of death in policy terms and promoted the idea that death determination must be anchored in biologically coherent standards that can be operationalized clinically and supported legally.[3,10]

Bernat and other scholars subsequently reinforced that neurological criteria for death remain a defensible public policy framework when implemented with clarity, consistency, and safeguards that ensure neurological death determination is a structured process rather than a subjective clinical opinion.[10,14]

A.2. Clinical Standards as Drivers of Legal Credibility

Law does not operationalize bedside neuro-examination; it relies on the medical profession to define, standardize, and audit how BSD is diagnosed through professional guidelines specifying prerequisites, minimum testing standards and documentation.[1,14]

The American Academy of Neurology (AAN) guideline update (2010) is one widely cited example of evidence-based standardization, emphasizing the importance of excluding reversible confounders (e.g., hypothermia, intoxication, metabolic disturbances), demonstrating absence of brainstem reflexes and confirming apnoea (inability to breathe independently).[1] Such guidelines provide the clinical scaffolding upon which legal systems can rely, particularly when death determination is challenged by families or scrutinized by courts and media.[1,10]

At the same time, the existence of variability in institutional policies—documented in leading neurologic institutions—highlights a persistent vulnerability: when standards differ across

hospitals, public confidence can be undermined and legal defensibility becomes more complex.[2] This problem has fueled international efforts to harmonize core principles and minimum standards, without erasing legitimate local adaptation.[14]

The international guideline development efforts led by Shemie and colleagues (2014) reflect this movement toward convergence: the goal is not merely technical accuracy but also cross-system legitimacy—ensuring that death determination is ethically coherent, medically rigorous and consistently understood by professionals and the public. [14]

A.3. The Indian Evolution: BSD Recognition Anchored to Transplantation Law

In India, the legal recognition of BSD is closely tied to the country's organ donation and transplantation framework. The Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA)- 1994 (as amended), provides the statutory basis for deceased organ donation and explicitly recognizes Brain-Stem Death within that legal structure.[4] This linkage has practical strengths and persistent challenges.

1. **Strengths:** THOTA's statutory recognition a legitimizes BSD as a legally valid death determination and provides an institutional pathway for deceased donation to occur in accordance with regulated processes.[4]

2. **Challenges:** When neurological death is primarily encountered by the public through the lens of organ donation, families may perceive BSD as a "donation-related declaration" rather than a general medical-legal determination of death. This can amplify mistrust, particularly in settings where health-system inequities and misinformation already shape perceptions.[11,13]

The Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Rules, 2014, further operationalize legal procedures and governance mechanisms.[5] These rules are crucial because they translate statutory intent into implementable administrative requirements, supporting consistency in authorization, coordination, and accountability.[5]

A.4. Societal Trust, Consent, and the Legal "Social License" of BSD

Even where law is clear, the legitimacy of BSD depends on trust. Public policy and consent literature underscores that acceptance of organ donation, and by extension willingness to accept BSD in emotionally charged contexts, is strongly influenced by public opinion, perceived fairness and confidence that safeguards prevent conflicts of interest.[11]

Family decision-making studies highlight that relatives' perceptions of how death is communicated, how respectful the process feels and whether they sense transparency can significantly affect acceptance of death and consent for donation.[6,7] ICU bereavement

outcomes including complicated grief are influenced by the quality of communication, comprehension, and support during end-of-life processes; reinforcing that legal clarity alone is insufficient without humane implementation.[8]

Thus, the evolution of BSD law globally and in India can be summarized as a dual movement: (I) legal recognition of neurological death as a valid determination of death and (II) continuous strengthening of standards, safeguards, and communication practices to sustain public confidence.[1-3,6-8,10,14]

B) COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS OF GLOBAL PRACTICES

Comparative analysis of global practices is best approached through three lenses: the conceptual basis of BSD, the operational safeguards governing its determination and the health-system context that shapes public trust and donation outcomes.[1,2,14,15]

B.1. Conceptual Convergence with Practical Diversity

Across many jurisdictions, the conceptual rationale is broadly similar: neurological criteria define death when there is irreversible loss of the functions that integrate the organism as a whole—particularly consciousness and the capacity for spontaneous breathing.[3,10]

However, operationalization differs in terminology and emphasis. Some systems emphasize "whole-brain" death, others emphasize "Brain-Stem Death," and many use "brain death" as an umbrella term.[3,10] These differences can create public confusion, especially when media reporting lacks precision or uses the term loosely in cases that are actually coma or other disorders of consciousness.[9,13]

B.2. Variability and Standardization: The Tension that Shapes Credibility

The documented variability in institutional policies for brain death determination is not merely an academic concern; it is a credibility concern.[2] If families hear that standards differ between hospitals, they may infer subjectivity, inconsistency, or procedural arbitrariness.[2,11]

The AAN guideline update provides a model for clinical standardization within a jurisdiction, emphasizing prerequisites, the neurological examination, and apnoea testing.[1]Internationally, Shemie et al. describe guideline development aimed at harmonizing death determination principles and promoting clarity, rigor, and consistent implementation.[14] While countries may differ in detailed procedures, convergence around core safeguards strengthens medico-legal defensibility and public trust.[1,14]

B.3. Safeguards Against Conflict of Interest: A Global Ethical Constant

A consistent ethical and practical safeguard across systems is the separation—structural and communicative—between death determination and organ donation decisions. This is essential because families may fear that BSD is declared early to facilitate organ procurement.[11]

Consent and public policy analyses show that perceived conflicts of interest can reduce trust and willingness to consent.[11] Family studies reinforce that how the process is framed and who communicates, what and when, can influence acceptance and decision-making.[6,7] In comparative terms, systems that embed clear role separation and trained communication pathways tend to protect legitimacy more effectively.[11,15]

B.4. Role of Family Experience and Bereavement Outcomes

In practice, BSD is not experienced as a legal definition but as a moment of loss, with family perceptions, understanding, and emotional framing significantly influencing acceptance and decision-making.[6] Sociological work highlights how families may interpret donation through moral narratives such as "gift," "sacrifice," or perceived coercion.[7] ICU grief literature underscores that end-of-life experiences can lead to complicated grief, reinforcing the need for careful and compassionate communication.[8]

Comparatively, jurisdictions that treat BSD communication as a structured clinical competency—not merely a legal formality—are better positioned to reduce misunderstanding and distress.[6-8]

B.5. Religion, Multicultural Contexts and Plural Legal Cultures

Religious and cultural acceptance is a significant determinant of public confidence. While many religious traditions have pathways to accept neurological criteria, community-level understanding may lag behind formal positions. Studies in specific religious communities such as American Muslims, show how religiosity can shape attitudes toward deceased donation.[12] The comparative implication is clear: legal recognition alone does not ensure social acceptance; culturally competent engagement is required across plural societies.[12,11]

B.6. Digital Environments and Misinformation as a Modern Comparative Challenge

Misinformation spreads rapidly across borders and highly emotive narratives can undermine public understanding of BSD. Work on social media misinformation highlights that inaccurate claims and mislabelling of clinical states can shape beliefs and distrust.[13] This

is a comparative challenge because even robust legal systems may be vulnerable if public discourse is saturated with misleading content.[13]

B.7. System-Level Models and the "Spain Effect"

Spain is frequently cited for strategies that optimize deceased donation, emphasizing systematic coordination, professional accountability and approaches that build trust and operational excellence.[15] While Spain's success reflects many factors beyond BSD law alone, it provides a comparative example of how consistent practice, infrastructure, and transparency can transform public attitudes and donation outcomes**(Table 1)**.[15]

S. No.	Domain	International practice	National practice (India, THOTA 1994)
1	Statutory scope	Neurological criteria recognized as a general medico-legal determination of death, applicable independent of organ donation.[3]	Brain-Stem Death recognized only within transplantation law, in the context of deceased donation.[4,5]
2	Conceptual standard	Whole-brain (United States) or brainstem (United Kingdom) formulations, with brain death used as an umbrella term.[3,10]	Brain-Stem Death formulation, conceptually aligned with the United Kingdom rather than the whole-brain tradition.[4]
3	Certifying personnel	One or two appropriately qualified physicians, independent of the transplant team; number varies by jurisdiction.[1,2]	Statutory four-member Board of medical experts, including the hospital in-charge and a neurologist or neurosurgeon (Form 10).[4,5]
4	Repeat testing	Single or repeat examination per local protocol, with the interval set at clinical discretion.[1,14]	Mandatory two examinations, with a minimum six-hour interval in adults and longer intervals in 5children.[5]
5	Ancillary testing	Clinical diagnosis, with ancillary tests employed where confounders preclude full examination.[1,14]	P6urely clinical diagnosis; ancillary tests are optional and reserved for panel doubt or disagreement.[5]
6	Consent model	Presumed consent or opt-out in several high-performing systems, including Spain and the	Opt-in, requiring near-relative Authorization, with mandatory request in intensive care settings.[4]

		United Kingdom; opt-in elsewhere.[11,15]	
7	System coordination	Dedicated national agencies and trained coordinators underpin high-performing donation systems.[15]	NOTTO, ROTTO and SOTTO structure operating through registered and approved transplant coordinators.[5]

Table 1:*Comparison of International and National (Indian) Practice in Brain-Stem Death Determination*

Table 1 illustrates that international and Indian practice share a common conceptual foundation but diverge sharply in statutory architecture and operational rigidity. Internationally, neurological criteria function as a general determination of death applicable in any clinical setting, whereas in India Brain-Stem Death retains legal meaning only within the transplantation statute, confining its routine application to donation pathways.[4,5] This structural confinement is the central distinction, and it sustains much of the public conflation of death determination with organ procurement.[11] Conceptually, India follows the United Kingdom brainstem formulation rather than the whole-brain construct dominant in the United States, yet aligns with neither in procedural prescription.[3,10] India's framework is, in several respects, more conservative: a statutory four-member Board, two mandatory examinations separated by a minimum six-hour interval, and a purely clinical diagnosis in which ancillary testing remains optional.[5] These safeguards confer strong medico-legal defensibility but also impose logistical burdens that may delay certification and constrain the donor pool, particularly in centres lacking on-site neurology cover. Internationally, examiner number and testing intervals are set by professional guideline rather than statute, permitting flexibility while relying on harmonized minimum standards for consistency.[1,14] The consent dimension is equally divergent, with opt-out systems such as Spain achieving superior outcomes through coordinated infrastructure rather than legal coercion alone.[15] For India, the comparative lesson is not wholesale legislative transplantation but selective convergence: decoupling Brain-Stem Death from donation, standardizing determination through professional credentialing, and strengthening coordination, while preserving the procedural safeguards that underpin public trust.[2,11,14]

Domain	Common Global Principle	Comparative Implication for Practice
Definition of death	Neurological criteria recognized as a valid determination of death	Requires clear conceptual framing to avoid confusion with coma/disorders of consciousness.[3,9,10]
Minimum clinical safeguards	Exclude confounders; demonstrate absent brainstem reflexes; confirm apnoea	Standardization improves legal defensibility and public trust.[1,14]
Policy consistency	Variability between institutions can exist	Variability risks perceived subjectivity and mistrust[2,11]
Conflict-of-interest safeguards	Death determination must be independent of donation decisions	Separation protects legitimacy and consent processes[11]
Family communication	Compassionate, structured communication is essential	Poor communication may worsen distress and bereavement outcomes[6–8]
Culture and religion	Engagement must be culturally competent	Acceptance depends on community trust and values[12]
Media/social platforms	Misinformation can undermine legitimacy	Digital vigilance is needed to protect public understanding[13]
System organization	Coordinated systems strengthen donation pathways	Organizational models can improve public trust and outcomes[15]

Table 2:*Comparative Domains Shaping BSD Legality and Implementation Across Settings*

C) NATIONAL LEGAL FRAMEWORK ON BRAIN-STEM DEATH: THE TRANSPLANTATION OF HUMAN ORGANS AND TISSUES ACT (THOTA), 1994

India's legal framework for BSD is anchored in THOTA, 1994 (as amended) and its accompanying Rules.[4,5] This framework serves three interlinked objectives:

1. Recognizing BSD as a legally valid determination of death in the context of organ donation,
2. Regulating organ retrieval and transplantation to prevent abuse and promote ethical practice, and

3. Establishing administrative structures for authorization, oversight, and accountability.[4,5]

C.1. THOTA's Recognition of Brain-Stem Death

THOTA explicitly acknowledges Brain-Stem Death as a basis for deceased organ donation, establishing that death can be determined using neurological criteria within the legal architecture governing transplantation.[4] This recognition is crucial because it provides legal certainty for clinicians and institutions to proceed with deceased donation after BSD determination.[4]

The strength of this approach lies in statutory clarity; however, because the statute is encountered primarily through donation processes, misunderstandings may arise that BSD is declared for donation rather than recognized as a medically grounded determination of death.[11,13] This underscores the need for procedural safeguards and communication standards that clearly separate death determination from donation discussions.[11]

C.2. Rules, Procedures and the Role of Implementation

The Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Rules, 2014, provide the operational backbone that translates THOTA's legal recognition into implementation.[5] Rules matter in practice because they define governance mechanisms, processes and institutional responsibilities, thereby shaping consistency and accountability.[5]

In medico-legal terms, the credibility of BSD determination depends not only on what the Act states, but on how hospitals operationalize safeguards, documentation, and role separation.[1,2,14]Variability in policies—demonstrated internationally—illustrates why implementation frameworks must be clear and auditable.[2]

C.3. Safeguards Relevant to Public Confidence Under THOTA-Aligned Practice

Even when legally authorised, BSD determination and donation pathways must maintain public confidence. Evidence from consent and public policy literature shows that public trust is shaped by perceptions of fairness, transparency, and absence of conflicts of interest.[11]

Therefore, THOTA-aligned practice must consistently uphold safeguards that protect credibility:

1. Rigor and standardization in BSD determination consistent with established clinical standards and international guideline principles (excluding reversible causes, ensuring structured examinations and apnoea confirmation and documentation).[1,14]

2. Minimization of variability through institutional protocols and professional training, recognizing that variability can fuel suspicion.[2]

3. Clear separation of roles and timing so that BSD certification is not perceived as donation-driven.[11]

4. Family-centred communication to reduce confusion, distress and the risk of adverse bereavement outcomes, especially in ICU contexts.[6–8]

C.4. Legal Frameworks, Ethics, and Societal Acceptance

The President's Commission framework and subsequent ethical analyses highlight that legal definitions of death must remain ethically coherent and publicly defensible.[3,10] For THOTA, the ongoing challenge is not merely legal sufficiency but sustained societal acceptance of neurological death as death. That acceptance is shaped by:

- Public understanding and trust (which can be undermined by perceived inequity or past unethical practices).[11]
- Cultural and religious concerns that require engagement beyond legal texts.[12]
- Misinformation that spreads quickly and can distort the meaning of "brain death."[13]
- The lived family experience of ICU death determination and donation conversations.[6–8]

Thus, THOTA provides a foundational legal framework, but the durability of BSD legitimacy depends on ethical practice, procedural transparency, consistent standards, and skilled communication.[1,2,6-8,10,11,14]

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

Despite statutory clarity under THOTA, several issues continue to challenge the legitimacy and operational efficiency of Brain-Stem Death(BSD) determination in India. First, confining BSD to the transplantation framework perpetuates public conflation of neurological death with organ procurement, fostering mistrust that BSD is "declared for donation" rather than recognized as an independent medico-legal determination of death.[4,11] Second, the mandatory four-member Board, two examinations separated by a minimum six-hour interval, and reliance on a purely clinical diagnosis—while enhancing defensibility—impose logistical burdens that delay certification and constrain the donor pool, particularly in centres lacking on-site neurology or neurosurgery cover.[5] Third, inter-institutional variability in protocols and documentation risks perceptions of subjectivity and weakens

legal defensibility.[2] Fourth, inadequate separation of roles and timing between death determination and donation requests threatens the impartiality essential to valid consent.[11] Fifth, cultural and religious heterogeneity demands culturally competent engagement that legal recognition alone cannot secure.[12] Sixth, rapidly propagating social-media misinformation—including unfounded "recovery after brain death" narratives—erodes public understanding and trust.[13] Finally, deficits in compassionate, structured family communication within intensive-care settings heighten the risk of complicated grief and refusal of consent.[6–8] Addressing these challenges requires standardization of determination, professional credentialing, clear role separation, and sustained public engagement, rather than wholesale legislative change.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. **Evolution of Neurological Criteria:** Advances in neurocritical care necessitated moving from cardiopulmonary definitions to legally recognized neurological criteria (Brain-Stem Death/BSD) for irreversible loss of brain function. Globally, clinical guidelines (such as the AAN guidelines) drive legal credibility by standardizing prerequisites, examinations, and apnoea testing.

2. **Indian Statutory Architecture (THOTA):** In India, BSD is explicitly recognized under the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), 1994, and its 2014 Rules. Unlike international jurisdictions where BSD is a general legal determination of death, India confines BSD recognition primarily to organ transplantation, which can fuel public perception that death is declared solely for donation.

3. **Procedural Safeguards under THOTA:** India mandates conservative safeguards, including certification by a statutory four-member Medical Board, two clinical examinations separated by at least six hours, and optional ancillary testing.

4. **Global Diversity & Practical Challenges:** While conceptual principles converge around irreversible brain failure, practical variations persist in examiner requirements, testing intervals, and consent frameworks (e.g., opt-out models like Spain versus opt-in in India). Institutional variability can compromise legal defensibility and public trust.

5. **Building Societal Trust & Protecting Legitimacy:** Sustaining the "social license" for BSD requires strict separation between certification teams and donation coordinators, compassionate family communication to prevent complicated grief, culturally competent engagement, and active measures against social media misinformation.

CONCLUSION

The legal evolution of Brain-Stem Death reflects a global effort to align the biological realities of irreversible brain failure with ethically defensible, operationally rigorous and socially legitimate standards of death determination, supported by professional guidelines and international harmonization efforts. Yet comparative evidence also demonstrates that variability, perceived conflicts of interest, cultural concerns and misinformation can undermine trust even when law is explicit.

In India, THOTA and its Rules establish the statutory and administrative basis for BSD recognition within the deceased donation pathway. The success of this framework depends on implementation that is medically rigorous, ethically transparent, and family-centred—protecting the integrity of death determination while enabling equitable and trustworthy organ donation systems.

REFERENCES

9. Wijdicks EFM, Varelas PN, Gronseth GS, Greer DM. Evidence-based guideline update: determining brain death in adults: report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. Neurology. 2010 Jun 8;74(23):1911–8.

10. Greer DM, Wang HH, Robinson JD, Varelas PN, Henderson GV, Wijdicks EFM. Variability of brain death determination guidelines in leading US neurologic institutions. Neurology. 2008 Jan 22;70(4):284–9.

11. President's Commission for the Study of Ethical Problems in Medicine and Biomedical and Behavioral Research. *Defining death: medical, legal, and ethical issues in the determination of death.* Washington (DC): US Government Printing Office; 1981.

12. Government of India. *The Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act, 1994* (as amended in 2011). New Delhi: Ministry of Law and Justice; 2011. Available from: National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO).

13. Government of India. *Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Rules, 2014*. Gazette of India. New Delhi: Ministry of Health and Family Welfare; 2014. Available from: National Portal of India.

14. Rodrigue JR, Cornell DL, Howard RJ. Organ donation decision: comparison of donor and nondonor families. *Am J Transplant.* 2006 Jan;6(1):190–8.

15. Sque M, Long T, Payne S, Allardyce D. Why relatives do not donate organs for transplants: "sacrifice" or "gift of life"? *J Adv Nurs*. 2008 Jan;61(2):134–44.

16. Kentish-Barnes N, Chaize M, Seegers V, et al. Complicated grief after death of a relative in the intensive care unit. *Eur Respir J*. 2015 May;45(5):1341–52.

17. Laureys S, Boly M, Maquet P. Tracking the recovery of consciousness: new insights into disorders of consciousness. *Prog Brain Res.* 2009;177:329–38.

18. Bernat JL. The whole-brain concept of death remains optimum public policy. *J Law Med Ethics.* 2006;34(1):35–43.

19. Siminoff LA, Mercer MB. Public policy, public opinion, and consent for organ donation. *Camb Q Healthc Ethics.* 2001;10(4):377–86.

20. Padela AI, Zaganjor H. Relationships between Islamic religiosity and attitudes toward deceased organ donation among American Muslims. *Am J Transplant.* 2014 Jul;14(7):1557–65.

21. Cheng X, Lee J, Brown J. Social media misinformation about brain death and organ donation*. J Med Internet Res.* 2020 Oct 21;22(10):e20793.

22. Shemie SD, Hornby L, Baker A, et al. International guideline development for the determination of death. *Intensive Care Med.* 2014 Jun;40(6):788–97.

23. Matesanz R, Domínguez-Gil B. Strategies to optimize deceased organ donation. *Transplant Rev (Orlando).* 2007 Oct;21(4):177–88.

CHAPTER 11

ORGAN DONATION AND BRAIN-STEM DEATH DECLARATION IN SPECIALCIRCUMSTANCES

AUTHOR(s)

Dr. Santvana Kohli Arora, Dr. Anirban Hom Choudhuri, Dr. Sheila Nainan Mayatra

Department and Affiliation

1. Professor, Department of Critical Care Medicine, VMMC & Safdarjung Hospital, New Delhi.
2. Director, Professor & Head, Dept. of Critical Care Medicine, VMMC & Safdarjung Hospital, New Delhi.
3. Head, Division of Critical Care Medicine, Tata Memorial Hospital, Mumbai.

INTRODUCTION

Organ donation following brain-stem death (BSD) is a cornerstone of modern transplantation programmes but presents distinctive clinical, ethical, and logistical challenges when BSD occurs under special circumstances. This chapter provides pragmatic, evidence-informed guidance for organ donation and brain-stem death determination in patients with sepsis, active or recently treated malignancy, positive viral markers, pregnancy, and in destitute or unclaimed individuals. It further explores BSD determination in the context of advanced life-support technologies, including extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO), continuous renal replacement therapy (CRRT), ventricular assist devices (VADs), pacemakers, and left ventricular support systems. ICU-specific strategies for donor optimization are discussed, with emphasis on maintaining medicolegal validity, ethical integrity, and recipient safety. Where relevant, both international standards and India-specific regulatory frameworks are referenced. The overarching focus is on safety-first decision making that balances potential recipient benefit against acceptable infectious, oncological, and societal risk.

The figure below (Figure 1) shows the physiological sequences of the systemic cascade seen after brain death which guides donor management.

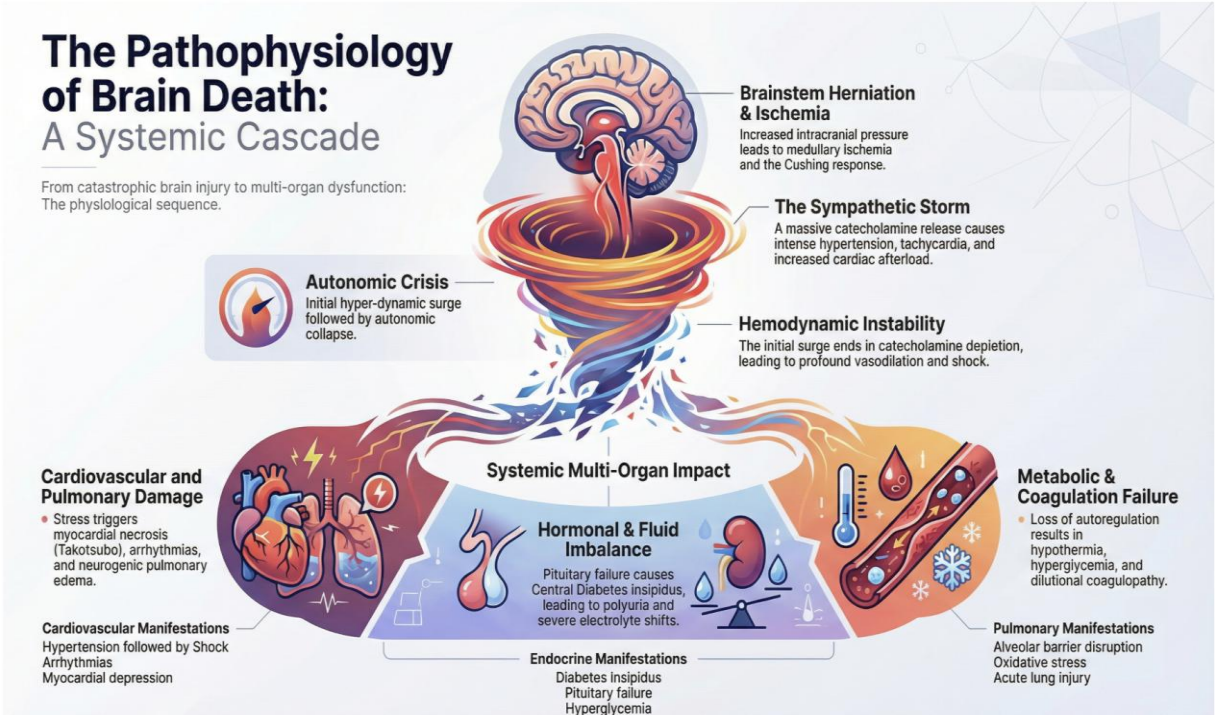


Figure 1: *Physiological Sequences of the Systemic Cascade Seen After the Brain Death*

A) GUIDANCE ON CASES INVOLVING

A.1. Sepsis

Sepsis is defined as life-threatening organ dysfunction caused by a dysregulated host response to infection. The possibility of acute or latent infections being transmitted to the recipient through the transplanted organs from a patient with sepsis and the risk of post-transplant sepsis raises safety concerns for the recipient. However, the presence of sepsis is not an absolute contraindication for organ donation. Carefully **s**elected donors with treated sepsis can safely increase the pool of donors, considering the shortage of organs. With appropriate risk evaluation and antimicrobial therapy, some organs may be transplanted safely.

Infectious agents transmissible by organs or tissues belong to five pathogen groups. These include 1. viruses through infection in the organs or tissues of donor (with or without current viraemia) 2. Bacteria through colonisation or infection of organs or tissues or bacteraemia 3. Fungi through colonisation or infection of organs or tissues or fungaemia 4. Parasites through latent or acute infection and 5. Prions through infection. Therefore, donor screening and testing is paramount to identify patients at risk of disease transmission. Medical and social history screening through interviews with the next of kin is as important as screening using laboratory test results. In addition to screening using a chest radiograph, blood, urine and tracheal aspirate testing, focussed tests should be conducted to identify the source of sepsis.

In certain situations, organ donation is possible in patient with sepsis when the infection has been identified and is treatable, the donor has received appropriate antimicrobial therapy and there is no uncontrolled bloodstream infection. However, this requires specialist evaluation. Organ donation should generally be avoided in patients who have an unknown source of infection, infections with no treatment options, uncontrolled sepsis, positive blood cultures, fungal or highly resistant infections and active viral infections with a high transmission risk.

While careful screening of donors for sepsis and infections through history, physical examination, and laboratory testing may minimize the risk of infection transmission, it is not possible to screen for all potential pathogens, and current screening tests have clear limitations. Therefore, for all early infections and patients with an atypical clinical course, the possibility of infection of donor origin should be considered. Reporting of suspected or proven donor-derived infections is currently mandated.

A.2. Malignancy

Organ donation in cancer patients, considered an absolute contraindication in the past, is now possible and becoming increasingly common. Having a history of cancer is not a reason for disqualification from being an organ donor anymore. However, eligibility depends on various factors including the type of cancer, stage of the disease, and period in remission and requires comprehensive oncological evaluation. Every potential donor will undergo a rigorous screening process, including medical history even biopsies if required to minimize risk.

The SOTTO Maharashtra 2021 guidelines provide a classification of malignant tumours in donors to estimate the risk of transmission to recipient. This has been high risk (> 10 % transmission risk, adapted by the Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine (ISCCM) in their Position Statement on the management of potential organ donor to provide a comprehensive list of malignancies where organ donation is absolutely contraindicated, high risk (>10% transmission risk), intermediate risk (1%-10%) and low risk (0.1% -1%) and no significant risk (e.g. brain tumour from which malignancy is excluded by excision biopsy)

Absolute contraindications include active malignancy with spread outside the organ of origin, active hematological malignancies, cerebral lymphomas and secondary intracranial tumours. These may be a breach in blood–brain barrier by high-grade brain tumours following surgery, ventricular peritoneal shunts or ventriculoarterial shunt and systemic chemotherapy increasing the risk of transmission of malignancy. In addition, there is also the possibility of missing a brain tumour or brain metastasis in donors which may present as intracerebral haemorrhage, which may actually be a tumour bleed. This has led to tumours in recipients.

Depending on the type of cancer, patients who have been treated and are cancer-free for at least five years, are often considered for organ donation. Even in cancer patients with low risk, organ donation is considered only in recipients who are at a significant risk without transplant, based on clinical judgement and informed consent.

A.3. Positive viral markers (HIV, HBV, HCV, HTLV, SARS-COV-2)

Serological or nucleic acid positivity for viral pathogens is no longer a universal contraindication to organ donation. The availability of highly effective antiviral therapies and sensitive nucleic acid testing (NAT) has fundamentally altered donor risk assessment. Organs from donors who are hepatitis C virus (HCV) RNA–positive can now be transplanted safely into HCV-negative recipients, followed by early initiation of direct-acting antiviral therapy, achieving near-universal viral clearance and excellent graft and patient outcomes.

Hepatitis B virus (HBV) and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) positive donors may be considered for selected recipients within established clinical protocols and with explicit informed consent. Such programs must operate within local legal and regulatory frameworks and ensure comprehensive recipient counselling, appropriate antiviral prophylaxis, and structured post-transplant virological surveillance.

For emerging and re-emerging viral infections, policy continues to evolve in response to accumulating evidence. During the SARS-CoV-2 pandemic, initial exclusion criteria were progressively relaxed; current guidance supports consideration of non-pulmonary organ transplantation from SARS-CoV-2 PCR–positive donors in carefully selected recipients, provided there is transparent risk communication, absence of active viral pneumonia, and implementation of enhanced peri-transplant monitoring strategies.

A.4. Pregnancy

Pregnancy in a brain-dead woman represents one of the most complex scenarios in contemporary critical care, encompassing profound medical, ethical, legal, and societal dimensions. In circumstances where foetal gestation is potentially viable and continuation of somatic support is technically feasible, management should be directed by a formally constituted multidisciplinary team, including specialists in obstetrics, neonatology, intensive care, transplant medicine, ethics, and legal services. Such coordination is essential to ensure coherent clinical decision-making and governance.

The principal clinical goal is the meticulous optimization of maternal physiology to sustain placental function and promote foetal growth and maturation. This includes maintenance of cardiovascular stability, adequate oxygenation and ventilation, endocrine replacement (particularly thyroid and adrenal support), nutritional optimization, thermoregulation, and rigorous infection surveillance and control. These interventions effectively transform critical care from a curative paradigm to a fetal-supportive model of care.

From an ethical and legal perspective, management must be grounded in respect for patient autonomy, previously expressed wishes (including advance directives or donor registration), surrogate decision-making, and jurisdiction-specific statutes governing death determination and continuation of life-sustaining treatment after brain death. The moral status of the foetus, proportionality of care, and distributive justice considerations—especially in resource-limited settings—must also be explicitly addressed.

When the intended outcome includes organ donation, parallel planning is required to balance competing priorities: prolonging gestation to optimize neonatal outcomes versus preserving maternal organ function for transplantation. Key considerations include timing

of delivery, feasibility of maintaining donor organ quality during prolonged somatic support, and potential implications for recipient outcomes.

The literature, consisting primarily of case reports and small case series, documents instances of successful foetal survival after weeks to months of maternal somatic support, followed by multi-organ retrieval. However, these cases highlight the extraordinary resource intensity, clinical uncertainty, and ethical sensitivity inherent in such care. Consequently, each case demands an individualized, transparent, and ethically robust framework, supported by institutional oversight and sustained communication with families, to reconcile maternal dignity, foetal welfare, and societal responsibilities.

A.5. Destitute/Unclaimed Patients

Unclaimed or destitute patients present both an opportunity to expand the donor pool and ethical/legal complexity. National rules (for example, NOTTO/THOTA in India) provide mechanisms for donation from unclaimed bodies, typically requiring explicit institutional protocols, documentation of unclaimed status for a defined period, and authorization by designated officials or ethics committees. Hospitals must ensure dignity, due diligence in searching for next-of-kin, and strict adherence to legal forms before proceeding with organ retrieval.

Organ donation in destitute or unclaimed patients presents unique ethical and legal challenges. As per THOTA and state-specific guidelines, organs may be retrieved from unclaimed bodies only after declaration of BSD, absence of claimants despite reasonable efforts, and authorization by the hospital authority in accordance with local laws. Consent is typically obtained from a person lawfully in possession of the body or as per institutional and medico-legal protocols, ensuring that no commercial consideration is involved.

Strict adherence to transparency, documentation, and ethical safeguards is essential to protect patient dignity, prevent misuse, and uphold public trust in the organ donation system.

A.6. Foreign Nationals

In foreign nationals, the principles of organ donation remain the same, but additional safeguards apply. Consent for donation must be obtained from the next of kin or legally authorized representative, with clear documentation of identity and relationship. Hospitals must ensure communication with the patient's embassy or consulate, particularly in medico-legal cases, and adhere to Ministry of Health and Family Welfare advisories. Allocation of organs from deceased foreign donors is regulated through national and regional networks

(such as NOTTO/ROTTO), ensuring equitable and non-commercial distribution to recipients based on established waiting lists.

Strict compliance with THOTA provisions, prohibition of commercial transactions, and meticulous documentation are essential to maintain ethical standards, legal validity, and international trust in India's transplant program.

The table below **(Table 1)** summarizes the donor suitability criteria in the different clinical conditions.

Clinical Scenario	Donor Suitability Consideration	Key Actions/ Precautions
Sepsis	Possible with targeted therapy; avoid if uncontrolled systemic fungal infection	Blood cultures, targeted antibiotics, organ-specific risk review
Localized/treated malignancy	Often acceptable depending on tumour type & disease-free interval	Oncological history, imaging review, recipient informed consent
Active metastatic malignancy	Generally contraindicated for most organs	Exclude affected organs; consider exceptions very rarely
HCV RNA positive	Acceptable with DAA therapy in recipients	NAT testing, recipient counselling and DAA plan
HIV positive	Selectable under policy and recipient matching	Legal compliance, counselling, prophylaxis
Pregnancy (viable foetus)	Complex; consider prolongation of support to allow foetal maturation	Multidisciplinary plan, obstetric/neonatal input
Unclaimed / destitute	Permitted under national rules with due process	Follow NOTTO/THOTA procedures, ethics oversight

Table 1: *Donor Suitability Framework Suggesting a Concise Risk Stratification for Common Special Scenarios.*

B) BRAIN-STEM DEATH IN COMPLEX MEDICAL CASES

B.1. Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation (ECMO)

BSD determination in patients supported on ECMO is increasingly encountered. The World Brain Death Project and specialty supplements provide guidance for clinical testing and apnoea testing while on ECMO. Key considerations include: ensuring adequate oxygenation and hemodynamic stability during testing, understanding the impact of extracerebral CO_2 clearance on apnoea testing (and adjusting sweep gas to permit CO_2 accumulation), and utilizing ancillary testing (cerebral perfusion imaging, transcranial Doppler) when apnoea testing is unsafe or inconclusive. For veno-arterial (VA) ECMO where native cardiac output is low, assessment of cerebral blood flow requires specialist interpretation. Institutional ECMO-specific protocols for BSD testing and donor management simplify decision pathways and improve safety.

The figure below (Figure 2) gives a schematic representation of the decision algorithm for BSD testing and donor management in patients on ECMO.

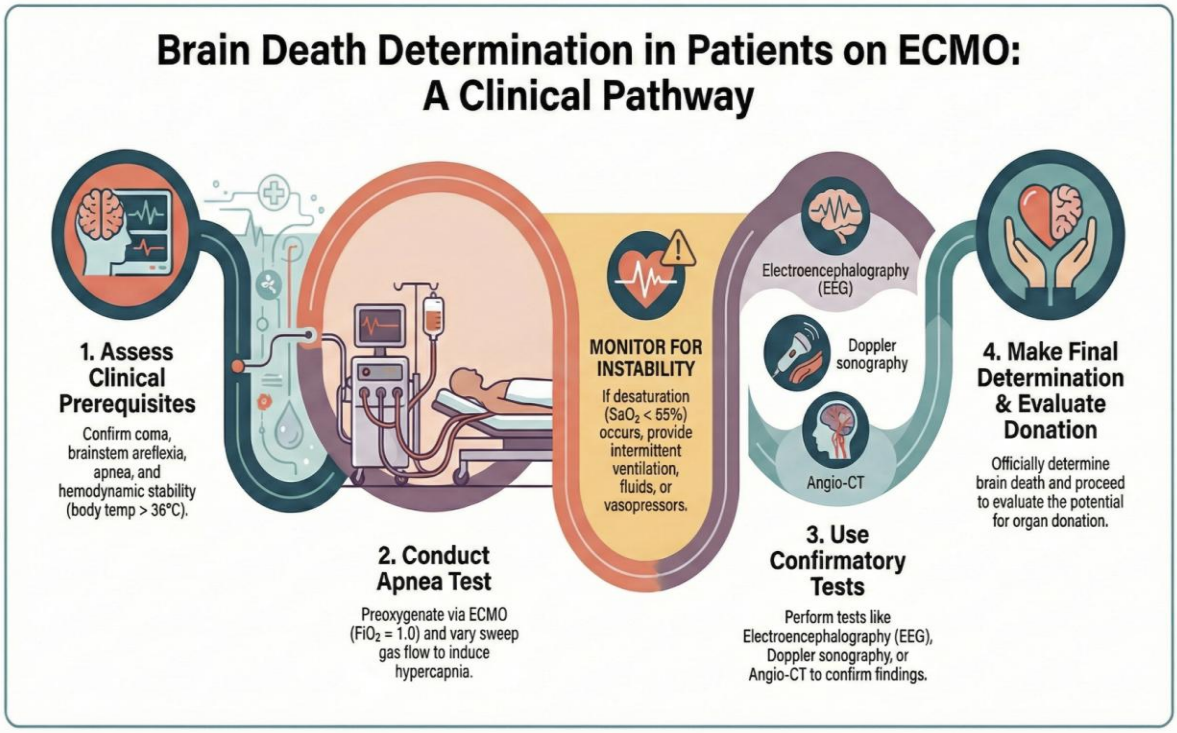


Figure 2: *Decision algorithm for BSD testing in patients on ECMO*

B.2. Continuous Renal Replacement Therapy (CRRT)

CRRT devices do not preclude clinical BSD testing, but they can alter pharmacokinetics of sedatives and other agents; drug accumulation or removal should be accounted for when considering confounders to brain-stem reflex testing. CRRT per se is not a contraindication to organ donation, but consideration of anticoagulation strategies (e.g., heparin) during procurement and coordination with surgical teams is necessary.

B.3. Ventricular Assist Devices (VAD) and Left Ventricular (LV) Support

Mechanical circulatory support, including durable VADs or temporary left ventricular assist devices, may maintain systemic perfusion despite catastrophic brain injury. Brain-stem death testing remains clinical; however, device settings, anticoagulation, and the presence of implanted hardware warrant liaison with cardiology and cardiothoracic teams. In some scenarios, device explantation is unnecessary if organ retrieval can occur safely; in others, device-related infection or malignancy may influence organ suitability.

B.4. Pacemaker and Cardiac Implanted Electronic Devices

Implanted pacemakers or cardioverter-defibrillators do not impede BSD determination. Documentation of device type, dependency status, and potential interference with donated organ use (for example, presence of infected leads) should be part of donor assessment. Removal of devices is typically performed at the time of organ retrieval per surgical protocols.

C) SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS IN INTENSIVE CARE UNITS

ICU teams occupy a pivotal position in translating potential organ donors into successful donations. Core principles include early identification of eligible donors through structured trigger referral systems, timely implementation of standardized donor optimization bundles, and rigorous adherence to legal and neurological criteria for brain-stem death determination. Donor management should encompass goal-directed hemodynamic support, lung-protective ventilation strategies, endocrine resuscitation, glycaemic control, and active temperature regulation, aimed at preserving multisystem organ function and maximizing graft viability.

Where infection is suspected or documented, targeted antimicrobial therapy should be initiated promptly and reviewed in collaboration with infectious disease specialists. Equally critical is meticulous, contemporaneous documentation of all components of brain-stem death testing, ensuring medicolegal validity and auditability.

At an institutional level, formalized protocols must facilitate early engagement with transplant coordinators and multidisciplinary teams, including social workers and bereavement counsellors, to support family communication, navigate consent processes, and provide compassionate end-of-life care. Together, these practices position the ICU not merely as a site of organ preservation, but as the ethical and operational foundation of the entire transplantation pathway.

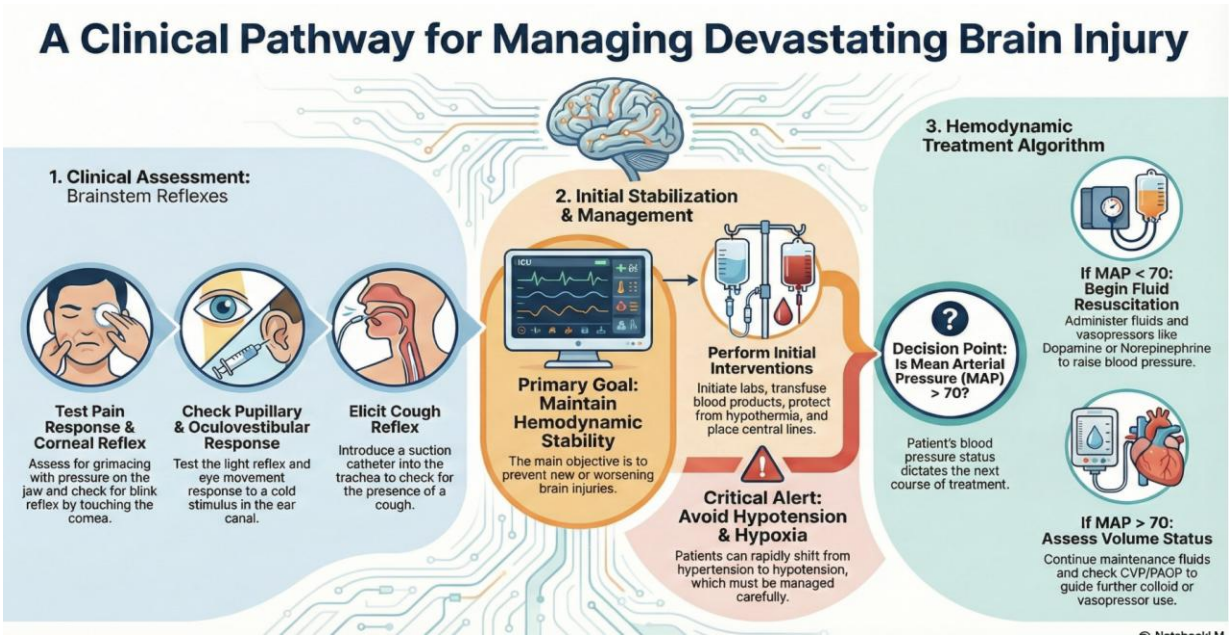


Figure 3:*A step-wise guide to management of patients with devastating brain injury*

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

1. Accurate BSD determination is complicated by reversible factors (residual sedatives, metabolic disturbances) and advanced life-support (ECMO, CRRT), which can interfere with clinical examination and standard apnoea testing.

2. Donor suitability in the context of sepsis, viral infections, malignancy, or pregnancy demands careful risk–benefit assessment, made harder by limited availability and variable interpretation of ancillary tests, alongside ethical and legal challenges with pregnant donors, unclaimed patients, and reluctant families.

3. These issues require multidisciplinary collaboration, standardized protocols, meticulous documentation, and effective, transparent communication to maintain public trust and optimize transplantation outcomes.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. Donor suitability in sepsis, active infections, malignancy, pregnancy, or unknown history requires careful balancing of recipient safety with the need to expand the donor pool.

2. Advances in antimicrobial and antiviral therapy and improved transplant outcomes have broadened donor acceptance, but institutional variability can lead to inconsistent decisions.

3. BSD determination on ECMO or CRRT is technically challenging, particularly apnoea testing, and often necessitates appropriate ancillary investigations.
4. Ethical and medicolegal concerns—consent, unclaimed patients, and family communication—demand transparent, legally compliant processes with robust documentation.
5. Multidisciplinary collaboration, standardized protocols, and strict adherence to national guidelines are essential for ethical, safe, and equitable transplantation practices.

CONCLUSION

Organ donation following brain-stem death in special circumstances represents one of the most complex intersections of critical care medicine, transplantation science, ethics, and law. Advances in diagnostic technology, antiviral therapy, oncological risk stratification, and life-support systems have progressively expanded the donor pool, but have simultaneously increased the cognitive and moral burden placed on clinicians responsible for BSD determination and donor management.

Special scenarios such as sepsis, malignancy, viral marker positivity, pregnancy, and the care of destitute or unclaimed individuals require individualized, multidisciplinary decision-making that prioritizes patient safety, recipient welfare, and societal trust. Similarly, the presence of advanced life-support technologies—including ECMO, CRRT, and mechanical circulatory support—demands adaptation of conventional neurological criteria and, in many cases, reliance on ancillary testing to ensure diagnostic certainty.

Ultimately, the legitimacy of organ donation programmes depends not on the number of transplants performed, but on the integrity of the processes that precede them. Adherence to the dead donor rule, transparent communication with families, rigorous documentation, separation of treating and certifying teams, and compliance with legal and ethical frameworks are non-negotiable foundations of practice. Within this framework, the intensivist plays a pivotal role—not merely as a physiological custodian of organs, but as a guardian of ethical credibility and public confidence in transplantation.

The future of organ donation in special circumstances will be defined by continued technological innovation, evolving societal norms, and expanding therapeutic possibilities. However, its moral authority will remain anchored in a single principle: that the determination of death must always be beyond reasonable doubt, and that the gift of donation must arise from trust, not expediency.

REFERENCES

1. CDC Clinical Guidance for Transplant Safety 2024
2. Guide to the quality and safety of organs for transplantation. 7th Edition European Committee (Partial Agreement) on Organ Transplantation (CD-P-TO)
3. Theodoropoulos N, Ison MG. Donor-Derived Infections: Incidence, Prevention, and Management. Transplant Infections. 2016 Feb 15:113–27. doi: 10.1007/978-3-319-28797-3_8. PMCID: PMC7123109
4. Nalesnik MA, Woodle ES, Dimaio JM, Vasudev B, Teperman LW, Covington S, et al. Donor-transmitted malignancies in organ transplantation: Assessment of clinical risk. Am J Transplant. 2011;11(6):1140–1147. doi: 10.1111/j.1600-6143.2011.03565.x
5. Edge SB, Byrd DR, Compton CC, Fritz AG, Greene FL, Trotti A. 7th edition, New York, NY: Springer; 2010. AJCC Cancer Staging Manual
6. Greer DM, et al. Determination of Brain Death/Death by Neurologic Criteria: The World Brain Death Project. JAMA. 2020;324(11):1078–1097
7. NOTTO / National Organ & Tissue Transplant Organization: Guidelines for implementation of national organ transplant program. Ministry of Health & Family Welfare, Government of India. 2021
8. ISCCM & NOTTO: Management of Potential Organ Donor – Indian guidelines. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2024
9. AAN Clinical Guideline: Pediatric and Adult Brain Death/Death by Neurologic Criteria. American Academy of Neurology. 2023
10. South Asian Transplant Infectious Disease Guidelines. 2024
11. Recent reviews on donor malignancy risk and donor-derived infection (2024–2025)

CHAPTER 12

PAEDIATRIC/ NEONATAL BRAIN-STEM DEATH GUIDELINES

AUTHOR(s):

Dr. Nameet Jerath, Dr. Deepak Gupta, Dr. Yogesh N Parikh, Dr. G V Basavaraja, Dr. Vivek Kute, Dr. Ridhima Sharma

Department and Affiliation

1. Sr. Consultant, Pediatric Pulmonology and Critical Care, IP Apollo Hospital, New Delhi.
2. Professor and Consultant Neurosurgeon, Department of Neurosurgery, AIIMS & associated JPN Apex Trauma Centre, New Delhi.
3. Secretary General, Indian Academy of Paediatrics (IAP). Associate Professor, Department of Paediatric, Government Medical College & New Civil Hospital, Majura Gate, Surat, Gujarat.
4. National President, Indian Academy of Pediatrics (IAP). Professor of Pediatrics and Head of Paediatric emergency, Critical care Unit, Medical Superintendent, IGICH, Bangalore.
5. Professor and Unit Head, Nephrology and Transplantation Institute of Kidney Diseases and Research Center and Dr. H L Trivedi Institute of Transplantation

Sciences, (IKDRC-ITS), and the Gujarat University of Transplantation Sciences (GUTS), Ahmedabad, Gujarat.

6. Associate Professor, Department of Anaesthesia & Critical Care, AIIMS, Nagpur, Maharashtra.

INTRODUCTION

The determination of brain death, also termed death by neurologic criteria (BD/DNC), in neonates and children represents one of the most technically demanding and ethically sensitive responsibilities in paediatric critical care and neurology. Unlike adults, paediatric patients span a broad continuum of neurodevelopment—from late gestation neonates to adolescents—with substantial heterogeneity in brain maturation, systemic physiology, pharmacokinetics of sedative and neuromuscular agents, and responses to catastrophic neurologic injury. These age dependent differences preclude direct extrapolation from adult standards and necessitate a cautious, structured, and protocol driven approach to brain stem death (BSD) determination.

International paediatric guidelines consistently emphasize that BSD is fundamentally a clinical diagnosis anchored in meticulous bedside examination performed under strictly defined physiologic conditions. Ancillary investigations are intended to support, rather than replace, the clinical determination when components of the examination or Apnoea testing cannot be reliably completed. Contemporary consensus uniformly restricts BSD determination to infants and children ≥37 weeks corrected gestational age, acknowledging the absence of validated diagnostic criteria in preterm neonates due to incomplete brain-stem reflex maturation, unpredictable drug handling, and lack of normative data for confirmatory testing. The framework presented below integrates major paediatric neurology, critical care, and transplant-relevant consensus standards into a coherent, defensible approach suitable for clinical practice, ethical deliberation, and legal certification.

A) BRAIN DEATH IN PAEDIATRIC PATIENTS

Brain death in paediatric patients is defined as the permanent and irreversible cessation of all functions of the entire brain, including the brain-stem. Clinically, this state is characterized by the absence of consciousness, loss of all brain-stem reflexes, and inability to sustain spontaneous respiration despite an adequate physiologic stimulus. This definition is biologically and legally distinct from coma, vegetative state, minimally conscious state, or severe encephalopathy, all of which preserve some degree of cortical or brain-stem activity and therefore do not meet criteria for death.

In children, the most common etiologic pathways leading to BD/DNC include hypoxic–ischemic brain injury following cardiopulmonary arrest, severe traumatic brain injury, intracranial hemorrhage, fulminant central nervous system infections, and catastrophic cerebral edema arising from metabolic, toxic, or inflammatory insults. Paediatric brains exhibit greater neuroplasticity than adult brains; however, this potential for recovery coexists with heightened vulnerability to secondary injury mechanisms. Cerebral edema, excitotoxic neurotransmitter release, mitochondrial failure, and impaired cerebrovascular

autoregulation may progress rapidly, resulting in diffuse and irreversible loss of brain function. The clinical trajectory in children can therefore be abrupt and nonlinear, underscoring the need for careful temporal observation before determination of irreversibility.

A foundational requirement for BSD determination is the unequivocal identification of a proximate neurologic cause capable of accounting for global and permanent brain failure. The mechanism must be sufficient, on biological grounds, to explain the observed neurologic state. Conditions that impair consciousness or motor output without abolishing brain-stem function—such as high cervical spinal cord injury, neuromuscular junction disorders, or isolated infratentorial lesions—cannot independently justify a diagnosis of brain death. In such circumstances, additional diagnostic evaluation or prolonged observation is mandatory to avoid diagnostic error.

International consensus further affirms that BSD determination must begin with the presumption that the patient is alive. This presumption is then tested and, if appropriate, disproven through systematic, reproducible examination conducted in accordance with accepted standards. This principle reflects both scientific caution and ethical responsibility, recognizing the irreversible implications of declaring death in a child and the societal trust vested in clinicians performing this determination.

B) BSD TESTING PROTOCOLS IN PAEDIATRIC PATIENTS

The determination of BSD in paediatric patients is a structured clinical process conducted under tightly controlled physiologic conditions. Diagnosis requires demonstration of three essential findings: (1) unresponsive coma, (2) complete absence of brain-stem reflexes, and (3) Apnoea in response to an adequate hypercapnic stimulus.

B.1. Prerequisites for Evaluation

Before initiation of BSD evaluation, strict prerequisites must be fulfilled. Hypotension, hypothermia, and severe metabolic or endocrine derangements must be corrected, as each may reversibly suppress neurologic function and confound examination findings. Age-appropriate blood pressure thresholds must be maintained throughout testing, and core temperature should be normalized and stabilized. Severe disturbances of glucose, electrolytes, acid–base balance, or endocrine function must be identified and corrected prior to examination.

Pharmacologic confounding represents a particularly critical issue in paediatrics. Neonates and young children demonstrate prolonged and unpredictable clearance of sedatives, opioids, anticonvulsants, and neuromuscular blocking agents, especially in the setting of hypoxic–ischemic injury or hepatic and renal dysfunction. Reliance on elapsed time alone is

often insufficient. When available, therapeutic drug monitoring should be used to document clearance of medications capable of suppressing neurologic function. If uncertainty persists, conservative delays or ancillary testing are required to ensure diagnostic certainty.

B.2. Neurologic Examination

The neurologic examination must be conducted by clinicians with specific expertise in paediatric neurology, paediatric critical care, or neonatology. Examination includes confirmation of coma and bilateral absence of pupillary, corneal, oculocephalic, oculovestibular, gag, and cough reflexes, where technically feasible and not contraindicated. Absence of motor responses attributable to brain or brain-stem activity must be demonstrated. Spinally mediated reflex movements may persist and do not preclude the diagnosis of BSD.

B.3. Number and Timing of Examinations

Unlike adult practice, paediatric guidelines mandate two complete and independent clinical examinations, each incorporating Apnoea testing, separated by an age- and injury-specific observation period. This requirement reflects conservative consensus rather than evidence of diagnostic superiority, acknowledging developmental neurobiology, limited paediatric outcome data, and heightened societal sensitivity surrounding paediatric death determination. Observation periods are longer in neonates and in cases of hypoxic–ischemic injury, reflecting greater uncertainty regarding the tempo of neurologic injury in these contexts.

B.4. Apnoea Testing

Apnoea testing in children requires heightened vigilance because of limited cardiopulmonary reserve and narrow physiologic margins. Testing must be performed in an intensive care environment with continuous monitoring and predefined termination criteria. Adequate hypercapnic stimulation is documented by an arterial $PaCO_2$ ≥60 mmHg and ≥20 mmHg above baseline, in the absence of respiratory effort. The test must be aborted if hypoxemia, hemodynamic instability, or arrhythmias develop.

Special clinical situations merit additional consideration. In children receiving extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO), traditional Apnoea testing may be technically infeasible or unsafe because extracorporeal gas exchange alters carbon dioxide kinetics. In such cases, carefully modified protocols or direct progression to ancillary cerebral blood flow testing are recommended. Similarly, children managed with targeted temperature management after cardiac arrest require rewarming and sustained normothermia before Apnoea testing, as hypothermia can suppress respiratory drive and confound interpretation.

If Apnoea testing cannot be safely completed—such as in patients with severe hypoxemia, refractory hypotension, or complex cardiopulmonary support—ancillary testing demonstrating absence of cerebral blood flow becomes necessary.

C) CRITERIA FOR BSD DECLARATION, CERTIFICATION AND DOCUMENTATION IN PAEDIATRIC PATIENTS

The declaration of BSD in a child constitutes a legal determination of death and therefore demands rigorous documentation and certification. Each examination must be comprehensively recorded, including confirmation of prerequisites, detailed neurologic findings, Apnoea test methodology, arterial blood gas results, and explicit exclusion of confounding factors.

The time of death is defined as the moment when the final required component of BSD determination is fulfilled, most commonly completion of the second Apnoea test or confirmation of an acceptable ancillary study. Both examining physicians must independently attest to their findings and certify that all guideline requirements have been satisfied. Institutions should ensure that documentation follows standardized checklists to promote consistency, transparency, and legal defensibility.

Communication with the child's family is an integral component of the BSD determination process. Families must be informed, with clarity and compassion, that brain death represents biological and legal death rather than withdrawal of life-sustaining treatment. Continued cardiac activity reflects artificial somatic support and does not indicate residual life. Cultural, religious, and emotional considerations should be addressed with sensitivity, while maintaining transparency regarding the medical and legal finality of the diagnosis.

International guidance recognizes that disagreement or emotional distress does not invalidate a properly conducted BSD determination. Instead, such situations necessitate structured counseling, involvement of multidisciplinary teams, and ethical consultation where appropriate.

D) ORGAN DONATION PROTOCOL FOLLOWED BY ORGAN PROCUREMENT AND ALLOCATION IN PAEDIATRIC PATIENTS

Once BSD has been formally declared and documented, discussions regarding organ donation may be initiated by trained personnel in accordance with national legal frameworks and ethical standards. A central principle across all international guidelines is strict separation between BSD determination and organ donation, ensuring avoidance of conflicts of interest and preservation of public trust.

Paediatric organ donation presents unique challenges, including smaller organ size, limited recipient matching, technical complexity, and profound emotional burden on families. Despite these challenges, paediatric donors remain a vital source of life-saving organs for other children awaiting transplantation.

Following consent, donor management focuses on physiologic optimization to preserve organ function. This includes meticulous hemodynamic support, maintenance of normothermia, endocrine replacement when indicated, correction of electrolyte and metabolic disturbances, and prevention of infection. Organ procurement and allocation are conducted through regulated national systems designed to ensure equity, transparency, and medical suitability. Paediatric allocation algorithms often prioritize urgency, size compatibility, and immunologic matching, reflecting both ethical imperatives and biologic constraints.

E) SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS AND CHALLENGES UNIQUE TO PAEDIATRIC CASES

E.1. Developmental and Physiologic Considerations

Several challenges are unique to paediatric and neonatal BSD determination. Neurodevelopmental immaturity represents the most significant limitation, particularly near the lower gestational age threshold. Brain-stem reflexes emerge and mature at different developmental stages, rendering interpretation unreliable in preterm neonates and justifying their exclusion from current recommendations.

Pharmacologic confounding is disproportionately prominent in children. Neonates and young infants exhibit prolonged and unpredictable clearance of sedatives, opioids, and anticonvulsants, particularly following hypoxic–ischemic injury or multi-organ dysfunction. Conservative delays or ancillary testing are often required to ensure diagnostic certainty.

Ancillary testing itself has inherent limitations in paediatrics. In contrast to adults, normative paediatric data for many ancillary modalities are sparse, and technical performance is often influenced by patient size, developmental anatomy, and operator expertise. Interpretation must therefore be cautious and integrated with the overall clinical context. Electroencephalography is discouraged due to poor correlation with whole-brain function and susceptibility to artifact and drug effects. Cerebral blood flow studies more closely align with the biologic concept of brain death but may be technically challenging in neonates due to open fontanelles, extracranial tracer uptake, and operator dependency.

Finally, the psychosocial and ethical dimensions of declaring death in a child require exceptional care. The paediatric context amplifies moral distress among families and healthcare providers alike, particularly when neurologic death follows sudden or

unexpected injury. Families may struggle to reconcile the appearance of warmth, perfusion, and cardiac activity with the concept of death, underscoring the importance of repeated explanation, continuity of care, and multidisciplinary support. Engagement of ethics committees, social work, and spiritual care services can be invaluable in navigating these discussions while maintaining clarity and consistency in messaging.

E.2. Medicolegal and Institutional Considerations

Although the biologic concept of brain death is internationally consistent, legal statutes and institutional policies governing BD/DNC determination may vary across jurisdictions. Paediatric practitioners must therefore be familiar with local laws, institutional protocols, and documentation requirements. Regular training, use of standardized checklists, and periodic audits are recommended to ensure uniform application of guidelines and to minimize the risk of procedural deviation. Such institutional safeguards are particularly important in paediatric practice, where case volumes may be lower and opportunities for experiential learning are limited.

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

Paediatric brain-stem death determination rests almost entirely on consensus rather than on evidence, and the candid acknowledgement of that fact is itself part of good practice. Below 37 weeks corrected gestational age no validated criteria exist: brain-stem reflexes are still maturing, drug handling is erratic, and the ancillary tests that might otherwise arbitrate uncertainty have never been normed in such patients. Beyond that threshold the difficulties merely change character. Hypoxic–ischaemic injury and therapeutic hypothermia prolong the clearance of sedatives, opioids and anticonvulsants unpredictably, so elapsed time is a poor surrogate for elimination. Apnoea testing, physiologically exacting at the best of times, may be unsafe or uninterpretable in the small, unstable or ECMO-supported child. Cerebral blood flow studies are confounded by open fontanelles and extracranial tracer uptake, while electroencephalography — drug-sensitive and blind to the brain-stem — cannot substitute for the bedside examination. Surrounding all of this is a family asked to accept as dead a child who remains warm, perfused and visibly beating: a demand no protocol can soften and no clinician should attempt to meet in haste.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. Brain-stem death in children is a clinical diagnosis. Ancillary investigations support the examination when it cannot be completed; they never replace it.
2. Determination is restricted to infants of at least 37 weeks corrected gestational age. Below this threshold the criteria are unvalidated and declaration should not be attempted.

3. The prerequisites — an established proximate cause sufficient to explain global brain failure, normothermia, age-appropriate blood pressure, correction of metabolic and endocrine derangement, and documented clearance of confounding drugs — are not formalities. Most diagnostic error begins in their neglect.

4. Two complete examinations, each including apnoea testing and separated by an age-appropriate observation interval, remain the conservative and defensible standard in paediatric practice.

5. The presumption is life until life is systematically disproven. Where genuine doubt persists, waiting is always the correct clinical and ethical decision.

6. Where ancillary testing is necessary, assessment of cerebral blood flow aligns most closely with the whole-brain concept of death; electroencephalography is not recommended as a confirmatory test.

7. Determination of death must be complete, documented and clearly communicated before donation is ever raised. The dead donor rule is the foundation on which paediatric transplantation stands or falls.

8. Institutional safeguards — standardized checklists, simulation-based training and periodic audit — matter disproportionately in paediatrics, where case volumes are low and clinical experience accrues slowly.

CONCLUSION

In paediatric practice, brain-stem death determination requires a careful balance of scientific rigor, ethical integrity, and compassionate communication. Although the evidence base remains limited and largely consensus driven, convergence across international paediatric neurology, critical care, and transplant societies provides a robust and defensible framework for clinical practice. Continued research, international harmonization, and prospective validation—particularly in neonates—remain essential to the evolution of paediatric BD/DNC standards.

Domain	Guideline-Derived Principle	Rationale/ Guideline Logic
Conceptual definition	Death is defined by irreversible loss of all brain and brain-stem function	Establishes neurologic death as biologic and legal death, distinct from coma or vegetative states
Eligible population	≥37 weeks corrected gestational age only	Insufficient evidence for reliable brain-stem

		assessment and ancillary testing in preterm neonates
Burden of proof	Presumption of life until disproven	Ethical safeguard to prevent premature declaration of death
Requirement of cause	A proximate neurologic injury sufficient to explain global brain failure must be identified	Prevents misdiagnosis in conditions that mimic brain death
Excluded sole conditions	Spinal cord injury, neuromuscular disorders, isolated infratentorial lesions	These do not abolish intrinsic brain-stem function
Nature of diagnosis	Primarily clinical	Reinforces bedside examination as the diagnostic cornerstone
Number of examinations	Two complete examinations required	Conservative consensus acknowledging developmental uncertainty
Observation interval	Age- and injury-dependent waiting period	Allows time to establish irreversibility, especially after hypoxic–ischemic injury
Physiologic prerequisites	Normothermia, age-appropriate blood pressure, metabolic stability	Prevents reversible suppression of neurologic function
Drug confounding	Clearance of sedatives/paralytics must be assured	Paediatric pharmacokinetics are unpredictable and prolonged
Apnoea testing principle	Demonstration of absent respiratory drive to hypercapnia	Confirms loss of medullary respiratory center function
Apnoea test threshold	$PaCO_2$ ≥60 mmHg and ≥20 mmHg above baseline	Standardized physiologic stimulus across guidelines
Apnoea test limitations	ECMO, severe hypoxemia, instability may preclude testing	Protects patient safety and test validity
Role of ancillary tests	Used only when clinical exam or apnoea testing is incomplete	Ancillary tests support but do not replace clinical diagnosis

Preferred ancillary modality	Cerebral blood flow assessment	Most closely aligns with whole-brain function concept
EEG	Not recommended as confirmatory test	Does not assess entire brain function and is drug-sensitive
Time of death	Completion of final required confirmatory step	Provides legal clarity and uniform documentation
Certification	Independent attestation by examining physicians	Ensures procedural integrity and accountability
Family communication	Brain death explained as biologic and legal death	Essential for transparency and ethical practice
Organ donation interface	Initiated only after BSD determination	Upholds dead donor rule and public trust
Institutional safeguards	Standardized protocols, training, and audits	Reduces variability and procedural error in paediatric settings

Table 1: *Paediatric Brain-Stem Death Determination - Decision Framework*

REFERENCES

1. Greer DM, Kirschen MP, Lewis A, et al. Pediatric and Adult Brain Death/Death by Neurologic Criteria Consensus Guideline: report of the AAN Guidelines Subcommittee, AAP, CNS, and SCCM. Neurology. 2023;101(24):1112–1132. doi:10.1212/WNL.0000000000207740.
2. Nakagawa TA, Ashwal S, Mathur M, et al.; Society of Critical Care Medicine, Section on Critical Care and Section on Neurology of the American Academy of Pediatrics, and the Child Neurology Society. Guidelines for the determination of brain death in infants and children: an update of the 1987 Task Force recommendations. Crit Care Med. 2011;39(9):2139–2155. doi:10.1097/CCM.0b013e31821f0d4f.
3. Nakagawa TA, Ashwal S, Mathur M, et al. Clinical report—guidelines for the determination of brain death in infants and children: an update of the 1987 Task Force recommendations. Pediatrics. 2011;128(3):e720–e740. doi:10.1542/peds.2011-1511.

4. Greer DM, Shemie SD, Lewis A, et al. Determination of brain death/death by neurologic criteria: the World Brain Death Project. JAMA. 2020;324(11):1078–1097. doi:10.1001/jama.2020.11586.

5. Wijdicks EFM, Varelas PN, Gronseth GS, Greer DM; American Academy of Neurology. Evidence-based guideline update: determining brain death in adults: report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. Neurology. 2010;74(23):1911–1918. doi:10.1212/WNL.0b013e3181e242a8.

6. Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act, 1994 (Act No. 42 of 1994) [Internet]. New Delhi: Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India; 1994 [cited 2026 Jul 17]. Available from: https://www.indiacode.nic.in/bitstream/123456789/15433/1/transplantation_of_human_organs_and_tissues_act,_1994.pdf

7. Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Rules, 2014 (G.S.R. 218(E), notified 27 March 2014) [Internet]. New Delhi: National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organisation (NOTTO), Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India; 2014 [cited 2026 Jul 17]. Available from: https://notto.mohfw.gov.in

8. Zirpe K, Pandit R, Gurav S, et al. Management of potential organ donor: Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine—position statement. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2024;28(Suppl 2):S249–S278. doi:10.5005/jp-journals-10071-24698.

9. Lewis A, Kirschen MP, Greer D. The 2023 AAN/AAP/CNS/SCCM pediatric and adult brain death/death by neurologic criteria consensus practice guideline: a comparison with the 2010 and 2011 guidelines. Neurol Clin Pract. 2023;13(6):e200189. doi:10.1212/CPJ.0000000000200189.

CHAPTER 13

CHALLENGES AND SOLUTIONS

AUTHOR(s):

Dr. Roop Gursahani, Dr. Kapil Zirpe, Dr. Rahul Pandit

Department and Affiliation

1. Consultant & Section Incharge, Neurology & Palliative Medicine, P.D. Hinduja Hospital, Mumbai.
2. Head, Neuro Trauma Intensive Care Unit, Grant Medical Foundation, Ruby Hall Clinic, Pune.
3. Chair Critical Care, Emergency and all Reliance Foundation Healthcare Initiatives, Sir H. N. Reliance Foundation Hospital, Mumbai, Maharashtra.

INTRODUCTION

The definition of death has evolved from a simple cessation of heartbeat and respiration to a complex legal, social, and medical determination centered on irreversible brain failure. Brain-stem death declaration (BDD) sits at the intersection of biomedical progress, sociolegal policy, and diverse cultural beliefs. Because death is an evolutionary process rather than a singular event, maintaining individuals with total brain failure on advanced life support or extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) strains public and private resources. This necessitates clear jurisdiction-specific legislation to manage legal transitions like inheritance, social rituals, and resource allocation. Compounding this medical milestone are significant clinical and ethical controversies. Chief among them is whether brain-stem death alone provides a sufficient framework for human death, or if whole-brain death—including the permanent loss of hypothalamic neuroendocrine function—is required. Opponents point to "chronic brain death" cases where meticulous somatic maintenance allows bodies to sustain pregnancies or undergo pubertal changes, although no patient has ever recovered independent cognitive functioning. Furthermore, protocols vary drastically in how they manage the exclusion of confounding variables (such as hypothermia or drug toxicity), the required observation windows across different age groups, and the professional criteria required for the examining physicians. Bioethical friction also surrounds the necessity of surrogate consent for clinical steps like the apnea test, which presents a marginal risk of exacerbating preexisting brain damage. Moving forward, the international medical community is striving toward more conservative, standardized rules to prevent false-positive declarations. In a developing healthcare landscape like India, these clinical controversies intersect with severe systemic hurdles—including fractured infrastructure, immense training deficits, and medicolegal disputes. Resolving these issues requires robust, uniform protocols that successfully decouple the declaration of death from the subsequent logistics of organ donation.

A) CONTROVERSIES IN CLINICAL STEPS FOR BRAIN-STEM DEATH DECLARATION: NATIONAL COMMITTEE CONSENSUS – ADDRESSING VARIATIONS IN PROTOCOLS

A.1. Is Brain Death a Valid Criterion for Human Death

Death is a process not an event[1]. It takes a variable period of time to complete the transition from a sentient human being to an accumulation of organic matter. Traditionally, the instant of death is identified when the heartbeats (followed by respiration) are unequivocally confirmed to have ceased. Tibetan Buddhism extends this to a transitional period believing that the soul leaves the body some days later, usually overlapping putrefaction[2]. Modern medicine times it earlier, to the identification of irreversible brain failure, with complete loss

of consciousness and independent respiration. Religious objections to withdrawal of life support have the impossible objective of reconciling current medical abilities and ancient pronouncements. Maintaining individuals in this transitional state, whether with standard life support measures or even further with extracorporeal membrane oxygenation and/or cryonics takes substantial resources. If these resources depend on public funding in any way, the state has a definite role in defining the transition accurately. Death is a legal, social, financial and religious event and hence the definition of death is a sociolegal responsibility of every independent jurisdiction. It must be recognized that a single civil-death criterion may not align with real world decision making[3]. Without clear legislation, this can only be resolved by case law. This is best understood by a thought experiment. A has two children B and C both of whom are equal inheritors. A is declared brain-stem dead. B refuses to accept this formulation and is prepared to exhaust A's existing resources to maintain life support. C goes to court to have A declared dead for purposes of inheritance.

A.2. Is Brain-Stem Death Adequate for BDD or is Whole Brain Death Required

Brain death[4,5] consists of (1) higher brain death with loss of cortical functions, (2) brain-stem death with failure of the reticular activating system (denoted by loss of consciousness and respiration) and (3) loss of hypothalamic neuroendocrine function required for somatic integration. Brain-stem death is relatively easily conceptualized and identified and hence is commonly used. Opponents of the BSD concept point to prolonged survival (up to 3 decades) of individuals/bodies maintained with privately funded and meticulous life support. Pregnancies can come to term and pubertal changes can occur during this period, sometimes termed chronic brain death. This is possible currently only with intact neuroendocrine function. Thus, according to these opponents, BDD needs confirmation of neuroendocrine failure as well. Careful analysis of these cases however does not demonstrate even one individual with recovery to any level of independent functioning. The exceptional case of Jahi McMath is quoted but a contested version affirms that she reached a minimally conscious state before final death at 4 years after the initial event. In the USA, the Uniform Determination of Death Act of 1980 avoided this controversy because at that time life support was not sophisticated enough for prolonged maintenance of brain-dead individuals. When the UDDA was sought to be revised in 2020, the effort had to be abandoned for lack of consensus[6]. The issue that could not be resolved is ethical and legal: when does an individual with documented brain-stem death lose basic human rights and no longer be considered a person.

A.3. Are the Current Criteria for BDD Reliable, Adequate and Comprehensive

On the internet multiple cases of wrongly diagnosed BSD[7] have been published but these are largely young individuals with traumatic brain injury. The current standard for brain-stem death determination are the American Academy of Neurology criteria of 2010, updated in

2023[8]. As of now, there are no documented cases with catastrophic brain injury of any type, with confirmed BSD by AAN criteria, who have recovered brain function. Jahi McMath's case is often quoted. She suffered hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy and BSD was confirmed 3 days later. Shewmon, an opponent of BDD, contends that her whole brain was in an ischemic penumbra when BDD was done and that she recovered to a minimally conscious state before her final death 4 years later[9]. Both of his contentions are contested. As of now, the AAN criteria seem adequate.

A.4. Is Surrogate Consent Required for BDD and the Apnoea Test

It has been stated that the apnea test is a clinical procedure and hence does not require consent from surrogates. But this procedure can by itself cause accretion to preexisting brain damage. In a marginal situation, it can even lead to a self-fulfilling prophecy. The Japanese organ donation law circumvents this controversy by including consent for BSD determination (including apnea testing) in the organ donor registration[10]. This is not a solution when the patient has not volunteered for organ donation and hence this issue needs careful attention. Some clarification will be available when the conjoined issues of withdrawal of life support for medical futility (including catastrophic brain injury) and declaration of death (currently DNC, but in the future, DCDD) for organ donation are clearly separated

All of these controversies point to the necessity of carefully drafted rules on BDD which include both organ donation as well as withdrawal of life support without organ donation.

B) ADDRESSING VARIATIONS IN PROTOCOLS

Clinical brain stem death protocols vary mainly in the prerequisites, examination requirements, apnea testing, and use of ancillary tests, and recent guidance has moved toward more standardized, conservative rules to reduce false-positive determinations. The 2020 World Brain Death Project (American Medical Association) consensus statement[1] and 2023 guidelines[2] (American Academy of Neurology, American Academy of Pediatrics, Child Neurology Society and Society of Critical Care Medicine) have many areas of overlap. Lewis et al compare the 2023 AAN/AAP/CNS/SCCM document to the previous versions of the AAN guidelines[3]. The following is an outline of the areas that are addressed.

B.1. Main Areas of Variation:

1. Exclusion of confounders: Different protocols vary in how strictly they require prerequisites before BDD testing (temperature, blood pressure, metabolic/pharmacologic).

2. Etiology, severity, neuroimaging of brain injury: Catastrophic irreversible brain injury must be confirmed by history and/or by neuroradiologic exam, not earlier than 24 hours in adults and 48 hours under the age of 2 years. The mechanism of injury must be identified unequivocally. Observation period should be prolonged if medical or surgical interventions are performed for salvage.

3. Requirements for examiners: Number of examiners, their qualifications and competence determination/certification and conflicts of interest all need to be addressed: this must balance availability of expertise and the need for quick decision making

4. Age of patient: Maximum consensus on >37 weeks gestational age as the lower limit for BDD.

5. Clinical and Ancillary testing: Any evidence of consciousness, preservation of any brain-stem reflex, preservation of any brain/brain-stem mediated motor movements or spontaneous breathing will preclude BDD testing. The expert consensus is that apnea testing does not require family consent since it is a clinical test. Ancillary testing is not required if neurologic exam and apnea test are unequivocal. The technologic frontiers for evaluation of consciousness are changing but these seem to apply to withdrawal decisions in non-apneic patients[4].

6. Special situations: Pregnancy is not a contraindication. Prior targeted temperature management, ECMO and isolated posterior fossa injury all need clarification.

C) CHALLENGES AND SOLUTIONS IN BSD CERTIFICATION AND SUBSEQUENT ORGAN DONATION IN INDIA

India's main organ donation challenges are low public awareness, consent barriers, weak hospital infrastructure, and a shortage of trained transplant staff. Cultural and religious misconceptions, delays in identifying brain-dead donors, and poor coordination for organ retrieval and transport also reduce donation rates.

The key barriers are:

1. Public awareness: Health awareness and understanding death and dying can be correlated with public health and advance care planning (ACP)[1]. Organ donor registration is a key part of ACP in younger individuals. In a recent review, it was noted that a majority of those surveyed had knowledge of organ donation. Nevertheless, the gap between knowledge and willingness was substantial. Various socio-cultural influencers include fear, lack of trust, religion, region and bodily issues[2]. The same have been noted by civil society organizations[3].

2. Family consent: Even when someone has registered, families often refuse consent.

3. Weak hospital systems. Many hospitals lack ICU capacity, transplant coordinators, and the infrastructure needed to identify, maintain, retrieve, and transport organs quickly.

4. Training gaps. Doctors, nurses, and coordinators are not uniformly trained in brain-death certification and donation workflows.

5. Logistics: Getting organs from donor to recipient fast enough is difficult, especially in crowded urban settings where timing is critical.

6. Regional and access inequality. Donation and transplant services are concentrated in a few regions, leaving much of the country underserved.

7. Illegal trade and trust issues. Organ trafficking and ethical concerns can discourage public trust in the system.

8. Legal issues: Lewis and Zirpe[4] discuss the medicolegal controversies that began in Kerala and are still ongoing with pending litigation in the Supreme Court. These add to the issues discussed above.

These barriers keep deceased donation rates far below need, while thousands of patients remain on waiting lists. The problem is not only medical; it is also social, legal, and organizational. Stronger public education, mandatory hospital training, better brain-death referral systems, more transplant coordinators, and clearer donor registry processes would all improve donation rates. Religious and community leaders can also help correct myths and build trust.

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

1. The whole-brain death v/s brain-stem death dilemma: Debate persists over whether brain-stem death is adequate for a legal declaration of death. Critics argue that without confirming neuroendocrine failure, somatic integration remains partially intact, leading to cases of prolonged bodily preservation that challenge public and religious perceptions of mortality.

2. Consent obstacles for apnea testing: Because the apnea test can occasionally worsen acute brain injuries or trigger instability, the lack of consensus on whether surrogate consent is mandatory remains a legal bottleneck.

3. Protocol heterogeneity: Global and institutional inconsistencies exist regarding prerequisite thresholds (e.g., metabolic or pharmacological confounders),

observation periods for catastrophic brain injuries, and the exact qualifications required for certifying examiners.

4. Fragile Indian hospital infrastructure: Many regional centers lack dedicated ICU capacity, centralized referral workflows, and transplant coordinators required to properly identify and maintain potential donors.

5. The "Knowledge-Willingness" chasm: Despite broad public awareness regarding organ donation, deep-rooted socio-cultural fears, bodily integrity concerns, and a lack of systemic trust severely restrict actual family consent rates.

6. Logistical and regional inequity: Deceased donation and transplant services remain concentrated in a few affluent urban centers, leaving underserved populations vulnerable and creating severe logistical obstacles when transporting fragile organs through congested cities.

7. Medicolegal and ethical vulnerabilities: Ongoing high-profile litigations and public anxieties regarding illegal organ trafficking undermine structural trust in the BDD process.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. Death is a sociolegal process: Modern medicine views death through the lens of irreversible brain failure. However, because it impacts inheritance, religious rites, and civic status, defining its exact boundary remains a strict responsibility of local legal jurisdictions.

2. AAN criteria remain grounded: Despite rare, highly contested internet accounts of young trauma patients allegedly recovering from brain-stem death, there are zero documented cases of a patient recovering brain function after a BDD confirmation that strictly adhered to the American Academy of Neurology (AAN) guidelines.

3. Standardization minimizes risk: Recent consensus guidelines- such as the 2020 World Brain Death Project and the 2023 updated AAN/AAP/CNS/SCCM guidelines—emphasize conservative rules, strict neuroimaging prerequisites, and the robust exclusion of confounding clinical variables to entirely eliminate false-positive declarations.

4. Ancillary testing is supplementary: Specialized technological evaluations for consciousness are evolving but are primarily applied to withdrawal-of-care decisions in non-apneic patients; they are not mandated if the bedside neurological exam and apnea test are definitive.

5. Decoupling is necessary: To solve bioethical and procedural logjams, jurisdictions must clearly bifurcate the rules governing the withdrawal of life support for medical futility from the declaration of death for subsequent organ procurement.

6. Systemic overhauls overcome barriers: Maximizing India's low deceased donation rates requires a multi-pronged solution: mandatory hospital personnel training, standardized referral systems, public education campaigns partnered with community leaders, and secure donor registries to tackle family refusal.

CONCLUSION

Variation often comes from local law, hospital policy, available expertise, and older national or regional guidance that has not been fully updated. A published review of U.S. hospital policies found substantial inconsistency in confounder exclusion, exam requirements, apnea testing, and ancillary testing, which supports the need for standardization[5]. In practice, the safest protocol is the one that is most conservative and most aligned with current national guidance, because brain death/death by neurologic criteria is a legal and clinical determination that should be made only after the prerequisites are met and the exam is unambiguous.

REFERENCES

1. Condic ML. Determination of Death: A Scientific Perspective on Biological Integration. J Med Philos. 2016 Jun;41(3):257-78

2. Ven. Pende Hawter: Death and Dying in the Tibetan Buddhist tradition. <https://www.buddhanet.net/deathtib/>, Accessed 8 March 2026

3. Irfan B, Padela A, Sirvent R. Accepting the Multiplicity of Definitions of Death. Am J Bioeth. 2025 Sep;25(9):22-25.

4. Sulmasy DP, DeCock CA, Tornatore CS, Roberts AH 2nd, Giordano J, Donovan GK. A Biophilosophical Approach to the Determination of Brain Death. Chest. 2024 Apr;165(4):959-966.

5. Sulmasy DP, DeCock CA. Rethinking Brain Death-Why "Dead Enough" Is Not Good Enough: The UDDA Revision Series. Neurology. 2023 Aug 15;101(7):320-325

6. Clinton AE. Defining Death Anew: Reexamining the Twentieth-Century Brain Death Debates and the Uniform Determination of Death Act. Hastings Cent Rep. 2025 Nov-Dec;55(6):29-37.

7. List of Brain Dead patients who have recovered: <https://kgov.com/brain-dead-patients-who-have-recovered>. Accessed March 8, 2026

8. Kirschen MP, Lewis A, Greer DM. The 2023 American Academy of Neurology, American Academy of Pediatrics, Child Neurology Society, and Society of Critical Care Medicine Pediatric and Adult Brain Death/Death by Neurologic Criteria Determination Consensus Guidelines: What the Critical Care Team Needs to Know. Crit Care Med. 2024 Mar 1;52(3):376-386

9. Machado C. Jahi McMath case: A comprehensive and updated narrative. World J Crit Care Med. 2025 Sep 9;14(3):107513

10. Morioka M. Reconsidering brain death: a lesson from Japan's fifteen years of experience. Hastings Cent Rep. 2001 Jul-Aug;31(4):41-6

11. Greer DM, Shemie SD, Lewis A et al. Determination of Brain Death/Death by Neurologic Criteria: The World Brain Death Project. JAMA. 2020 Sep 15;324(11):1078-1097.

12. Greer DM, Kirschen MP, Lewis A et al. Pediatric and Adult Brain Death/Death by Neurologic Criteria Consensus Guideline. Neurology. 2023 Dec 12;101(24):1112-1132.

13. Lewis A, Kirschen MP, Greer D. The 2023 AAN/AAP/CNS/SCCM Pediatric and Adult Brain Death/Death by Neurologic Criteria Consensus Practice Guideline: A Comparison With the 2010 and 2011 Guidelines. Neurol Clin Pract. 2023 Dec;13(6):e200189.

14. Young MJ, Edlow BL, Bodien YG. Covert consciousness. NeuroRehabilitation. 2024;54(1):23-42

15. Greer DM, Wang HH, Robinson JD, Varelas PN, Henderson GV, Wijdicks EF. Variability of Brain Death Policies in the United States. JAMA Neurol. 2016 Feb;73(2):213-8.

16. Meier C, Vilpert S, Wieczorek M, Borrat-Besson C, Jox RJ, Maurer J. End-of-life health literacy, knowledge and behaviours towards advance care planning among older adults: cross-sectional evidence from Switzerland. BMJ Public Health. 2024 Mar 19;2(1):e000600

17. Vincent BP, Randhawa G, Cook E. Barriers towards deceased organ donation among Indians living globally: an integrative systematic review using narrative synthesis. BMJ Open. 2022 May 27;12(5):e056094

18. Donate Life: https://www.donatelife.org.in/major-hurdles-in-organ-donation/ Accessed 4 July 2026

19. Lewis A, Zirpe K. Contextualizing India's Medicolegal Controversies Related to Brain Death/Death by Neurologic Criteria: Regulation, Religion, and Resource Allocation. Neurocrit Care. 2025 Aug;43(1):8-18

CHAPTER 14

QUALITY ASSURANCE, MONITORING, AND SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM

AUTHOR(s):

Dr. Swagata Tripathy, Dr. Srinivas Samavedam

Department and Affiliation

1. Vice President, Society of Neuro Critical Care. Prof & Incharge ICU, Department of Anaesthesia & Critical Care, AIIMS, Bhubaneshwar.
2. Immediate past president, Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine. Chief Intensivist, Ramdevrao Hospital, Hyderabad, Telangana.

INTRODUCTION

Brain-stem death declaration and deceased organ donation in India operate under the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA). The credibility of the programme depends on compliance, consistency, transparency, and accountability. This chapter outlines the framework for monitoring compliance, analyzing ICU performance, establishing surveillance systems, conducting audits, and implementing these measures across healthcare settings in India. The emphasis is on strengthening systems rather than assigning blame, while maintaining patient and family dignity and public trust.

A) MONITORING COMPLIANCE AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

Monitoring compliance and establishing a robust quality assurance framework are central to the systems for brain-stem death declaration and deceased organ donation. The purpose of this section is to define how institutions should ensure that these protocols are consistently followed, while remaining within legal and ethical bounds/parameters.

Variation in practice across ICUs undermines effectiveness and stakeholder trust. A structured monitoring system promoting uniform standards reduces such variability (Figure 1).

A.1. Objectives of Compliance Monitoring

The primary objectives of Compliance monitoring can be divided broadly into four domains, which are-

a. Adherence to Brain-stem Death Certification Protocols

Institutions must ensure that all certifications are conducted in accordance with approved national guidelines. Systems need to verify that required examinations, documentation, and timelines are followed without deviation.

b. Adherence to Legal Requirements

As Brain-stem death is a legal determination of death under the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), compliance monitoring would need to confirm that requirements such as constitution of the certifying panel, prescribed forms, and documentation —are uniformly fulfilled. Deviations, if any, must be recorded and reviewed.

c. Safeguarding Ethical Standards

To safeguard transplantation interests, it is imperative to keep the act of death determination independent. This is aided by ensuring separation between certifying

clinicians and transplant teams. Transparent, non-coercive, and appropriately documented family counselling is necessary.

d. Reduction of Practice Variability Across ICUs

Wide variation in documentation quality, timelines, and referral practices has been observed across institutions: monitoring systems need to standardize processes through defined metrics and periodic review.

Compliance monitoring should be corrective and preventive, with emphasis on system strengthening.

S. No.	Framework Component	Key Requirements and Action Items
I	**Core Domains of Compliance**	
1.	**Certification Protocols**	• Follow approved national clinical guidelines • Perform all required clinical examinations • Adhere to correct timelines and intervals • Ensure 100% complete clinical documentation
2.	**Legal Requirements**	• Ensure proper constitution of the certifying panel • Use prescribed statutory forms only • Conduct rigorous documentation audits • Formally record and report any deviations
3.	**Ethical Standards**	• Maintain absolute independence of certifying doctors • Enforce strict separation from the transplant team • Provide transparent and non-coercive family counselling • Safeguard the dignity of the deceased and the family
II	**Operational Processes**	
1.	**Reduction of Practice Variability**	• Standardize documentation across all ICUs • Establish uniform timelines and panel practices • Utilize defined monitoring indicators (KPIs) • Conduct periodic institutional reviews and feedback
III	**Strategic Outcomes**	
1.	**System Goals**	• System Strengthening: Improved infrastructure and expertise • Public Confidence: Enhanced trust through transparency

A.2. Components of a Quality Assurance Framework

A quality assurance framework should address structural, process, and outcome domains.

a. Structural Quality

Structural quality refers to the capacity of the health care set-up to carry out brain-stem death certification and organ donation processes safely and consistently.

Key elements include:

1. Availability of trained and eligible certifying physicians
2. Access to required ICU infrastructure and monitoring equipment
3. Standardized documentation systems and prescribed statutory forms
4. Availability of a trained transplant coordinator

Institutions should periodically review whether these structural requirements are consistently met, and formally record any deficiencies in staffing or infrastructure.

b. Process Quality

Process quality examines whether required steps are followed in real time.

Monitoring should assess:

1. Adherence to approved certification protocols
2. Correct timing and repetition of examinations as mandated
3. Clear documentation of preconditions and exclusion of confounders
4. Accurate recording of date and time of certification
5. Proper completion and signing of statutory forms

Regular internal audits are carried out to review cases to assess cases, and deficiencies when detected lead to triggering corrective measures.

c. Outcome Quality

Outcome measures provide insight into system performance.

Relevant indicators may include:

1. Number of patients certified as brain-stem dead
2. Referral rates to the transplant coordinator
3. Conversion rates to actual organ donation
4. Maintenance failure rates prior to organ retrieval
5. Family satisfaction or grievance indicators

6. Outcome data should be interpreted cautiously and in context.

A.3. Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs)

Every hospital involved in brain-stem death certification should maintain written Standard Operating Procedures. A core set would include

1. Identification of patients with catastrophic brain injury
2. Clear escalation pathways
3. Constitution of the certifying panel
4. Documentation and record-keeping requirements
5. Communication and referral to the transplant coordinator

SOPs should be accessible within the ICU and periodically reviewed. Changes in national or state-level guidance must be incorporated without delay.

An annual review of SOPs, with revisions documented and approved by the hospital's transplant or ethics committee.

A.4. Training, Credentialing, and Revalidation

a. Minimum Competencies

Certifying physicians need to match eligibility criteria and have knowledge of the national guidelines. An updated list of eligible doctors must be maintained at the institute level.

b. Refresher Training

Periodic and mandatory refresher sessions (case discussions, audit reviews, and updates in regulatory requirements) should be conducted to reinforce protocol adherence and documentation standards.

Low volume centres may benefit from simulation-based exercises and structured case reviews to reduce observer variability.

c. Documentation of Competency Maintenance

Hospitals should maintain records of training attendance and competency updates for all eligible certifying physicians. Credentialing should not be assumed to be permanent without periodic review.

A.5 Institutional Oversight Mechanisms

Oversight mechanisms provide accountability and continuity**(Figure 2)**.

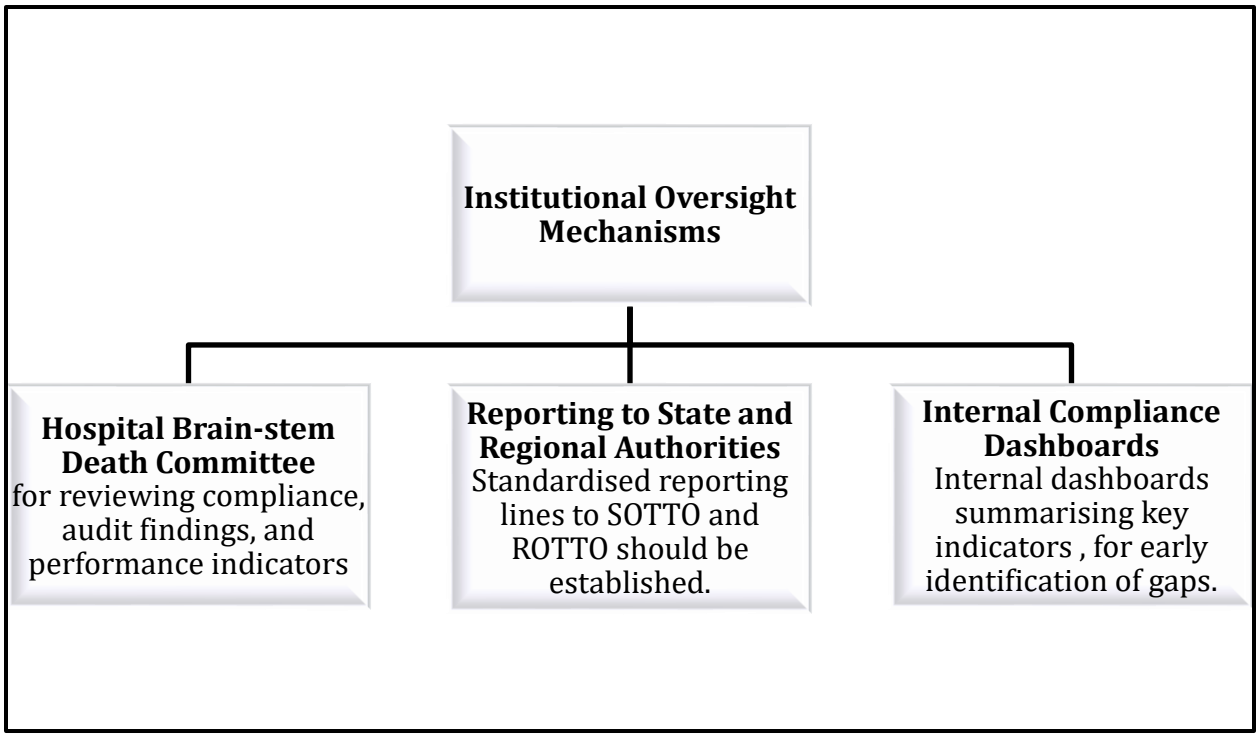


Figure2: *Institutional Oversight Mechanisms*

B) ICU PERFORMANCE ANALYSIS AND QUALITY MONITORING

B.1. Rationale for ICU-Level Performance Monitoring

A substantial proportion of in-hospital deaths occur in the ICU. Patients requiring advanced organ support or with potential for salvage invariably pass through critical care during their illness trajectory. ICUs therefore function as gatekeepers of end-of-life care and are the principal sites for brain-stem death declaration.

Brain-stem death declaration may or may not culminate in organ donation. However, the process has intrinsic clinical and ethical value. It ensures lawful determination of death under THOTA [2], enables timely withdrawal of futile organ support, and promotes dignity in death for the patient and family. In a healthcare system where ICU bed availability remains constrained, appropriate and timely certification also permits rational allocation of scarce critical care resources.

Under-recognition of brain-stem death, delays in initiating certification, incomplete documentation, and failure to follow processes to logical closure contribute to variability

across ICUs. Structured performance monitoring is therefore a quality-of-care requirement within critical care practice, not merely a transplant-driven activity. International consensus statements, including the World Brain Death Project [4], emphasise the importance of uniform processes and documentation standards to reduce variability.

B.2. Key Performance Indicators (KPIs)

a. Key Performance Indicators (KPIs)

Routine KPIs for Best ICU practices are a prerequisite in any ICU participating in BSD declaration.

Beyond this, focused comprehensive performance monitoring should include four domains: identification, certification, donation, and quality metrics.

b. Identification Metrics

Identification metrics assess whether patients at risk of progressing to brain-stem death are systematically recognized.

These include mechanically ventilated patients with catastrophic brain injury—neurosurgical, traumatic, neurological, or post-cardiac arrest hypoxic injury. Monitoring should assess:

1. Proportion of eligible patients undergoing structured neurological reassessment, including sedation interruption where clinically appropriate
2. Number of potential brain-stem death cases per ICU (e.g., GCS 3 off sedation)
3. Time from documented clinical suspicion to initiation of formal testing: Timeliness is critical. Delays in recognition often reflect system-level gaps rather than clinical uncertainty. In centres where formalized processes are evolving, structured third-party review rounds may assist in improving early identification.

c. Certification Metrics

Once a certification process is initiated, it must be followed to logical completion—whether completed, abandoned, or aborted.

Certification monitoring should include:

1. Completion rates of initiated certification processes
2. Documentation completeness
3. Protocol deviations

4. Periodic audit of these indicators supports Plan–Do–Study–Act (PDSA) quality improvement cycles. Uniform adherence to defined standards aligns with international recommendations for consistency in death determination [4,5].

d. Donation Metric

Donation metrics apply only after formal Brain-Stem Death declaration.

The Consent Approach Rate is defined as the proportion of certified Brain-Stem Death cases in which families are formally approached for organ donation by a trained counsellor.

Additional metrics include:

1. Family consent rate among those approached
2. Conversion rate from certified brain-stem death to actual organ donation
3. These metrics must be interpreted within contextual realities, including case mix, infrastructure, and local socio-cultural factors. WHO guidance [1] emphasizes that donation performance must not compromise ethical standards or voluntariness.

e. Quality Metrics

Quality metrics cut across identification, certification, and donation processes. These include:

1. Documentation errors
2. Delays beyond defined protocol thresholds
3. Maintenance failures prior to organ retrieval
4. Capturing these indicators enables continuous quality improvement (CQI) rather than episodic correction.

f. Feedback Loops and Quality Improvement

Regular ICU-level review meetings should examine:

1. Missed opportunities for identification
2. Facilitators and barriers affecting KPIs
3. Root cause analysis of incomplete or delayed certification

Structured review for localized corrective strategies and time-bound action plans, followed by re-evaluation, supports improvement in quality, and an iterative approach reflects established quality improvement principles in critical care practice.

g. Trend Analysis and Benchmarking

Sustained improvement requires longitudinal data. Selected KPIs should be recorded consistently and reviewed periodically with relevant stakeholders.

Trend analysis should allow:

1. Year-on-year performance assessment within individual ICUs
2. Comparison across ICUs within large hospitals or defined regions

Benchmarking exercises must be risk-adjusted and interpreted sensitively. Raw comparisons without contextual adjustment may create misleading conclusions.

h. Ethical Safeguards

Performance monitoring must not create coercive incentives. Numerical targets for certification or donation risk distorting clinical judgment and family counselling practices.

Benchmarking should therefore be framed as a tool for system strengthening, not competition. The primacy of patient dignity and family-centred care must remain explicit. International frameworks consistently emphasize that transparency and quality improvement must coexist with voluntariness and professional independence [1,4].

Performance analysis in ICU settings is thus a governance instrument—designed to reduce variability, improve documentation, strengthen legal compliance, and uphold ethical standards.

C) BRAIN-STEM DEATH MONITORING AND SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM

C.1. Need for a National Surveillance System

An institutional, state, and national level surveillance mechanism is essential for strengthening the integrity of brain-stem death declaration and deceased donation in India. At present, variability exists in reporting suspected versus certified brain-stem death across regions and institutions. Without systematic data capture, it is difficult to distinguish between true epidemiological differences and process deficiencies.

A structured surveillance framework should generate actionable data on:

1. Number of patients with suspected brain-stem death
2. Number formally evaluated
3. Number certified
4. Number proceeding to donation

International guidance, including the WHO Guiding Principles on transplantation [1], emphasizes transparency and traceability as core elements of ethical donation systems. The World Brain Death Project [4] similarly highlights the need for uniform reporting structures to reduce inconsistencies in practice.

At the hospital level, real-time reporting of suspected and certified cases should be standard. At the state level, aggregation and validation through SOTTO structures would allow identification of regional variability. At the national level, NOTTO should undertake periodic analysis, publish consolidated reports, and provide policy feedback. Existing NOTTO annual reports [3] provide a foundation; however, surveillance specific to brain-stem death processes requires greater granularity and consistency.

A multi-tiered system ensures that data are not merely collected, but reviewed and translated into corrective strategies.

C.2. Data Elements

A core minimum dataset should be uniformly captured across institutions. This should include:

1. Demographic details (age, sex, region)
2. Primary cause of brain injury
3. Dates and timelines of clinical evaluation
4. Certification status
5. Donation outcome, where applicable

The dataset should remain focused and practical. Excessive data requirements may compromise completeness. Experience from established systems such as the UK and Australia demonstrates that surveillance improves when data fields are clearly defined and standardized [6,7].

Uniform definitions are critical. Inconsistent terminology—particularly regarding "suspected," "eligible," and "certified" brain-stem death—can distort national estimates and policy planning.

C.3. Data Governance, Confidentiality and Transparency

Data governance must balance transparency with confidentiality. NOTTO maintains defined policies regarding data ownership, access control, de-identification, and legal protections [2,3]. Surveillance mechanisms must ensure that institutional reporting does not expose individual clinicians to undue risk when acting in good faith within statutory frameworks. International consensus emphasizes that donation systems thrive when reporting is transparent but non-punitive [1,4]. Transparent publication of aggregate data on one hand

helps to strengthen public confidence. Careful governance on the other hand, safeguards professional integrity. Surveillance, when implemented correctly, becomes a mechanism for system maturation rather than regulatory intimidation.

D) BRAIN-STEM DEATH AUDIT

Audit of brain-stem death (BSD) declaration is a critical component of quality assurance. Surveillance systems generate aggregate data and KPIs measure performance, while audit examines individual cases and processes in greater detail. The purpose of audit is the identification of system-level gaps and reinforcement of required standards. International experience in organ donation governance consistently demonstrates that structured audit improves consistency and public confidence [1,4].

D.1. Purpose and Scope of Audit

The objectives of BSD audit are to:

1. Verify adherence to statutory requirements under THOTA [2]
2. Assess compliance with institutional protocols
3. Identify delays, documentation gaps, and missed identification opportunities
4. Strengthen ethical safeguards in certification and counselling

Audit should encompass all stages of the process — identification, certification, referral, and, where applicable, donation outcome. Importantly, audit must also include cases where certification was not initiated despite clinical indicators suggestive of possible brain-stem death.

D.2. Types of Audits

A comprehensive BSD audit framework may include:

a. Prospective Audit

Real-time or near real-time review of cases during or immediately after certification. This allows early identification of documentation errors and procedural deviations.

b. Retrospective Audit

Periodic structured review (quarterly or biannual) of all deaths in the ICU with catastrophic brain injury. This helps identify missed opportunities and under-recognition patterns.

c. Triggered Audit

Case-specific review triggered by:

1. Family complaints
2. Documentation inconsistencies
3. Significant protocol deviation
4. Unusual delays in certification

Triggered audits should follow predefined institutional processes to ensure objectivity.

D.3. Audit Methodology

Audit processes should be standardized and documented.

Key elements include:

1. Defined audit criteria based on national, state and institutional guidelines
2. Structured audit forms or checklists
3. Multidisciplinary audit teams
4. Clear documentation of findings and recommendations

Audit teams should examine:

1. Timeliness of identification and testing
2. Panel constitution and documentation completeness
3. Compliance with prescribed forms
4. Time interval adherence
5. Documentation of family counselling
6. Post-certification management

Uniform definitions and documentation standards are essential to reduce subjectivity in audit interpretation [4,6].

D.4 Audit Outcomes and Corrective Actions

Audit findings should translate into corrective and preventive (non-punitive) action.

Possible outcomes include:

1. Revision of institutional SOPs

2. Targeted training sessions
3. Clarification of documentation processes
4. Reinforcement of role separation between certifying and transplant teams

Repeated audit findings in similar domains may indicate systemic deficiencies requiring administrative intervention.

Audit outcomes should be formally recorded and reviewed at the institutional Brain-stem Death Committee level. Aggregated audit summaries may be shared with state authorities where appropriate.

D.5. Learning-Oriented Audit Culture

WHO guidance and international consensus statements emphasize that quality improvement in organ donation systems depends on transparency, independence, and protection of clinicians acting in good faith [1,4].

A mature audit system:

1. Encourages open discussion of deviations
2. Distinguishes individual error from system failure
3. Protects ethical independence in death determination
4. Reinforces patient dignity and family-centred care

Audit, when implemented consistently, strengthens institutional credibility and safeguards the legitimacy of the brain-stem death declaration process.

E) IMPLEMENTATION CONSIDERATIONS FOR INDIA

E.1. Resource Variability Across ICUs

The variability of resources across ICUs in India directly determines the capacity, timeliness, and consistency of brain-stem death declaration. Tertiary academic centres in metropolitan regions function under markedly different structural conditions compared to district hospitals or smaller private ICUs. Differences in staffing patterns, availability of trained certifying physicians, documentation systems, and transplant coordination support influence both the identification of potential donors and the completion of certification processes.

As national expectations for improved donor identification increase, these structural disparities must be acknowledged and progressively addressed. International experience,

including guidance from the WHO on organ donation systems, emphasizes that system performance is closely linked to institutional infrastructure rather than clinical intent alone. Strengthening ICU documentation systems, standardizing certification workflows, and ensuring minimum structural capacity should therefore be considered foundational to implementation.

E.2. Public v/s Private Sector Differences

Variability extends beyond infrastructure to organizational culture and incentive structures. Public and private ICUs differ in staffing models, administrative priorities, remuneration linkages, and accountability mechanisms. In some settings, heavy patient loads and limited personnel constrain time for detailed documentation and counselling. In others, medico-legal concerns may influence willingness to initiate brain-stem death evaluation. Understanding these determinants is essential. Programme design must leverage favourable practices in both sectors while addressing systemic disincentives. Indian registry data from NOTTO indicate uneven donation rates across states and sectors, reinforcing the need for context-sensitive implementation rather than uniform directives.

E.3. Training Capacity and Legal Literacy Constraints

Limited exposure to brain-stem death certification during postgraduate training remains a barrier in many institutions. Among ICU physicians and nurses, variability in legal literacy under THOTA and discomfort with documentation requirements can delay or deter certification. International consensus statements, including those published in NEJM and JAMA on death determination standards, consistently emphasize structured training and periodic revalidation as core safeguards. National programmes must therefore prioritize structured training modules, simulation-based learning, and mandatory refresher courses linked to credentialing.

E.4. Phased Implementation Strategies

Given the diversity across Indian ICUs, a structured, multidimensional phased implementation is advisable. Initial phases may focus on high-volume centres with existing transplant infrastructure, followed by expansion to regional and district-level institutions with defined minimum standards.

Such phased implementation allows consolidation of training capacity, strengthening of surveillance systems, and iterative refinement through audit feedback. Sustainable growth of the programme will depend not only on regulation, but on gradual system maturation across varying institutional contexts.

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

1. Structural Disparities & Resource Variability: Significant gaps in infrastructure, available monitoring equipment, and trained personnel exist across Indian ICUs. High-volume metropolitan tertiary centers contrast sharply with resource-constrained district hospitals and smaller private facilities.

2. Sectoral & Operational Differences: Public and private sector ICUs operate under differing administrative priorities, staffing models, and heavy workloads, which constrain time for documentation and family counseling. Additionally, medico-legal concerns often create hesitation among clinicians to initiate Brain-Stem Death evaluations.

3. Practice & Documentation Variability: Inconsistent timelines, incomplete clinical documentation, and varied referral practices across institutions compromise system credibility and public trust.

4. Knowledge Gaps & Legal Literacy: Limited exposure to Brain-Stem Death certification during postgraduate training leads to low legal literacy regarding THOTA regulations and procedural discomfort among ICU physicians and nursing staff.

5. Inconsistent Reporting & Terminology: A lack of uniform definitions (e.g., distinguishing between "suspected," "eligible," and "certified" cases) across regional and state levels skews national data and hinders accurate policy planning.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. Comprehensive Quality Assurance Framework: Institutions must establish robust QA frameworks covering structural capacity (trained physicians, equipment, transplant coordinators), process adherence (real-time protocol execution, statutory form completion), and outcome tracking.

2. Multi-Domain Performance Monitoring: Standardized Key Performance Indicators (KPIs) across four critical domains—identification, certification, donation, and quality metrics—are required to reduce practice variability and guide Plan–Do–Study–Act (PDSA) quality improvement cycles.

3. Tiered National Surveillance: Implementing structured reporting at hospital, SOTTO (State), ROTTO (Regional) and NOTTO (national) levels ensure standardized minimum datasets, data transparency, and actionable policy feedback while protecting patient confidentiality.

4. Learning-Oriented Audit Culture: A non-punitive, systematic audit culture (encompassing prospective, retrospective, and triggered audits) is essential to identify system-level gaps, refine Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs), and improve training rather than assign individual blame.

5. Phased Implementation & Continuous Training: Rollout should follow a phased approach, prioritizing high-volume centers before expanding to regional ICUs. This must be supported by mandatory simulation-based training, periodic revalidation, and clear SOPs to build sustainable institutional capacity.

CONCLUSION

Establishing a rigorous quality assurance, monitoring, and audit framework is vital in maintaining the integrity, legal compliance, and public trust of Brain-Stem Death declaration and deceased organ donation programme in India. Operating under the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), a standardized system bridges structural disparities between public and private ICUs while eliminating practice variability. By integrating systematic KPI tracking, tiered surveillance under SOTTO, ROTTO, and NOTTO, and a non-punitive, learning-oriented audit culture, health systems can systematically address documentation errors and operational delays. Ultimately, a phased implementation strategy supported by continuous training ensures the rational allocation of critical care resources, protects clinical independence, and upholds patient dignity and ethical standards.

REFERENCES

1. World Health Organization. WHO guiding principles on human cell, tissue and organ transplantation. Transplantation. 2010;90(3):229–233.

2. Government of India. The Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act, 1994 (as amended in 2011) and Rules, 2014. New Delhi: Ministry of Health and Family Welfare; 2014.

3. National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO). Annual Report 2022–2023. New Delhi: Directorate General of Health Services, Ministry of Health and Family Welfare; 2023.

4. Greer DM, Shemie SD, Lewis A, Torrance S, Varelas P, Goldenberg FD, et al. Determination of brain death/death by neurologic criteria: The World Brain Death Project. JAMA. 2020;324(11):1078–1097.

5. Bernat JL. Controversies in the determination of death. N Engl J Med. 2013;369(11):1083–1085.

6. Academy of Medical Royal Colleges. A code of practice for the diagnosis and confirmation of death. London: Academy of Medical Royal Colleges; 2008 (updated 2010).

7. Australian and New Zealand Intensive Care Society (ANZICS). The ANZICS statement on death and organ donation. Melbourne: ANZICS; 2013 (updated versions available).

F) APPENDICES: ICU MONITORING TOOLS FOR BRAIN-STEM DEATH DECLARATION PROGRAMMES

These templates are intended to operationalize the monitoring, surveillance, and audit framework described in the chapter. They are deliberately simple and editable so that ICUs can adapt them to their own documentation systems or convert them into electronic registries if required.

Appendix A: Potential Brain-stem Death Identification Log

Date	Hospital ID	Age/Sex	Primary Diagnosis	GCS (off sedation)	Ventilated (Y/N)	Time suspicion documented	Testing initiated (time/date)

Appendix B: Brain-stem Death Certification Tracking Form

Patient ID	Date certification initiated	Panel constituted (Y/N)	First exam completed (time)	Second exam completed (time)	Certification completed / abandoned	Protocol deviations (if any)

Appendix C: Donation Metrics Log

Patient ID	Brain-stem death certified (Y/N)	Family approached (Y/N)	Consent obtained (Y/N)	Organs retrieved	Reason if donation did not occur

Appendix D: Quality and Audit Monitoring Form

Patient ID	Documentation complete (Y/N)	Delay beyond protocol (Y/N)	Maintenance failure (Y/N)	Audit triggered (Y/N)	Comments / corrective action

Appendix E: ICU Brain-stem Death Monthly KPI Dashboard

Month	Potential cases identified	Brain-stem death certifications completed	Families approached for donation	Actual donors	Maintenance failures

Appendix F: Brain-stem Death Audit Checklist

Audit Item	Compliant (Y/N)	Partially compliant	Non-compliant	Comments / Action required
Eligibility criteria for testing documented				
Confounders excluded and documented				
Certifying panel constituted as per THOTA				
Time interval between examinations appropriate				
Statutory forms correctly completed				
Family counselling documented				
Referral to transplant coordinator documented				
Post-certification management appropriate				

CHAPTER 15

STRATEGIES TO INCREASE BSD IDENTIFICATION AND CERTIFICATION SO AS TO AUGMENT DECEASED ORGAN DONATION IN THE COUNTRY

A) CURRENT STATUS OF ORGAN DONATION FROM BRAIN-DEAD DONORS

B) ROLE OF MEDICAL PROFESSIONALS

C) ACKNOWLEDGING BRAIN -DEATH

D) ROLE OF NECROPSY/AUTOPSY

E) RELIGIOUS PRACTICES AS A DETERRENT TO ORGAN DONATION

F) POLITICAL LEADERSHIP AND ORGAN DONATION

G) ROLE OF GRIEF COUNSELLORS AND TRANSPLANT COORDINATORS

H) MANDATORY DECLARATION OF BRAIN-DEATH

I) AUDITING THE INTENSIVE TREATMENT UNITS

J) ENFORCING THE BAN ON UNRELATED DONATION FOR PECUNIARY BENEFITS

K) ENSURING THE AVAILABILITY OF TRAINED MANPOWER

L) ENGAGING THE SOCIAL MEDIA

AUTHOR(s):

Dr Easwer H V, Dr Deepak Gupta

Department and Affiliation

1. Professor, Department of Neurosurgery, Sree Chitra Thirunal Institute for Medical Sciences and Technology, Thiruvananthapuram, Kerala.
2. Professor and Consultant Neurosurgeon, Department of Neurosurgery, AIIMS & associated JPN Apex Trauma Centre, New Delhi.

INTRODUCTION

Although India's Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act, 1994 (modified in 2011) legally recognizes brain-death as death, enabling organ donation to help multiple individuals, the donation rate is abysmal (below one per million), far behind leaders like Spain. Reliance on potentially exploitative unrelated live donations persists. Paradoxically, medical professionals are significant barriers due to knowledge gaps and hesitation in acknowledging brain-death and communicating effectively with families.

To improve donation rates, the chapter emphasizes the urgent need for medical education on brain-death, transparent family communication to prevent prolonged costs, streamlined medico-legal procedures (e.g., virtopsy for faster autopsy), engagement with religious leaders to reframe donation as humanitarian, and political leadership by example. Necessary systemic reforms include mandatory brain-death declaration, ICU audits, strict enforcement against commercial donation, more trained transplant teams, and engaging social media to promote organ donation.

Brain-death aka Brain-Stem Death has been considered as death according to the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act enacted by the parliament of India in 1994 and modified in 2011 [1,2]. This Act defines brainstem failure and the ways to certify the same where by a person becomes deceased and thereby capable of being an organ donor [2,13]. As the relatives of such a person declared brain dead consents to the organ donation from the latter, he or she becomes capable of helping at least six to eight individuals suffering from end-stage failure of organs waiting for relief in the form of an organ transplant [11].

A) CURRENT STATUS OF ORGAN DONATION FROM BRAIN-DEAD DONORS

According to the National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO) current rate of organ donation from brain- dead donors in India remains an abysmal less than one per million of our population while in Spain, the leader in this altruistic arena, the score has reached 48 per million population [1]. It is also worth mentioning here that the efforts of the NOTTO have been to increase this number to a more respectable figure, so as to decrease the dependence on donations from live donors.

India leads the world in the number of live donations which includes organs from unrelated donors. The latter is open to criticism especially about the motive of such donors who are often accused of pecuniary consideration rather than any altruistic intent [12].

Some states like Tamil Nadu, Telangana, Karnataka and Maharashtra are leading this drive to convert the opportunities in brain -death into significant number of organ donations [11,12].

B) ROLE OF MEDICAL PROFESSIONALS

If you look closely at organ donation following brain-death aka Brain-Stem Death, you will find the greatest resistance comes from close quarters- Doctors and allied personnel [7,8]. When a health care professional grapples with the event of a brain-death at close quarters, the person more often than not does not volunteer for organ donation. Despite seeing the suffering of all who come under their care doctors and nursing personnel seldom volunteer to donate their organs as well as that of their dear and near ones as they confront the point of no-return [7].

This inertia stems from the fact that many of our medical practitioners and nursing personnel are unaware about events like brainstem failure and subsequent role of a person as a 'life-giver "to many. As caretakers of the sick and the infirm, a change in their perception on this issue which will happen by filling the knowledge gaps on this subject [5,7].

Hence, the need to include death by brainstem failure also as part of the medical curriculum of our country and a constant scientific engagement of our doctors and nurses with the events leading to brain-death and subsequent organ donation. The campaign to raise the numbers of brain-dead as sources of organs to the less privileged sick brethren should begin with medical students, doctors, nurses and allied staff of our society.

C) ACKNOWLEDGING BRAIN -DEATH

It is often seen that the Intensivists, Neurologists and Neurosurgeons seldom acknowledge brain-death. It is also noticed that they often communicate to the relatives using words as "critical" instead of "brain-dead "failing to take the bull by its horns" and keeping hopes alive in the minds of the relatives of someone who has failed to display any features of brainstem activity [5,6]. This leads to piling bills of Intensive Care and financially crippling the patient's family rather helping anyone. The practice of using the parlance of Brain -death determined by scientific means of clinical and other tests (as specified in Form 10 of THOA act) helps to confirm the reality and move forward [3-6].

D) ROLE OF NECROPSY/AUTOPSY

It is important that the physical remains of a loved ones reach the hands of their families who need to register the loss, grieve and run themselves through the adaptive processes to come to terms death through its rituals. In a death where medico-legal steps require the important step of autopsy or post-mortem examination, there is further extension of the time that the relatives can take possession of the mortal remains [6]. This leads to a lot of dis-enchantment as the relatives. Hence, it would help to reduce this time if the autopsy is performed along

with the harvesting of organs when forensic specialists too are available (mandatory) as the organs are being procured from the Operating Rooms.

To maintain the dignity of the donor and streamline the process, post-mortem examinations should ideally be conducted at the retrieval hospital. Rather than transferring the deceased, forensic medicine experts should be deployed to the facility where the organ retrieval occurred. It is imperative that NOTTO (National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization) issues standardized guidelines to ensure the nationwide availability of forensic experts at all designated retrieval centers.

Furthermore, the adoption of whole-body CT (Virtopsy) can significantly expedite this process. By utilizing non-invasive imaging, clinicians can avoid the need for a second surgical opening of the skull or body post-retrieval, thereby reducing the time required to return the deceased to their grieving family. [5]

E) RELIGIOUS PRACTICES AS A DETERRENT TO ORGAN DONATION

In a country where religion and the practices associated with it influence most events of the life of our citizenry, there is significant resistance to organ donation following death due to religious beliefs. There are indeed sections of our society which hesitate for organ donation due to their religious beliefs.

The time taken for determining brain-death through two separate neurological examinations, organ harvesting from the brain-dead and the subsequent autopsy measures needed when there is a head injury due to an alleged traumatic event related often to a road traffic accident dissuade many from donating the organs of their near and dear ones as the pressure to conduct funeral rites mounts following death.

These beliefs need not be treated as closed doors as many break taboos and come forward to donate the organs of their loved ones. However, we need to impart the knowledge of brainstem failure as a cause of death and organ donation by working on key religious personalities and change their perception about brain-death. It is also important to highlight the practices from countries like Saudi Arabia and UAE where a robust programme of harvesting organs from brain-dead has been instituted with the requisite religious approvals [9,10].

In practice, we see a general willingness among all communities to accept life-saving organs regardless of the donor's faith. However, we still encounter significant hesitation when it comes to the act of donation itself, frequently attributed to religious beliefs. It is crucial to

clarify that the core tenets of all major religions actually support organ donation as a profound act of humanity that aligns with the fundamental priority of saving a life. [14]

F) POLITICAL LEADERSHIP AND ORGAN DONATION

It is interesting to note that no member of the political leadership of our country has been a high-profile organ donor despite dying as inmates of hospitals. If organ donation from the dead has to improve in our country, it is important that personalities who straddle the political landscape of our society set examples by donating their organs as well as that of their near and dear ones [12]. Mere pledges to commit to organ donation seldom works to make them organ donors subsequent to their deaths. Hence, the need to nudge these high-profile personalities to come forward and indulge in altruism when the end comes to themselves and the people around them.

G) ROLE OF GRIEF COUNSELLORS AND TRANSPLANT COORDINATORS

Grief counselors and transplant coordinators fill in when the treating physician fear to tread. As the "Track Two" communicators (a word borrowed from the world of diplomacy) in the vicinity of the Intensive Treatment Units, these men and women are the dedicated soldiers who holds the hands of patient's relatives and friends of the brain-dead. As brain-death happens they help to explain the impact of this event and what is needed next from them [11]. Many a time the family of the deceased person is stunned by the apocalyptic event in their lives and too paralyzed to take any decision about their loved ones. The options available to the family as their member dies in the Intensive care, need to be patiently explained after engaging them. This can lead to more organ donation after brain-death is declared rather than being driven only by rituals that follow i.e. cremation and burying which helps none [12]. The mortal remains instead of being consumed by fire or decay can be of use to the less fortunate among the humans around us.

H) MANDATORY DECLARATION OF BRAIN-DEATH

In some states of India like Kerala, it is mandatory to declare and count brain-death as it happens. This would mean that the process of brain-death can be identified and discussed by the treating physician citing this law of the land. Also, this would mean that more people would come forward to donate the organs of the brain dead as it happens.

I) AUDITING THE INTENSIVE TREATMENT UNITS

A review of the events in an Intensive Care, in the context of the declaration of brain-death would entail the institution of good clinical practices in our Critical Care Units. This would only mean the application of scientific rigour in our clinical practices which would bolster the credibility of patient care in our medical institutions.

While NOTTO has established a framework requiring hospitals to submit monthly data, nationwide compliance remains suboptimal. To address this, the accreditation and quality

rating of Intensive Care Units (ICUs) should be directly contingent upon periodic audits of their brain-death declaration practices. Furthermore, it is essential to enforce mandatory, timely brain-death certification in accordance with national legislation. Integrating these audits into standard hospital performance metrics will ensure that the legal and ethical obligations of organ procurement are consistently met across all medical centers.

J) ENFORCING THE BAN ON UNRELATED DONATION FOR PECUNIARY BENEFITS

India's live transplant programme is often seen as a situation where the rich procure the organs they need from the financially poor exploiting the latter's poverty. Many a lie are uttered for facilitating the donation from unrelated donors through committees that screen the donors. With monetary compensation for the donor, this remains a point that shames the medical community for the lack of ethical practices.

K) ENSURING THE AVAILABILITY OF TRAINED MANPOWER

There is indeed a deficit in the trained man power available for carrying out organ transplant from deceased donors in India. Transplantation surgeries are available in large urban centres with large swathes of India's poor remain far from accessing such procedures [11,13]. The training of medical man power would not only make such surgeries more common and therefore available to the common man in need of the same. It is imperative that as non-communicable diseases dominate our disease spectrum and quality of life progresses with improving social and economic status in our country, the governments, both local and central would be forced to initiate regional centres of excellence for organ transplantation. The pressure from such centres would also drive the transplant programmes from deceased donors too.

L) ENGAGING THE SOCIAL MEDIA

The current generation of Homo sapiens that inhabit the earth are more glued and responsive to clues from the social media. It is important that in order to claim a modicum of success in post brain-death organ transplantation, we need to constantly engage the society through the success stories of philanthropy emphasizing the altruistic act of organ donation from brain dead relatives [13]. Finally, by helping a patient get better by reclaiming his/her health, one helps their family and therefore the community at large.

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

1. Professional Inertia & Ambiguity: Medical and nursing professionals often hesitate to acknowledge brain-death, using vague terminology like "critical". This creates false hope, prolongs futile care, and incurs severe financial burdens on families instead of initiating timely discussions.

2. Knowledge & Training Gaps: A fundamental lack of training on brainstem failure within standard medical and nursing curricula leads to low legal literacy and procedural discomfort regarding certification.

3. Exploitative Reliance on Live Donors: India's deceased organ donation rate remains abysmal (<1 per million population). This forces an over-reliance on live, unrelated donations, which frequently raises severe ethical and commercial exploitation concerns.

4. Sociocultural & Religious Hesitancy: Misconceptions and fear surrounding religious taboos continue to discourage families from consenting to donation. Furthermore, the lack of visible advocacy or public commitment from high-profile political leaders hampers broader societal normalization.

5. Administrative & Medico-Legal Delays: Lengthy, traditional post-mortem processes and rigid autopsy requirements cause significant delays in returning mortal remains to grieving families, discouraging potential donors.

6. Systemic Infrastructure & Workforce Deficits: Severe shortages of trained transplant teams, grief counselors, transplant coordinators, and specialized retrieval centers outside major urban hubs limit widespread access. Additionally, sub-optimal compliance with mandatory brain-death declarations and ICU audits severely hinders systemic identification.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. Brain-death (Brain-Stem Death) is legally recognized as death in India; proper certification enables ethical deceased organ donation.

2. India's deceased organ donation rate remains extremely low (<1 per million) compared to global leaders, highlighting a major gap between potential and actual donation.

3. Over-reliance on live and unrelated donors raises ethical concerns, including exploitation and commercial motives; strengthening deceased donation can reduce these issues.

4. Medical professionals play a pivotal role, yet knowledge gaps, hesitation in acknowledging brain-death, and poor communication with families remain significant barriers.

5. Education and curriculum integration on brain-death and organ donation for medical students, doctors, and nurses are essential to change attitudes and improve declaration and counselling practices.

6. Transparent, timely, and scientifically accurate communication of brain-death to families prevents false hope, reduces financial burden, and facilitates informed decision-making.

7. Streamlining medico-legal processes, including coordinated autopsy, availability of forensic experts, and adoption of virtopsy (whole-body CT), can preserve donor dignity and reduce delays for grieving families.

8. Religious and cultural hesitations are modifiable barriers; engagement with faith leaders and public awareness can reframe organ donation as an act supported by humanitarian values across religions.

9. System-level reforms are crucial—mandatory brain-death declaration, ICU audits, political and social leadership by example, trained transplant manpower, ethical enforcement against commercial donation, grief counsellor involvement, and strategic use of social media can collectively strengthen deceased organ donation programs.

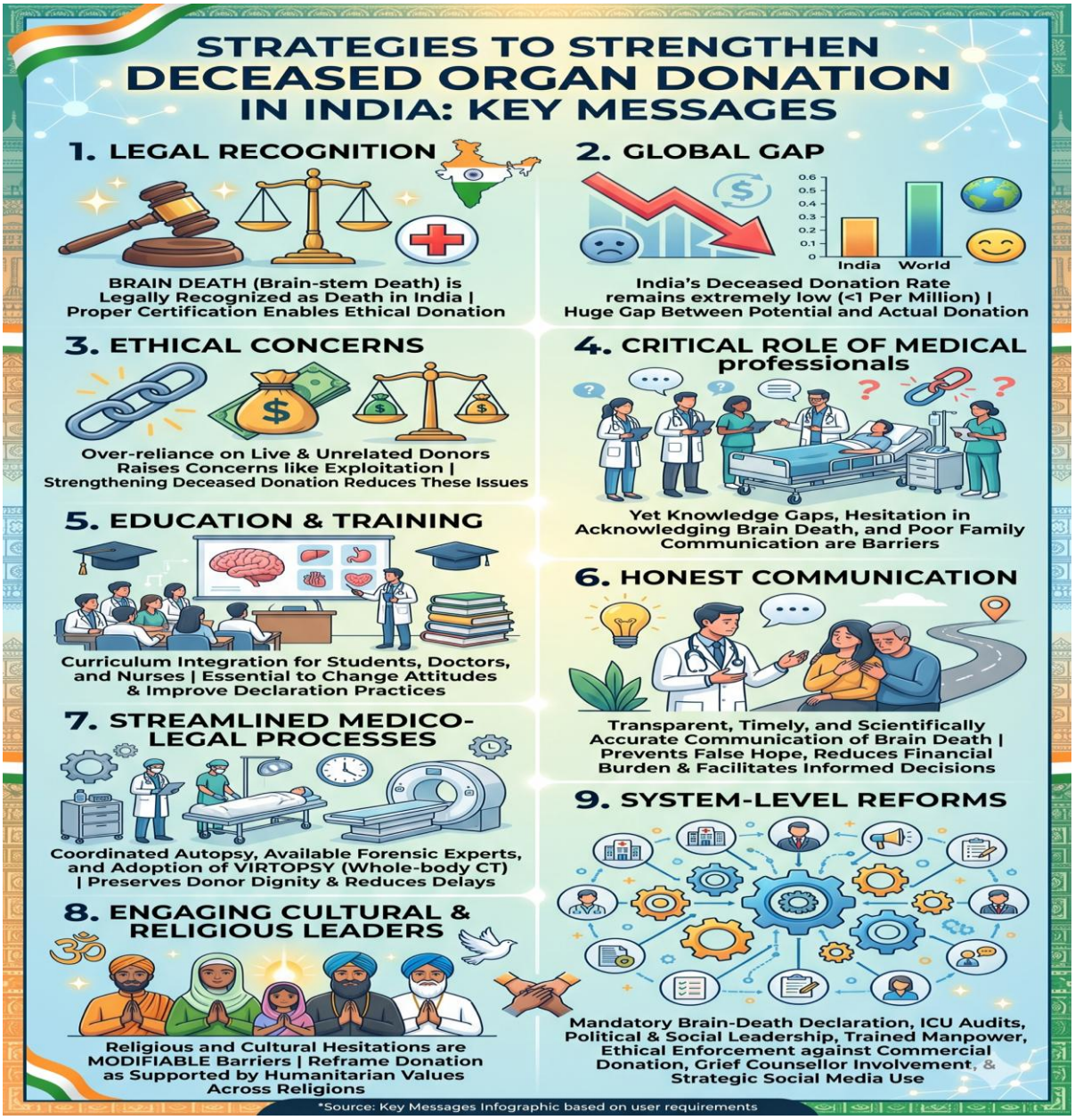


Figure 1: *Strategies to Strengthen Deceased Organ Donation in India*

CONCLUSION

Recognizing brain-death not merely as a clinical endpoint but as an opportunity for life-giving altruism—supported by legal clarity, medical education, ethical governance, cultural dialogue, and systemic accountability—can transform organ donation in India from a rare event into a normalized societal responsibility that benefits countless lives.

Let there be delight in death
And that is to help the living.

REFERENCES

1. National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organisation (NOTTO). Annual Report 2024–2025. Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India.
2. Directorate General of Health Services (DGHS). Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA) and National Organ Transplant Programme (NOTP) including NOTTO/ROTTOs/SOTTOs. New Delhi: Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India; 2020.
   Available from:
   https://dghs.gov.in/WriteReadData/userfiles/file/RTI/THOA_NOTP_NOTTO_ROTTO_SOTTO_16-7-2020.pdf [Accessed 16th July 2020].
3. Shroff S. Legal and brain death certification aspects of organ donation and transplantation. Indian J Urol. 2009;25:348.
4. Ganapathy K. Brain death revisited. Neurol India. 2018;66(2):308–315.
5. Gupta DK, Roy JM, Sawant N, Praneeth K. Bottleneck after brain death certification in India: second autopsy in mortuary—necessity or tradition? Neurol India. 2023;71(3):635–636.
6. The Hindu. Brain death certification to be mandatory: Organ donation to be delinked from the process so that ICU resources can be channelized to the needy. May 14, 2019; Thiruvananthapuram.
7. Gupta D, Garg K, Mishra S, Mazzeo AT, Joseph M, Manikandan S, Easwer HV, Praneeth K, Shroff S. Disparities in brain death certification knowledge among Indian physicians involved in organ donation. Neurol India. 2025;73(5):979–985.

8. Seetharaman RV, Rane JR, Dingre NS. Assessment of knowledge and attitudes regarding organ donation among doctors and students of a tertiary care hospital. Artif Organs. 2021;45(6):625–632.

9. Al-Abdulghani A, Vincent BP, Randhawa G, Cook E, Fadhil R. Barriers and facilitators of deceased organ donation among Muslims living globally: an integrative systematic review. Transplant Rev (Orlando). 2024;38(4):100874.

10. Alshamsi F, Al-Bluwi GSM, Valero R, Bakoush O. Attitudes toward organ donation among university students in the United Arab Emirates: a cross-sectional survey. Front Public Health. 2025;13:1551380.

11. Abraham G, Vijayan M, Gopalakrishnan N, Shroff S, Amalorpavanathan J, Yuvaraj A, et al. State of deceased donor transplantation in India: a model for developing countries around the world. World J Transplant. 2016;6:331–337.

12. Shroff S, Rao S, Kurian G, Suresh S. Organ donation and transplantation—the Chennai experience in India. Transplant Proc. 2007;39(3):714–718.

13. The Lancet Regional Health – Southeast Asia. Organ transplantation in India: Needs a bigger push. Lancet Reg Health Southeast Asia. 2024;21:100366.

14. Jaffer, Mahdiyah, Aasim I. Padela, and Gurch Randhawa, eds. Organ Donation in Islam: The Interplay of Jurisprudence, Ethics, and Society. Lanham: Lexington Books, 2022.

CHAPTER 16

PROFESSIONAL EDUCATION, TRAINING, AND COMPETENCY IN BRAIN-STEM DEATH (BSD)

AUTHOR(s):

Dr. Amlendu Yadav, Dr. G V Basavaraja

Department and Affiliation

1. Professor and HOD, Department of Emergency Medicine, ABVIMS & Dr. RML Hospital, New Delhi.
2. National President, Indian Academy of Pediatrics (IAP). Professor of Pediatrics and Head of Paediatric emergency, Critical care Unit, Medical Superintendent, IGICH, Bangalore.

INTRODUCTION

India faces a dire organ shortage with deceased donation rates below 1 per million population (pmp), despite ~10,000 annual Brain-Stem Death (BSD) opportunities[1]. Certification under THOTA 2024[2] mandates rigorous four-member panels, yet training deficits may impede progress. This chapter synthesizes India's framework with global exemplars—Spain (48 pmp, ONT model[3]), USA (UDDA/AAN[4]), UK (AoMRC[5]), Croatia (35 pmp[6]), and others—proposing a NOTTO-led ecosystem: tiered certification, simulation curricula, TOT cascades, and digital scaling. Detailed curricula, phased roadmaps, and rigorously cited references at the end, position India for 10 pmp by 2030, averting 20,000 deaths yearly.

This chapter outlines a structured and competency-based approach to professional education, training, and assessment in Brain-Stem Death declaration and certification. In the context of evolving legal frameworks such as the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA) and increasing emphasis on ethical organ donation practices, standardized training has become essential for ensuring accuracy, transparency, and public trust.

The chapter highlights the integration of foundational knowledge in neurophysiology with practical bedside skills, including the systematic assessment of brainstem reflexes and apnea testing. It further emphasizes the importance of identifying confounders, adhering to legal documentation requirements, and incorporating ancillary testing where indicated.

Special focus is given to simulation-based learning, objective structured clinical examinations (OSCEs), and interdisciplinary coordination to enhance clinical competence. Additionally, the chapter underscores the significance of communication skills, particularly in counselling families within the socio-cultural context of India.

Overall, the chapter advocates for a uniform, competency-driven training framework to ensure safe, ethical, and legally compliant practices in Brain-Stem Death determination.

F) EDUCATION, TRAINING AND COMPETENCY OF HEALTHCARE PROFESSIONALS

A.1. Who Can Perform Brain-Stem Death Testing?

In India, THOTA 2024[2] mandates a four-registered medical practitioner (RMP) panel, all NOTTO/SOTTO-registered[14]:

1. Treating physician (non-neurosurgical background)

2. Neurologist or neurosurgeon (mandatory specialist)
3. Intensivist or anaesthetist (or equivalent if unavailable in rural settings)
4. Nominated RMP/HOI (independent verifier)

a. Exclusion Criteria: Panel members cannot be transplant team members or have conflicts[15]. Tests require two sets ≥6 hours apart in adults, post-prerequisites (comatose, normothermia, no sedatives/hypotension/metabolic issues) [16].

b. Global Comparisons:

1. Spain (ONT): Restricted to accredited intensivists/neurologists (20h training); multidisciplinary with coordinators (95% compliance) [3,21].
2. USA (UDDA): Two licensed physicians, one neurocritical-certified; flexible for rural (hospital credentialing) [4,25].
3. UK (AoMRC): ICU/neurology consultants post-specialist training[5].
4. Croatia: Multidisciplinary national panels[6].

c. Indian Innovation: Urban intensivist-led (Spain model); rural physician panels (USA flexibility) with SOTTO tele-verification[20].

A.2. Training and Accreditation Requirements

India's current ad-hoc hospital orientations cover <15% ICUs[5]; the competency lapses cause some apnea errors[9]. The proposed 1-day training for doctors already familiar with the process or 2-Day Certification for doctors and paramedics, medical students who are not familiar or naive to the concept of brain death certification. The certificate validity may be kept for 5 years. This process may improve the outcome.

a. Curriculum Snapshot:

Prerequisites/reflexes (AAN checklists[7]); simulation stations (pupillary/corneal). Apnea ($PaCO_2$ protocols[18]), ethics role-plays (USA scripts[16]), OSCE certification (UK-style[5]). This may be covered in 1- or 2-day training as may be the case as per the need of training and target trainees.

b. Global Benchmarks:

1. Spain: 20h (theory 40%, preceptorship 60%) + metrics-linked renewal[3]
2. USA SCCM: 16h high-fidelity sim (90% competency) [11, 26]

3. UK NHSBT: E-learning + observed cases (85% pass) [29]

c. India Metrics: 80% MCQ pass, 100% skills checklist; 1,000 simulators by 2028.

A.3. Periodic Updates and Continuing Education

No Indian recertification exists, risking skill fade (65→92% confidence via refreshers) [18]. It is proposed to have annual 4 to 6 hours webinars on 20-case Logs by NOTTO

a. Global Standards:

1. USA AAN: Biennial 5 CME credits + audits[15].
2. Spain ONT: Annual tied to donations/hospital[23].
3. UK: 3-yearly reassessments[5].
4. Portugal: E-platform audits[33].

b. Incentives: State CME points; organ priority for certified staff and first-degree family members.

G) TRAINING AND ACCREDITATION OF BSD EXPERTS

Indian "experts" (senior neurologists/intensivists) lack formal pathways; Maharashtra NTORC requires listing[19], but ancillary skills (EEG/TCD/angiography) vary[20].

Tiered Expert Framework:

Level	Profile	Requirements	Global Parallel
Expert	Intensivist/Neuro (DM/MCh+5yr)	40h + 50 supervised cases	USA NCS[27]
Master Expert	+Teaching exp	Ancillary mastery (EEG/angiography)	Spain Coordinators[21]

B.1 Accreditation Process: Portfolio (cases/APAR) + viva; renewal 5year with 100 cases. Spain Impact: Coordinators have improved 20% donations[3]; USA: 50-case certification reduces disputes by 60%[27].

B.2 India Scale: 2,000 experts by 2028 via TOT.

H) TRAINING NEEDS, STRATEGIES, TRAINING PLAN, CURRICULUM METHODOLOGY, TRAINING OF TRAINERS (TOT), IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

India encounters approximately 10,000 potential Brain-Stem Death (BSD) cases annually in intensive care units (ICUs), yet fewer than 1% convert to deceased organ donors, underscoring a critical implementation gap in certification processes[1]. Key deficiencies include BSD recognition rates are low among frontline staff[8], apnea testing errors affecting declarations[9], and family counselling refusals in many of cases[10]. To address these, the national target must be to train 50,000 healthcare professionals by 2030, with 80% coverage in metropolitan and tier-1 cities and the remaining 20% extending to tier-2 and rural facilities[23].

C.1.Strategies

The optimal approach adopts a blended global hybrid model that leverages proven international successes. This includes simulation-based training from the Society of Critical Care Medicine (SCCM) in the USA for hands-on apnea and reflex mastery[11], zero-refusal coordinator programs inspired by Spain's ONT to minimize family opt-outs[3], Objective Structured Clinical Examinations (OSCEs) from the UK's NHSBT for standardized competency assessment[5], and the FFT (Four Skills: theory, demonstration, simulation, assessment) cascade from China for efficient large-scale rollout[34]. These strategies ensure cultural adaptability, high fidelity, and measurable outcomes tailored to India's diverse healthcare landscape.

C.2. Training Plan & Curriculum (8- and 16-hour training,80-100 Participants per Batch)

The comprehensive 8/16 hours curriculum is structured across 1/2 intensive days, accommodating up to 80/100 participants per batch to optimize resource use while maintaining interactive group sizes. It follows a progressive build from foundational knowledge to advanced application and certification.

1. 1-Day Advanced Training (for experienced doctors)
2. 2-Day Basic-to-Intermediate Training (for doctors/paramedics/students)

All content should be aligned with THOTA 2024, clinical standards, and competency-based learning.

1. One-Day Advanced Training Programme (8 Hours)

(For Doctors Already Familiar with Brain Death Declaration/Certification)

To enhance clinical accuracy, standardization, legal compliance, and communication skills in Brain-Stem Death declaration among experienced clinicians.

I. Session 1: Rapid Legal & Clinical Update (1.5 Hours)

- Overview of THOTA 2024 amendments and medico-legal responsibilities
- Updates in certification protocols and documentation
- Review of Brain-Stem Death physiology and irreversible neuronal injury
- Key pitfalls in certification and common errors in practice

II. Session 2: Advanced Bedside Protocols (2.5 Hours)

- Structured review of brainstem reflex examination:
    - Pupillary, corneal, oculocephalic, vestibulo-ocular, gag and cough reflex
- Apnea testing protocol refinement:
    - Pre-oxygenation techniques
    - Target $PaCO_2 \geq 60$ mmHg with ≥ 20 mmHg rise
    - Safety considerations and abort criteria
- Management of confounders:
    - Sedatives, neuromuscular blockers (drug half-life application)
    - Metabolic and endocrine corrections

III. Session 3: Simulation-Based Skill Reinforcement (2.5 Hours)

- OSCE-based rotational stations:
    - Complete brainstem examination
    - Apnea test demonstration (ventilator disconnection & monitoring)
    - Troubleshooting difficult scenarios
- Use of high-fidelity mannequins and real-time monitoring

IV. Session 4: Advanced Topics & Critical Care Interface (1.5 Hours)

- Ancillary tests:
    - Transcranial Doppler
    - CT angiography / four-vessel angiography (as per guidelines)
- Management of Neurovascular Instability (NAVI)
- ICU coordination during declaration

V. Session 5: Communication & Ethical Practice (1 Hour)

- Family counselling in Indian socio-cultural context
- Handling consent for organ donation

- Legal documentation and certification nuances

VI. Assessment & Certification (1 Hour)

- Short MCQ-based assessment
- Focused OSCE evaluation
- Certification of participation/competency

2. Two-Day Training Programme (16 Hours)

(For Doctors, Paramedics, and Medical Students with Limited/No Prior Exposure)

To build foundational knowledge, clinical competence, and confidence in Brain-Stem Death declaration and certification.

Day 1: Foundations & Core Concepts (8 Hours)

I. Session 1: Introduction & Legal Framework (2 Hours)

- Concept and definition of Brain-Stem Death
- THOTA 2024 legal provisions and certification process
- Roles and responsibilities of medical professionals

II. Session 2: Basic Neurophysiology (1.5 Hours)

- Brainstem anatomy and function
- Mechanism of irreversible brainstem failure
- Clinical correlation with coma and ventilator dependency

III. Session 3: Clinical Examination Protocol (2.5 Hours)

- Stepwise brainstem reflex examination:
    - Pupillary, corneal, vestibulo-ocular, gag, cough reflexes
- Identification and exclusion of confounders:
    - Drug intoxication
    - Hypothermia, metabolic derangements

IV. Session 4: Apnea Testing (2 Hours)

- Indications and prerequisites
- Procedure and interpretation
- Complications and safety precautions

Day 2: Skill Development & Application (8 Hours)

V. Session 5: Hands-on OSCE Training (3 Hours)

- Practical stations:
    - Brainstem reflex testing
    - Apnea test simulation
    - Monitoring and documentation

VI. Session 6: Ancillary Tests & Critical Care Integration (1.5 Hours)

- Basics of confirmatory tests
- ICU coordination and patient management during evaluation

VII. Session 7: Communication & Ethics (1.5 Hours)

- Breaking bad news
- Family counselling in Indian context
- Ethical and cultural sensitivities

VIII. Session 8: Documentation & Certification (1 Hour)

- Stepwise filling of certification forms
- Legal safeguards and record keeping

IX. Assessment & Certification (1 Hour)

- MCQ-based test (competency-focused)
- OSCE-based evaluation
- Certification upon successful completion

The Key Features of Both Programs are competency-based structured learning, simulation-driven skill acquisition, alignment with national (THOTA, NOTTO) and international standards and focus on legal compliance, patient safety, and ethical practice**.** The formative assessments may include 100-question MCQ (80% pass threshold), full OSCE re-run, and panel viva. Successful completers receive the NOTTO digital certification valid for 5 years.

C.3. Methodology

The program employs a flipped classroom methodology, where participants review pre-course videos and THOTA summaries to maximize in-person hands-on time. High-fidelity simulation incorporates capnographs, ventilators, and programmable mannequins for realistic apnea scenarios, complemented by structured debriefings using Plus-Delta frameworks for reflective learning.

Evaluation follows the Kirkpatrick Four-Level Model[27]:

1. **Level 1 (Reaction):** Net Promoter Score (NPS) >85% via post-session surveys.
2. **Level 2 (Learning):** Pre/post-test improvement >30%.
3. **Level 3 (Behaviour):** Six-month audits of 20 supervised declarations per trainee.
4. **Level 4 (Results):** Institutional donation rates and pmp tracked via NOTTO dashboard[1].

C.4. Training of Trainers (TOT)

The 1-day TOT cascade equips senior faculty to deliver scalable programs nationwide. It integrates adult pedagogy principles with China's FFT model (theory lectures, live demonstrations, supervised simulations, competency assessments) [34]. Annual intake may target 100 master trainers, including 20 recruited via national/international MoUs with ONT (Spain), SCCM (USA), and NHSBT (UK). Participants undergo rigorous validation: design a mini-module, train a mock batch, and submit a rollout plan.

a. Projected Output: 500 master trainers by 2028, enabling 40,000 frontline certifications through tiered replication (each trainer should deliver 10 batches/year).

b. Implementation Plan

Rollout unfolds in three phases, aligned with MoHFW/NOTTO budgets and national priorities:

Phase	Timeline	Key Activities & Scope	Budget Allocation (Rs Crore)	Performance KPIs
1: Pilot	2026	Launch in 12 high-volume states (Delhi, Maharashtra, etc.); train 5,000; procure 100 simulators; 50 centres	100 (40% equipment, 30% faculty)	2 pmp rise; 85% certification pass
2: National Scale	2027-2028	Expand to all states; 30,000 trained; 200 centres + mobile units; digital app for logs	300 (50% digital/infra)	6 pmp; 90% L3 compliance
3: Sustainability	2029+	50,000 total; AI-audited app; MBBS/NMC integration[31]; annual refreshers	200 annually	10 pmp; +5,000 donors/year

c. Risk Mitigations: Rural access via tele-simulation (USA model[28]); faculty incentives (20 State CME points); funding via CSR/World Bank/MOHFW/NOTTO.

d. Monitoring: Quarterly NOTTO reviews with adaptive adjustments.

This structured ecosystem transforms India's BSD competency from fragmented to world-class, directly fueling organ donation growth.

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

1. Training & Skill Deficits: Fewer than 15% of Indian ICUs offer structured BSD orientations. Frontline staff frequently exhibit low recognition rates and make critical errors during apnoea testing.
2. Absence of Recertification Protocols: India lacks formal re-accreditation for BSD experts or periodic refreshers for clinicians, creating a major risk of skill decay over time.
3. Communication & Counseling Barriers: High rates of family consent refusal persist due to inadequate communication training for counseling families within India's complex socio-cultural context.
4. Rural-Urban & Regional Disparities: Significant variation exists across states regarding administrative capacity, expert availability, and ancillary testing skills.
5. Implementation & Funding Bottlenecks: Scaling up nationwide to train 50,000 personnel by 2030 requires substantial infrastructure, high-fidelity simulators, and robust digital audit tracking across all tiers.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. Brain-Stem Death declaration is a critical medical, legal, and ethical responsibility that demands the highest standards of clinical precision, professional integrity, and compassionate communication. The effectiveness of this process is directly dependent on the competence and preparedness of healthcare professionals, which can only be achieved through structured training and continuous skill reinforcement.
2. This chapter reinforces the need for a standardized, competency-based educational framework that aligns with national regulations and international best practices. It highlights that accurate diagnosis, meticulous documentation, and adherence to protocols are essential not only for patient care but also for maintaining public confidence in the organ donation system.
3. Equally important is the human dimension of care—engaging with families sensitively, respecting cultural values, and facilitating informed decision-making during emotionally challenging circumstances.

4. In conclusion, strengthening training programmes in Brain-Stem Death certification is fundamental to improving clinical outcomes, ensuring ethical practice, and advancing the larger goal of organ donation and transplantation in the country.

CONCLUSION

Standardizing professional education, training, and competency in Brain-Stem Death declaration is fundamental to bridging India's critical gap in deceased organ donation. Moving away from ad-hoc orientations toward a NOTTO-led, competency-based framework—incorporating simulation-driven curricula, OSCE certifications, and a cascade Training of Trainers model—ensures clinical precision, legally compliant practice, and strict protocol adherence. Equipping healthcare teams with structured technical expertise and compassionate family counseling skills reinforces ethical integrity and restores public trust in the donation ecosystem. Achieving this transformation is pivotal to converting latent ICU donor potential into saved lives across the nation.

REFERENCES

1. NOTTO Annual Report 2025. New Delhi: DGHS; 2026.
2. THOTA 2024. Gazette India Extraordinary. 2024; Part II-S3(i).
3. ONT Spain. Memoria 2024. Madrid: ONT; 2025.
4. Wijdicks EFM, et al. Neurology. 2010;74(23):1911-1918.
5. Academy of Medical Royal Colleges. A Code of Practice for the Diagnosis and Confirmation of Death in Adults. London: AoMRC; 2020.
6. Jelakovic B, et al. Croat Med J. 2020;61(4):345-352.
7. UNOS Data 2025. Richmond, VA: UNOS.
8. Ramachandran R, et al. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2024;28(5):452-459.
9. Council of Europe. Guide to the Quality and Safety of Organs for Transplantation. 2nd ed. Strasbourg; 2016.
10. Gupta S, et al. Indian J Med Ethics. 2022; VII (2):245-251.
11. Nakagawa TA, et al. Crit Care Med. 2011;39(9):2310-2318.
12. NMC. UGMSR 2023.

13. NOTTO BSD Protocol v2.0 2025.

14. SOTTO Guidelines 2024. MoHFW.

15. AAN Brain Death Guideline: Practice Parameters 2023 Update. Neurology. 2024;102: e209147.

16. Siminoff LA, et al. Crit Care Med. 2001;29(9):1839-1845.

17. Wijdicks EFM. Brain Death. 4th ed. Oxford University Press; 2022.

18. THOTA Schedule II 2024.

19. NTORC Maharashtra SOP 2024.

20. Indian ICU Survey 2025. ISCCM.

21. Dominguez-Gil B, et al. Am J Transplant. 2021;21(8):2413-2426.

22. Miranda B, et al. Clin Transpl. 2007:109-120.

23. ONT Training Manual 2024.

24. India-Spain MoHFW MoU 2025.

25. AAN Apnea Protocol 2023.

26. SCCM Simulation Workshop Report. Pediatr Crit Care Med. 2022;23: S45.

27. NCS Certification Handbook 2024.

28. Khan BA, et al. J Crit Care. 2023; 75:154289.

29. NHSBT Brain Death Competency Framework 2023.

30. Shaw N, et al. BMJ Support Palliat Care. 2022;12:89.

31. NMC MBBS Curriculum 2023.

32. EU4Health Croatia Report 2024.

33. Portugal Transplant Agency Annual 2024.

34. Huang J, et al. Transplant Proc. 2022;54(6):1567-1571.

35. Donate Life Australia Training Toolkit 2024.

36. Vancouver Apnea Protocol. Can J Anaesth. 2020; 67:1575-1585.

37. NAVI Guidelines. Indian J Crit Care. 2023; 27:456.

38. ISCCM ICU Census 2025.

39. MoHFW Budget 2026.

40. NOTTO Dashboard Prototype 2025.

41. Simulation Meta-Analysis. JAMA. 2021;325(12):1182-1195.

42. Kirkpatrick DL. Evaluating Training Programs. 3rd ed. Berrett-Koehler; 2006.

43. Matesanz R, et al. N Engl J Med. 2015;372(11):1075-1077.

44. Roza AM, et al. Transpl Int. 2024;37:11234.

45. Jelakovic B. Croat Med J. 2019; 60:123.

46. Chinese FFT Evaluation. Chin Med J. 2023; 136:789.

47. Australian DONATE Impact Study. 2024.

48. Portuguese National Plan 2024.

49. EU DIRECTIVE 2010/53/EU.

50. THOTA Implementation Review 2025.

CHAPTER 17

ADMINISTRATIVE AND FINANCIAL OVERSIGHT

AUTHOR(s):

Dr. Yogesh N Parikh, Dr. Vivek Kute

Department and Affiliation

1. Secretary General, Indian Academy of Paediatrics (IAP). Associate Professor, Department of Paediatric, Government Medical College & New Civil Hospital, Majura Gate, Surat, Gujarat.
2. Professor and Unit Head, Nephrology and Transplantation Institute of Kidney Diseases and Research Center and Dr. H L Trivedi Institute of Transplantation Sciences, (IKDRC-ITS), and the Gujarat University of Transplantation Sciences (GUTS), Ahmedabad, Gujarat.

INTRODUCTION

Brain-Stem Death certification is the pivotal gateway to deceased organ donation, serving as the mandatory legal and clinical sequence for every transplant. Despite clear statutory recognition under the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA), India's deceased donation rate remains obstinately below one donor per million population. The primary rate-limiting bottleneck is not a scarcity of potential donors, but a systemic failure within ICUs to identify, declare, and certify them before family consent or organ allocation can occur. Designing an incentive framework for certification is therefore a central lever of national donation policy.

Under-certification is sustained by severe structural disincentives. Certification imposes heavy clinical workloads under strict medico-legal conditions, while host hospitals incur uncompensated donor maintenance costs and occupy critical care beds without institutional return. Without intervention, institutional inertia prevails. An incentive framework acts as a necessary corrective, ensuring that fulfilling this statutory duty is neither financially penal nor professionally hazardous.

Crucially, international guidelines (WHO, Declaration of Istanbul) draw a strict ethical line: paying donor families or commercializing organs is strictly prohibited. However, system-level incentives—reimbursing hospital ICU maintenance costs, funding transplant coordinators, providing honoraria to certifying board members for medico-legal labor, and offering legal protection—are ethically sound and enforce financial neutrality.

Drawing upon proven models from Spain and Tamil Nadu, this chapter outlines a multi-stakeholder incentive matrix designed to lower operational barriers and expand India's deceased donor pool. By aligning institutional behavior with ethical objectives, these instruments convert latent donation potential into realized clinical benefit while scrupulously safeguarding the Dead Donor Rule through rigorous governance and independent oversight.

I) THE CERTIFICATION BOTTLENECK IN THE DECEASED DONATION PATHWAY

Brain stem death certification occupies the pivotal upstream position in the entire architecture of deceased organ donation. Every deceased donor transplant performed in the country is contingent upon a sequence that begins with the recognition of a potential brain stem dead patient in the intensive care unit, proceeds through the convening of the statutory board of medical experts, and culminates in the completion of two clinical examinations conducted at the prescribed interval. Although the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act of 1994, together with the Rules of 1995 and their 2014 amendment, has long

conferred unambiguous statutory recognition upon brain stem death, the translation of this legal provision into consistent clinical conduct remains incomplete across much of India. The national deceased donation rate has remained obstinately below one donor per million population, a figure that is wholly disproportionate to the demonstrable potential of the country, given that a substantial fraction of the eighty thousand or more annual fatalities attributable to road traffic injury alone are believed to fulfil neurological criteria for death.1

The recurring inference drawn across the Indian and international literature is that the rate limiting determinant is not a scarcity of medically suitable donors but a systemic failure to identify, declare and certify them.1,2 A potential donor who is never recognized as brain stem dead, or whose certification is never initiated, is irretrievably lost to the donation pool before the questions of family authorization or organ allocation are ever reached. It follows that any administrative or financial strategy intended to expand the deceased donor pool must direct its earliest and most deliberate efforts at the certification step itself. Incentives for brain stem death certification are therefore not a peripheral fiscal instrument but a central lever of national donation policy, and their design warrants the same rigour applied to allocation and clinical governance.

J) INCENTIVES FOR BRAIN-STEM DEATH CERTIFICATION

A.1. Conceptual and Ethical Foundations: What May and May Not Be Incentivized

Any discussion of incentives in the field of transplantation must begin by drawing a categorical distinction that is frequently elided in public discourse. The internationally settled prohibition concerns the commodification of the organ itself and the enrichment of the donor or the donor family in consideration for donation. The WHO Guiding Principles on Human Cell, Tissue and Organ Transplantation affirm that cells, tissues and organs should be donated freely, without any monetary payment or reward of monetary value, and that the prohibition on sale or purchase does not preclude the reimbursement of reasonable and verifiable expenses incurred by the donor.[3] The Declaration of Istanbul, in its 2018 edition, articulates the complementary principle of financial neutrality, namely that donors and their families should neither gain nor lose financially as a consequence of donation.[4]

These instruments constrain inducements directed at the donor and the next of kin. They do not, however, prohibit the legitimate compensation of the health system, the hospital and the clinical professionals who undertake the demanding medico-legal and clinical work of identifying, maintaining and certifying a brain stem dead patient. The remuneration of a certifying board for discharging a statutory duty, the reimbursement of a hospital for the intensive care expenditure incurred in donor maintenance, and the public funding of transplant coordinators are categorically distinct from the purchase of an organ. The

working group convened on incentives for organ donation has similarly held that a regulated, transparent and oversight-bound system of incentives directed at the donation process can be reconciled with prevailing ethical norms, provided it is firmly separated from any transaction that values the organ as merchandise.[5] The conceptual foundation of this chapter therefore rests on a clean separation between incentives that defray the cost and burden of certification, which are both permissible and desirable, and inducements that attach a price to the organ or to a family's consent, which remain categorically prohibited.

A.2. The Structural Rationale For Incentivizing Certification

The under-certification of brain stem death in India is sustained by a constellation of structural disincentives that operate upon the treating clinician and the host institution. The certification process imposes a tangible workload upon already burdened intensivists and neurosciences teams, requiring the assembly of a multidisciplinary board, the conduct and documentation of apnoea testing, and the meticulous exclusion of confounders, all under conditions of considerable medico-legal sensitivity. A hospital that declares brain stem death assumes the continuing costs of donor maintenance, occupies a critical care bed, and exposes itself to the apprehension of litigation, frequently without any corresponding institutional benefit. In the absence of a deliberate countervailing incentive, the rational institutional response is inertia, and the potential donor is permitted to progress to circulatory arrest, at which point retrieval of solid organs becomes impossible.[2]

An incentive framework for certification is therefore best understood not as a mechanism for purchasing additional donors but as a corrective that realigns institutional and professional behaviour with national clinical and ethical objectives. Its purpose is to ensure that the act of doing the right thing, namely the timely and correct certification of brain stem death, is neither financially penal nor professionally thankless. The same framework simultaneously serves to remove the disincentives that presently deter certification, a strategy that the international community has consistently endorsed as both effective and ethically unimpeachable.[6] The taxonomy that follows organizes the available instruments accordingly.

A.3. A Taxonomy of Permissible and Impermissible Instruments

Before specifying the operational instruments, it is essential to fix the ethical boundaries within which they must function. **Table 1** classifies the principal categories of incentive according to their permissibility under prevailing national legislation and international guidance, and identifies the governing principle for each.

Category of Instrument	Illustrative Examples	Status and Governing Principle
Donor or family payment	Cash, debt relief or material reward offered to the next of kin in consideration of consent	Prohibited. Violates THOTA and the principle of financial neutrality
Removal of disincentives	Reimbursement of donor maintenance and intensive care costs; waiver of mortuary and documentation charges	Permissible and encouraged. Restores financial neutrality
System and institutional incentives	Grants-in-aid to retrieval centres; performance-linked funding to hospitals and states; coordinator salaries	Permissible. Directed at the system, not the organ
Professional recognition of statutory duty	Honoraria to the certifying board for medico-legal work; indemnity; academic and continuing education credit	Permissible. Remunerates labour, not the organ
Recognition and accreditation	Non-monetary awards, public acknowledgement, benchmarking and accreditation status	Permissible. Reputational, non-pecuniary

Table 1: *Ethical Classification of Incentive Instruments Relevant to Brain-Stem Death Certification*

A.4. Institutional and Financial Instruments

The most consequential institutional incentive is the full and timely reimbursement of the expenditure that a hospital incurs in maintaining a brain stem dead donor. Donor optimization entails the continued use of a critical care bed, ventilatory support, vasoactive and hormonal therapy, laboratory monitoring and nursing intensity, none of which generates revenue once the patient has been declared dead. A reimbursement mechanism administered through the State Organ and Tissue Transplant Organisation, drawing upon a dedicated corpus, converts what is presently a financial liability into a cost-neutral act, and thereby eliminates one of the most potent deterrents to certification. The experience of jurisdictions that provide such reimbursement demonstrates that donor maintenance costs, when underwritten by the system, cease to function as a barrier and that institutions become substantially more willing to initiate the certification process.[2]

Beyond cost reimbursement, performance-linked grants-in-aid offer a powerful means of aligning institutional behaviour with national objectives. Hospitals designated as Non-Transplant Organ Retrieval Centres may be supported through capital grants for the establishment of donor management capability, recurring grants tied to the number of certifications completed and organs retrieved, and infrastructure funding for the equipment required to conduct ancillary confirmatory testing where clinically indicated. Such grants must be structured to reward the correct and complete certification of brain stem death rather than the eventual retrieval of organs, so that the incentive attaches to the clinical and statutory act and not to a downstream outcome that depends upon family authorization. A graduated, transparent and audited schedule of institutional support, disbursed against verifiable certification records, constitutes the financial core of a credible incentive framework.[1,2]

A.5. Professional and Clinician-Directed Incentives

The convening of the certifying board, the conduct of two examinations including apnoea testing, and the rigorous documentation demanded by statute represent a defined professional service rendered under conditions of medico-legal exposure. It is both reasonable and consistent with international norms to remunerate this service through a modest, fixed honorarium payable to the members of the board for the discharge of a statutory duty.[5] Such an honorarium is conceptually indistinguishable from the fees that physicians receive for other certificatory and medico-legal functions, and it carries no implication of payment for an organ, since it is contingent only upon the proper completion of certification and is paid irrespective of whether donation ultimately proceeds. Anchoring the payment to the certification act, and explicitly dissociating it from retrieval, is the safeguard that preserves the ethical integrity of the arrangement.

Equally important are the non-pecuniary professional incentives that address the apprehensions which deter clinicians from initiating certification. Foremost among these is the assurance of medico-legal indemnity for physicians who certify brain stem death in good faith and in accordance with the prescribed protocol. A clear statutory and administrative guarantee that a clinician acting correctly will be shielded from vexatious litigation removes a disincentive that is frequently cited as decisive. To this may be added the recognition of certification activity within academic and professional advancement, the conferment of continuing medical education credit for accredited training in brain stem death evaluation, and the systematic provision of such training so that the procedural unfamiliarity which presently impedes certification is progressively dispelled.[1] These measures, taken together, reconstitute certification as a recognized, supported and professionally valued activity rather than an onerous and hazardous imposition.

K) RECOGNITION, ACCREDITATION AND BENCHMARKING INCENTIVES

Reputational instruments exert influence that is disproportionate to their fiscal cost and are entirely free of ethical hazard, since they confer no pecuniary benefit upon any individual or institution in consideration of an organ. A national framework that publicly recognizes high-performing retrieval centres, confers awards upon institutions and clinical teams that demonstrate exemplary certification practice, and incorporates certification performance into hospital accreditation creates a competitive and aspirational dynamic among institutions. The systematic collection and transparent reporting of certification and donation indicators, disaggregated by hospital and by state, permits the benchmarking of performance and the identification of both exemplary practice and remediable deficiency. This approach, in which institutions are externally audited against a defined set of donation indicators and their performance is openly compared, has been a central and well-documented feature of the most successful national programmes, and it functions simultaneously as an incentive and as an instrument of accountability.[2]

L) DISINCENTIVE REMOVAL AS THE INDISPENSABLE COMPLEMENT

An incentive framework that adds rewards while leaving the structural impediments to certification in place will achieve only a fraction of its potential. The international consensus has consistently held that the removal of disincentives is at least as important as, and ethically less contentious than, the provision of positive incentives.[6] In the specific context of brain stem death certification, the principal disincentives are the administrative burden of assembling the board, the cost of donor maintenance, the occupation of a scarce critical care resource, and the fear of litigation. Each of these admits of a deliberate remedy. The deployment of trained, dedicated transplant coordinators relieves the certifying physician of the logistical and documentary labour and allows the clinical team to concentrate upon its medical responsibilities. The reimbursement of maintenance costs and the waiver of associated charges restore financial neutrality at the institutional level. The statutory protection of the good-faith certifier addresses the medico-legal apprehension. The cumulative effect of removing these disincentives is to lower the threshold at which an institution is willing to proceed with certification, and it is the conjunction of disincentive removal with positive incentive that produces durable behavioural change.[5,6]

M) EVIDENCE FROM COMPARATOR SYSTEMS

The international and domestic experience offers instructive precedents for an incentive-based approach to the upstream determinants of donation. The Spanish national programme, widely regarded as the global reference standard, achieved its sustained pre-eminence not through legislative change but through the systematic professionalization and public funding of the donation process, in which dedicated in-hospital coordinators,

structured reimbursement of donation-related activity, and continuous quality benchmarking together transformed institutional behaviour. The architecture of that programme demonstrates that the reliable identification and certification of potential donors is principally a function of organization and incentive rather than of donor availability.

Within India, the experience of Tamil Nadu furnishes a directly applicable model. The state programme, established through a sequence of government orders, combined the mandatory reporting of brain deaths, the deployment of trained coordinators in both public and private institutions, a structured public-private partnership, and the alleviation of recipient financial burden through state insurance schemes.[2] The consequence was an increase in the deceased donation rate to a multiple of the national average and a demonstrable decline in commercial transplantation, as a credible deceased donor programme displaced the illicit trade.[7] The Tamil Nadu experience confirms that an administrative framework which obliges and supports certification, rather than merely permitting it, can be implemented within the Indian legal and institutional context and can yield substantial and sustained gains. The lesson for national policy is that the instruments described in this chapter are not theoretical aspirations but proven measures awaiting systematic replication under the coordinating authority of the national organisation.[1,2]

N) A PROPOSED INCENTIVE MATRIX FOR THE NATIONAL FRAMEWORK

Drawing the foregoing instruments together, **Table 2** sets out a stakeholder-specific matrix that may serve as the operational basis for a national incentive framework administered through the national and state organ and tissue transplant organisations. For each stakeholder, the matrix specifies the principal incentive instrument, the mechanism of delivery, and the safeguard that preserves ethical integrity. The framework is deliberately constructed so that every pecuniary incentive attaches to the act of certification or to the defrayal of its cost, and never to the organ or to the family's authorization.

Stakeholder	Principal incentive	Delivery mechanism	Embedded safeguard
Retrieval hospital	Reimbursement of donor maintenance and intensive care costs; capital and recurring grants	Dedicated corpus disbursed by SOTTO against verified records	Paid for certification, not for retrieval
Certifying board	Fixed honorarium for statutory medico-legal certification; indemnity	Standardized fee schedule; statutory protection clause	Contingent on correct

			certification, not donation
Treating clinician	Academic credit; continuing education credit; good-faith legal protection	Professional advancement policy; accredited training	Recognition of duty, no per-organ payment
Transplant coordinator	Funded, dedicated salaried post in retrieval centres	State-funded establishment within NTORC designation	Relieves clinician burden; salaried, not commission
State programme	Performance-linked central grants; public recognition and benchmarking	Indicator-based allocation; transparent national reporting	Audited indicators; accountability to NOTTO

Table 2:*Proposed Multi-Stakeholder Incentive Matrix for Brain Stem Death Certification*

O) GOVERNANCE, SAFEGUARDS AND THE INTEGRITY OF THE DEAD DONOR RULE

The introduction of incentives, however carefully delimited, generates a corresponding obligation of vigilance, for an ill-designed incentive may produce perverse consequences. The cardinal hazard is that a pecuniary reward attached to certification might, if improperly structured, create an apparent interest in the premature or insufficiently rigorous declaration of brain stem death. The framework must therefore be constructed so that this hazard is foreclosed by design. The first and most fundamental safeguard is the absolute preservation of the dead donor rule and the strict separation of the clinical team responsible for the care and certification of the patient from any team or interest associated with retrieval and transplantation, a separation that is itself an established universal principle of ethical practice.[4] No member of the certifying board should derive any benefit that is contingent upon the outcome of donation, and the honorarium for certification must be payable whenever certification is correctly completed, irrespective of whether organs are ultimately recovered.

The second safeguard is rigorous and independent audit. The certification of brain stem death must be documented against a standardized national proforma, and a sample of certifications should be subject to retrospective review by an authority independent of the certifying institution, so that the correctness of each declaration may be verified against the clinical record. The third safeguard is complete transparency, achieved through the maintenance of an auditable national registry of certifications and donations that is open to

oversight and that permits the detection of anomalous patterns. The fourth is the explicit and statutory affirmation of financial neutrality at the level of the donor and the family, so that the institutional and professional incentives described herein can never be confused with, or function as a conduit for, any payment to those who provide consent.[3,4,8] A framework that incorporates these safeguards directs the entire weight of the incentive structure toward the timely and correct certification of patients who are in fact brain stem dead, and erects a robust barrier against any drift toward premature declaration or covert commodification.

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

The foremost challenge lies in reconciling any pecuniary reward with the inviolable dead donor rule, for even the perception that certification confers financial advantage threatens to corrode the public trust upon which the entire donation enterprise ultimately rests. Structuring honoraria and grants so that they attach unambiguously to the correct completion of certification, and never to retrieval or to family consent, therefore demands disciplined administrative design and unremitting independent audit. A second difficulty is fiscal: a dedicated corpus capable of underwriting donor maintenance across heterogeneous state systems must be at once sustainable and disbursed strictly against verifiable records, lest reimbursement itself become a vector of moral hazard. Third, the pronounced disparity in administrative capacity between states renders the uniform national replication of the Tamil Nadu model far from assured. Finally, statutory rather than merely administrative indemnity for the good-faith certifier remains legislatively unsettled, and its absence continues to deter clinicians. The cardinal issue is thus not whether incentives are ethically permissible, but whether governance, transparency and financial neutrality can be secured with sufficient rigour to foreclose perverse consequence.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. **The Primary Bottleneck:** India's low deceased donation rate (<1 donor per million population) stems from a lack to recognize and certify Brain-Stem Death in ICUs, losing potential donors before family consent or organ allocation can even occur.

2. **Ethical Boundaries:** While paying donor families or organ commodification is strictly prohibited by international guidelines (WHO, Declaration of Istanbul), reimbursing hospitals and compensating medical professionals for statutory certification duties is ethically sound and upholds financial neutrality.

3. **Institutional & Financial Support:** Reimbursement of donor maintenance/ICU costs through SOTTO funds prevents financial liabilities for hospitals. Capital and recurring grants should support hospital infrastructure.

4. **Clinician Protections & Honoraria:** Certifying board members should receive fixed honoraria for statutory medico-legal work, provided it is paid for the act of certification regardless of donation outcome. Statutory indemnity, academic credit, and CME training help eliminate litigation fears.

5. **Systemic Relief & Recognition:** State-funded transplant coordinators handle administrative tasks to relieve clinician burden. Accreditation metrics, hospital benchmarking, and public awards encourage institutional participation.

6. **Proven Real-World Models:** Programs in Spain and Tamil Nadu demonstrate that structured funding, dedicated coordinators, and mandatory reporting drive dramatic gains in deceased donation rates.

7. **Strict Ethical Safeguards:** To uphold the Dead Donor Rule, certifying clinicians must remain separate from transplant teams. Payments must attach strictly to the act of certification (never organ retrieval), backed by independent audits and a transparent national registry.

CONCLUSION

The certification of brain stem death is the indispensable gateway through which every deceased organ donation must pass, and its persistent under-utilization is the principal proximate cause of India's low deceased donation rate. A deliberate, ethically grounded and well-governed system of incentives directed at certification offers one of the most direct and tractable means of expanding the donor pool. The instruments are well understood and comprise the reimbursement of donor maintenance costs, performance-linked institutional grants, modest honoraria for the statutory work of the certifying board, the funding of dedicated coordinators, the assurance of medico-legal protection, and the reputational rewards of recognition and accreditation, each reinforced by the systematic removal of the disincentives that presently deter certification. Provided that these instruments are scrupulously confined to the certification process and the system that supports it, and are insulated by an unyielding commitment to financial neutrality and the dead donor rule, they are wholly consistent with national legislation and with international ethical guidance. The experience of Spain and of Tamil Nadu attests that such a framework, implemented with administrative resolve under the coordinating authority of the national organization, can convert latent donation potential into realized clinical benefit, and can do so without compromising the ethical foundations upon which public trust in transplantation ultimately rests.[1,2,7]

REFERENCES

1. Kute VB, Ramesh V, Shroff S, Guleria S, Prakash J. Deceased-donor organ transplantation in India: current status, challenges, and solutions. Exp Clin Transplant. 2020;18(Suppl 1):31-42. PMID: 32758118.

2. Abraham G, Vijayan M, Gopalakrishnan N, Shroff S, Amalorpavanathan J, Yuvaraj A, et al. State of deceased donor transplantation in India: a model for developing countries around the world. World J Transplant. 2016;6(2):331-335. PMID: 27358778.

3. World Health Organization. WHO guiding principles on human cell, tissue and organ transplantation. Transplantation. 2010;90(3):229-233. PMID: 20664493.

4. Martin DE, Van Assche K, Dominguez-Gil B, Lopez-Fraga M, Gallont RG, Muller E, et al. A new edition of the Declaration of Istanbul: updated guidance to combat organ trafficking and transplant tourism worldwide. Kidney Int. 2019;95(4):757-759. PMID: 30904066.

5. Working Group on Incentives for Living Donation; Matas AJ, Satel S, Munn S, Richards JR, Tan-Alora A, Ambagtsheer FJA, et al. Incentives for organ donation: proposed standards for an internationally acceptable system. Am J Transplant. 2012;12(2):306-312. PMID: 22176925.

6. Delmonico FL, Martin D, Dominguez-Gil B, Muller E, Jha V, Levin A, et al. Living and deceased organ donation should be financially neutral acts. Am J Transplant. 2015;15(5):1187-1191. PMID: 25833381.

7. Abraham G, Reddy YNV, Amalorpavanathan J, Daniel D, Roy-Chaudhury P, Shroff S, et al. How deceased donor transplantation is impacting a decline in commercial transplantation: the Tamil Nadu experience. Transplantation. 2012;93(8):757-760. PMID: 22245870.

8. Martin DE, Capron AM, Fadhil RAS, Forsythe JLR, Padilla B, Perez-Blanco A, et al. Supporting financial neutrality in donation of organs, cells, and tissues. Transplantation. 2025. PMID: 39437369.

CHAPTER 18

PUBLIC AWARENESS, EDUCATION, AND ADDRESSING MISCONCEPTIONS

AUTHOR(s):

Dr. Vivek Kute, Dr. Arpita Ray Chaudhury, Dr. Sourabh Sharma, Dr. R M Chhabra

Department and Affiliation

1. Professor and Unit Head, Nephrology and Transplantation Institute of Kidney Diseases and Research Center and Dr. H L Trivedi Institute of Transplantation Sciences, (IKDRC-ITS), and the Gujarat University of Transplantation Sciences (GUTS), Ahmedabad, Gujarat.
2. Professor and HOD, Department of Nephrology, NBMCH/ IPGMER, Kolkata.
3. Assistant Professor, Department of Nephrology, SMS Medical College, Jaipur.
4. Senior Consultant Physician, Max Super Speciality Hospital, Shalimar Bagh & Saroj Super Speciality Hospital, Rohini, New Delhi.

INTRODUCTION

Brain-Stem Death (BSD) represents a definitive and irreversible determination of death, based on the permanent cessation of all functions of the brainstem. This concept is firmly grounded in neurophysiology, supported by ethical reasoning, and formally recognized within legal frameworks.[1–3] In India, BSD is explicitly defined under the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA) and its Rules, forming the legal and ethical basis for deceased organ donation.[4,5] Despite this robust foundation, BSD remains poorly understood by the general public, families of critically ill patients, and, at times, healthcare professionals themselves.[6–8]

This persistent gap between medical certainty and public understanding has serious consequences. Families experience confusion, disbelief, and prolonged emotional distress at the time of death declaration.[6–8] Clinicians face resistance, mistrust, and moral distress while communicating BSD. At a societal level, misconceptions regarding BSD significantly limit deceased organ donation, thereby restricting access to life-saving transplantation and perpetuating inequity.9-[11] Importantly, these challenges do not arise from rejection of science per se, but from inadequate communication, cultural dissonance, historical mistrust, and the growing influence of misinformation.[12,13]

Public acceptance of BSD cannot be achieved through legislation or technical definitions alone. It requires sustained public awareness, structured education, culturally sensitive engagement, responsible media participation, and ethically consistent healthcare practices.[14,15] This chapter explores the roots of misinformation surrounding Brain-Stem Death, outlines strategies to address misconceptions, reviews global best practices in public awareness and citizen engagement, and discusses public health approaches to education.

A) CHALLENGING MISINFORMATION AGAINST BRAIN-STEM DEATH DECLARATION

A.1. Common Myths and Fallacies Regarding BSD

Misconceptions surrounding Brain-Stem Death are widespread, deeply ingrained, and emotionally charged. They arise primarily from the dissonance between visible bodily signs and the neurological concept of death. These myths are encountered routinely in intensive care units and emergency settings and must be understood in order to be effectively addressed.[6–8]

The most common misconception is that Brain-Stem Death is equivalent to coma or deep unconsciousness. Families frequently assume that BSD represents a severe but potentially

reversible neurological condition, particularly when they observe spontaneous cardiac activity or ventilator-assisted breathing. This confusion stems from the widespread public familiarity with coma, vegetative state, and minimally conscious state, all of which are often discussed in media and popular narratives. In these conditions, however, the brainstem remains functional, allowing spontaneous respiration and preserving some integrative neurological activity. In contrast, Brain-Stem Death represents the irreversible loss of all brainstem function, including the capacity for consciousness and independent breathing.[1,2,9] Failure to clearly communicate this distinction leads families to believe that recovery remains possible, prolonging distress and unrealistic expectations.

A closely related fallacy is the belief that the presence of a heartbeat signifies life. In many cultures, life has traditionally been equated with cardiac activity, and death with the stopping of the heart. In Brain-Stem Death, however, cardiac activity may persist for a limited period because mechanical ventilation and intensive care support maintain oxygenation and circulation. While this phenomenon is physiologically explainable, it conflicts with intuitive notions of death. Without careful explanation, families may interpret a beating heart, warm skin, or visible chest movement as evidence that the person is alive, despite the irreversible loss of brain function.[10]

Another deeply rooted myth is that Brain-Stem Death is declared prematurely to facilitate organ donation. This perception reflects broader mistrust of healthcare systems rather than misunderstanding of neuroscience alone. Families may fear that clinicians are motivated by the prospect of organ retrieval, that life-sustaining treatment is withdrawn too early, or that the interests of the patient are subordinated to those of potential recipients. Such concerns are particularly pronounced in low- and middle-income settings, where healthcare inequities, out-of-pocket expenditure, and historical unethical practices have eroded trust. Even when unfounded, these perceptions significantly influence family acceptance of BSD.[11]

There is also a widespread belief that the criteria for declaring Brain-Stem Death are subjective or vary between hospitals. Families may question why death is declared on one day when the patient appears physically unchanged from the previous day, or why different doctors seem to be involved in the process. Limited public awareness of standardized diagnostic protocols—including repeated examinations, mandatory observation periods, and independent certification—fuels suspicion that BSD determination is discretionary or inconsistent.[1,2,14]

A common misconception among the general population is that the diagnostic tests used to declare brain death may themselves cause the patient's death. In particular, the apnea test is often misunderstood, as it involves temporary disconnection of the patient from the

mechanical ventilator. This has led to the belief that withdrawal of ventilatory support during the test can directly harm the patient or precipitate death.

Such concerns are frequently amplified by misinformation circulating on social media and online platforms, resulting in apprehension and reluctance among relatives to consent to or accept the performance of the apnea test.16 In reality, the apnea test is conducted under strict prerequisites and continuous monitoring, and it does not cause death; rather, it confirms the irreversible absence of spontaneous respiratory drive in a patient who has already met clinical criteria for brain death. The test is immediately aborted if hemodynamic instability or hypoxemia occurs, thereby ensuring patient safety.

Religious and cultural misconceptions further complicate acceptance of BSD. In many traditions, death has historically been defined by cardiopulmonary cessation. Families may worry that Brain-Stem Death does not align with spiritual beliefs regarding the departure of the soul, bodily integrity, or rituals surrounding death. Concerns may also include fears that organ donation violates religious teachings or affects beliefs related to reincarnation or the afterlife. Importantly, these anxieties often arise not from formal religious doctrine but from community narratives and incomplete information.[12]

In recent years, misinformation propagated through social media has amplified these challenges. Highly emotive stories claiming "recovery after brain death" circulate widely, often without clarification that such cases involved coma or other neurological states rather than true Brain-Stem Death. These narratives, though scientifically inaccurate, exert a powerful emotional influence and undermine public education efforts. Once entrenched, such misinformation is difficult to correct, particularly during moments of crisis.[13] **(Table 1)**

Common myth or misconception	Why the misconception arises	Scientific and ethical clarification
Brain-Stem Death is the same as coma or deep unconsciousness	Visible bodily signs such as warmth, heartbeat, and ventilator-assisted breathing resemble coma or vegetative states commonly portrayed in media	Brain-Stem Death is distinct from coma and disorders of consciousness; it represents irreversible loss of all brainstem functions, including consciousness and the capacity for spontaneous breathing
Recovery is possible after Brain-Stem Death	Public familiarity with neurological recovery narratives and misuse of the	Brain-Stem Death is irreversible by definition; reported "recoveries" reflect

	term "brain death" in non-medical contexts	misdiagnosed coma or other neurological states, not true Brain-Stem Death
A beating heart means the person is alive	Traditional cultural understanding equates life with cardiac activity	Cardiac activity may persist temporarily due to mechanical ventilation and intensive care support, despite irreversible loss of brain function
Brain-Stem Death is declared early to facilitate organ donation	Underlying mistrust of healthcare systems and fear of conflict of interest	Brain-Stem Death is determined solely on medical and legal grounds, independent of any consideration of organ donation
Criteria for Brain-Stem Death vary between hospitals or doctors	Lack of public awareness of standardized diagnostic protocols and involvement of multiple physicians	Brain-Stem Death determination follows strict, standardized protocols, including repeated examinations and independent certification
Brain-Stem Death conflicts with religious or spiritual beliefs	Historical association of death with cardiopulmonary cessation and community-level narratives	Many religious traditions accept neurological criteria for death; concerns often arise from incomplete information rather than formal doctrine
The diagnostic tests used to declare brain death may themselves cause the patient's death.	As the test require the patient to be detached from the ventilator support for a while which is believed to precipitate death	The apnea test is conducted under strict prerequisites and continuous monitoring, and it does not cause death, test is immediately aborted if hemodynamic instability or hypoxemia occurs, thereby ensuring patient safety.
Social media stories prove that Brain-Stem Death can be reversed	Rapid spread of emotive and inaccurate online narratives	Such stories are scientifically incorrect and typically involve conditions

		other than true Brain-Stem Death

Table 1: *Common Myths and Misconceptions Regarding Brain-Stem Death and Their Scientific Clarification*

A.2. Strategies for Addressing Misconceptions and Myths

Addressing misinformation surrounding Brain-Stem Death requires a deliberate, structured, and empathetic approach. Correcting myths through factual rebuttal alone is insufficient; communication must acknowledge emotional distress, cultural values, and trust deficits while maintaining scientific integrity.[6–8]

The first and most fundamental strategy is clear differentiation between Brain-Stem Death and other neurological states. Public explanations must explicitly clarify that BSD is not coma, not a vegetative state, and not a condition from which recovery is possible. Clinicians should explain that the brainstem controls consciousness and spontaneous breathing, and that irreversible loss of these functions signifies death, even if some bodily processes are temporarily maintained through machines.[1,2,9] Simple explanations grounded in basic neurobiology, rather than technical jargon, are essential for comprehension.

Equally important is transparent explanation of the diagnostic process. Families should be informed that BSD determination follows strict medical and legal safeguards designed to eliminate error. These safeguards typically include exclusion of reversible causes such as drug intoxication, hypothermia, or metabolic disturbances; repeated neurological examinations demonstrating absence of brainstem reflexes; apnea testing to confirm inability to breathe independently; and certification by authorised physicians who are trained and accountable.[1,2,14] Providing this information openly reassures families that the diagnosis is careful, methodical, and impartial.

A critical ethical strategy is maintaining a clear separation between the declaration of death and discussions about organ donation. Families must understand that Brain-Stem Death is determined solely on medical and legal grounds, independent of any consideration of organ retrieval. Structurally separating the teams responsible for death certification and donation coordination reinforces this message and reduces perceptions of conflict of interest.[11] Communication should emphasize that donation is considered only after death has been unequivocally declared.

Engagement with religious scholars and community leaders is another essential component. Faith leaders often serve as trusted sources of guidance during times of crisis. Many major religious traditions have formally accepted neurological criteria for death, but these

positions are not widely disseminated at the community level. Collaborative forums where clinicians and religious authorities jointly address concerns can help reconcile medical concepts with spiritual beliefs, providing families with reassurance that BSD is ethically and theologically acceptable.[12]

Proactive myth-busting and digital vigilance are increasingly necessary in the modern information environment. Public health authorities, professional societies, and transplant organisations should maintain accessible resources addressing common myths and frequently asked questions. Rapid response to misinformation circulating on social media, through authoritative statements and expert engagement, helps prevent false narratives from becoming entrenched.[13]

Finally, healthcare professionals themselves must be trained in communication skills specific to Brain-Stem Death. Inconsistent or hesitant explanations from clinicians can inadvertently reinforce doubts. Structured training programmes incorporating role-play, mentorship, and standardized communication frameworks enable clinicians to deliver consistent, compassionate, and confident explanations, reducing variability and improving family trust.[6–8] **(Table 2)**

Strategy	Core objective	Key elements highlighted in the text
Clear differentiation of Brain-Stem Death from other neurological states	Prevent confusion between Brain-Stem Death, coma, and vegetative states	Simple explanations of brainstem function, irreversibility, and loss of spontaneous breathing
Transparent explanation of the diagnostic process	Build trust and reduce suspicion regarding death determination	Description of safeguards, exclusion of reversible causes, repeated examinations, apnoea testing, and independent certification
Separation of death declaration from organ donation discussions	Eliminate perceived conflicts of interest	Structural and communicative separation of certification teams and donation coordinators
Engagement with religious and community leaders	Address cultural and spiritual concerns	Joint dialogue between clinicians and faith leaders to align medical facts with ethical and spiritual perspectives

Proactive myth-busting and digital vigilance	Counter misinformation before it becomes entrenched	Publicly accessible resources, timely responses to social media misinformation, and authoritative messaging
Training healthcare professionals in BSD communication	Ensure consistent, confident, and compassionate explanations	Structured training, standardized communication frameworks, and mentorship
Sustained public awareness and education	Improve long-term societal understanding	Integration into school curricula, community outreach, and health literacy initiatives
Responsible media engagement	Prevent sensationalism and misinformation	Guidance on ethical reporting, expert spokespersons, and balanced storytelling

Table 2:*Strategies to Address Misconceptions and Improve Public Understanding of Brain-Stem Death*

B) PUBLIC AWARENESS AND COMMUNICATION

B.1 Global Best Practices in Citizen Engagement and Awareness Regarding Brain Death

Global experience demonstrates that societal acceptance of Brain-Stem Death is the result of sustained, long-term engagement rather than isolated awareness campaigns. Countries with high levels of public trust and successful deceased donation programmes have invested in multi-layered education strategies spanning schools, communities, healthcare systems, and media.[14],[15]

One of the most effective approaches has been early education and normalization. Several countries integrate concepts of brain death and organ donation into school curricula, presenting them within biology, ethics, and civics education. Early exposure helps normalize neurological death as a biological reality rather than a controversial concept. This foundational understanding reduces fear and confusion later in life and supports informed attitudes toward end-of-life care.[15]

Institutional transparency and consistency are equally important. Countries with high public confidence emphasize uniform national protocols for BSD determination, consistent terminology, and visible accountability. When citizens observe that the same standards are applied across institutions and regions, trust is reinforced. Spain's experience illustrates how decades of consistent practice, professional accountability, and transparent communication can transform public attitudes toward both brain death and organ donation.[15]

In low- and middle-income countries, successful awareness initiatives have adapted these principles to local contexts. Community-based engagement, use of local languages, and involvement of trusted health workers and non-governmental organisations have proven particularly effective. Rather than relying solely on mass media, these initiatives prioritize interpersonal communication and dialogue, recognizing that trust is built through relationships rather than messages alone.[11],[14]

Ethical use of lived-experience narratives also plays a role. Stories from donor families and transplant recipients, when responsibly framed, humanize Brain-Stem Death and organ donation. Such narratives foster empathy and social solidarity, provided they are presented without exaggeration, coercion, or distortion of medical facts.[6],[11]

Beyond Spain, several jurisdictions illustrate how transparency and public accountability sustain confidence. In the United Kingdom, NHS Blood and Transplant publishes annual activity reports detailing organ donation and consent rates alongside system audits, making performance data openly accessible to citizens.[17] At the normative level, the World Health Organization's Guiding Principles on Human Cell, Tissue and Organ Transplantation frame transparency, voluntary consent, and public trust as ethical imperatives that extend implicitly to communication about death determination.[18] In India, the National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO) advances the same objectives through public dashboards and structured donor-pledging systems that strengthen citizen participation and registry transparency.

Public confidence is further reinforced when systems demonstrate internal rigour through audit-driven accountability—independent oversight committees, public reporting of certification statistics, and regular review of adverse-event data—so that citizens can see that death is determined under strict, evidence-based criteria.[19] Ultimately, however, the decisive encounter occurs at the bedside: families who perceive honesty and empathy from clinicians are consistently more likely to accept the determination of Brain-Stem Death and to make informed decisions, underscoring that institutional transparency and compassionate communication are complementary rather than competing foundations of trust.[20]

B.2. Public Health Strategies for BSD Education

From a public health perspective, education about Brain-Stem Death should be embedded within broader health literacy initiatives rather than treated as a standalone intervention. The goal is not merely to increase organ donation rates, but to promote informed understanding of death determination and end-of-life care.[14]

Population-level awareness programmes play an important role in establishing baseline understanding. Effective campaigns are characterized by consistent messaging across platforms, use of simple and culturally appropriate language, and repetition over time. Short-term or sporadic campaigns are unlikely to produce durable understanding. Importantly, messaging should prioritize clarity and education rather than persuasion.[14,15]

Community outreach and two-way dialogue are particularly important in addressing deeply rooted misconceptions. Health camps, public seminars, and collaborations with educational institutions provide opportunities for individuals to ask questions and express concerns. Interactive engagement is more effective than passive information dissemination in building trust and correcting misunderstandings.[11]

Healthcare settings themselves are critical sites for public education. Hospitals, clinics, and intensive care units offer opportunities for anticipatory education through informational displays, brochures, and counselling services. Exposure to accurate information before a crisis occurs prepares families for informed decision-making during emotionally charged situations.[6–8]

Integration of BSD education into professional training is also essential. Medical, nursing, and allied health curricula should include standardized instruction on Brain-Stem Death, ethical communication, and legal frameworks. Consistent professional education ensures uniform messaging and reinforces institutional credibility.[1,2,14]

Effective programmes begin from explicitly articulated educational objectives: explaining what Brain-Stem Death is and is not, distinguishing it from coma and the vegetative state, describing how it is diagnosed using standardized criteria, clarifying its implications for treatment withdrawal and organ donation, and directly addressing common fears. The World Health Organization's communication frameworks identify message clarity, internal consistency, and audience segmentation as foundational principles, so that content is tailored to the literacy level and cultural context of each target group rather than delivered as a single, undifferentiated message.[21]

International experience offers concrete models. A community campaign conducted in a shopping-mall setting in Saudi Arabia, using informational kiosks staffed by clinician

volunteers, measurably improved both awareness and understanding of brain death and donation,[22] while controlled evaluations in secondary schools have shown that students grasp death definitions and donation concepts more accurately when these topics are embedded within classroom teaching.[23] Structured social-media campaigns have similarly produced measurable increases in donor registration, particularly among younger audiences, when factual information is paired with relatable messaging.[24] In multicultural settings, structured interfaith dialogue projects—such as those undertaken in Malaysia and the United Kingdom—have addressed theological questions about death and donation and increased community acceptance of brain-death definitions.[26]

Because clinicians remain the most trusted source of health information, provider-directed education is itself a public-health intervention. Simulation-based communication training has been shown to improve clinician confidence and family satisfaction in discussions of death and donation, and should emphasize empathetic communication, shared decision-making, and cultural competence alongside technical accuracy.[25] Families, in turn, are best supported by practical tools—simple explanatory brochures in multiple languages, visual aids illustrating the diagnostic criteria, and support groups facilitated by trained counsellors.

Education strategies must also be treated as dynamic rather than fixed. Regular evaluation—through population knowledge-and-attitude surveys, media-reach analytics, focus groups, and pre- and post-intervention comparisons of donation intentions—allows messaging to be refined in response to emerging trends and misinformation. Where false narratives arise, the World Health Organization's Crisis and Emergency Risk Communication approach offers a template for timely, transparent correction that acknowledges uncertainty without compromising credibility.

B.3. Role of Media and Public Health Messaging

The media plays a powerful role in shaping public perceptions of Brain-Stem Death. Sensationalist or inaccurate reporting can magnify fear, reinforce myths, and undermine trust in healthcare systems. Conversely, responsible journalism can serve as a valuable educational ally.[13]

Constructive engagement with journalists is therefore essential. Public health authorities and professional societies should provide clear guidance on terminology, context, and ethical reporting. Media briefings, expert panels, and access to credible spokespersons improve the accuracy and quality of coverage.[13]

Ethical narrative storytelling can further enhance public understanding. Stories of donation and transplantation, when balanced and factual, can foster empathy and highlight social benefit. However, emotional appeal must never override accuracy or voluntariness.[11]

Digital platforms present both risks and opportunities. While misinformation spreads rapidly online, verified institutional presence on social media can counter false narratives and disseminate reliable information efficiently, particularly among younger populations.[13]

A specific and recurring problem is the use of ambiguous language in mainstream reporting. News coverage frequently describes a brain-dead patient as being "on life support" without clarifying that Brain-Stem Death already constitutes legal death, and often fails to distinguish Brain-Stem Death from coma or the persistent vegetative state.[27],[28] This conflation is a major source of public confusion and makes precise, medically accurate terminology an essential element of responsible reporting.

Public-health messaging about Brain-Stem Death is most effective when it is simultaneously accurate and evidence-based, compassionate, accessible across literacy levels, and consistent across hospitals, campaigns, and digital platforms.[29] A simple, reusable explanatory statement can anchor this consistency—for example: "Brain-Stem Death means the brain has permanently stopped functioning; although machines may maintain heartbeat and breathing, the person has died according to medical and legal standards." Clarity of this kind reduces doubt, while acknowledgement of the emotional weight of death builds trust.

Because social media is now a primary source of health information and demonstrably shapes attitudes toward donation,[30] official content should include short educational videos, myth-versus-fact infographics, frequently-asked-question resources, and interactive live sessions with clinicians, search-optimized so that verified information competes effectively with misinformation. These same platforms also propagate emotionally charged but inaccurate narratives, making dedicated monitoring and rapid, evidence-based rebuttal indispensable.[13]

Narrative communication remains a powerful complement to factual education, but ethical storytelling requires consent, cultural respect, protection of privacy, and non-sensational presentation. Clinicians trained in media communication can serve as credible public spokespersons during high-profile cases, reinforcing accuracy at moments of heightened public attention. At a programmatic level, a well-designed campaign proceeds through baseline situation analysis, audience identification, message framing, an appropriate media mix, and a monitoring-and-evaluation framework, with impact judged by changes in awareness, engagement metrics, consent rates, and public-trust surveys. Throughout,

messaging must inform rather than pressure, scrupulously avoiding any coercion in discussions of organ donation.

C) PROMOTING ORGAN DONATION IN HEALTHCARE

Promotion of organ donation within healthcare systems must always be grounded in ethical integrity, respect for autonomy, and transparency.[11,14]

Structural separation between Brain-Stem Death certification and organ donation processes is fundamental. Independent certification protects ethical integrity and reassures families that death determination is impartial.[11]

Family-centred, staged communication is equally important. Allowing families adequate time to absorb the declaration of death before introducing donation respects emotional needs and supports informed consent. Trained transplant coordinators and grief counsellors can facilitate these discussions sensitively.[6–8]

An institutional culture that views organ donation as an ethical component of end-of-life care, rather than a numerical target, is associated with higher consent rates and greater public trust. Continuous education, leadership endorsement, and ethical audit support such a culture.[14,15]

Data-driven quality improvement enables healthcare systems to identify gaps in donor identification, referral, and consent processes while maintaining ethical standards. Importantly, respect for refusal must remain central. Honoring family decisions, including refusal, preserves long-term trust and reinforces the voluntary nature of donation.[11]

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

The principal challenge confronting public understanding of Brain-Stem Death is the profound dissonance between the neurological reality of death and the visible persistence of warmth, heartbeat and ventilator-assisted respiration, a dissonance that untutored intuition almost invariably resolves in favour of life. Compounding this is the accelerating velocity of digital misinformation, in which emotionally compelling yet scientifically spurious narratives of recovery after brain death propagate faster than any institutional correction and prove remarkably resistant to subsequent rebuttal. A deeper obstacle still is the trust deficit that pervades many low- and middle-income health systems, where historical inequity and catastrophic out-of-pocket expenditure lend spurious credence to the suspicion that death is declared to expedite retrieval. Cultural and religious conceptions anchored in cardiopulmonary cessation remain difficult to reconcile with neurological criteria,

particularly where anxiety arises from community narrative rather than formal doctrine. Finally, imprecise media terminology and inconsistent clinician communication perpetuate confusion at the very moment families are least able to withstand it. The overarching lesson is that scientific certainty alone is inert; only sustained, culturally attuned and ethically disciplined engagement can render it publicly credible.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. **Roots of Misconceptions:** Public confusion regarding Brain-Stem Death (BSD) stems from visible signs of life (ventilator-maintained breathing and heartbeat), conflating BSD with reversible states like coma, fear of premature declaration, and emotive social media narratives.

2. **Strategies to Counter Myths:** Factual rebuttal alone is insufficient. Communication must clearly differentiate BSD from disorders of consciousness, transparently explain diagnostic safeguards (such as the safety of apnoea testing), and involve faith/community leaders to reconcile medical definitions with spiritual beliefs.

3. **Separation to Build Trust:** To eliminate perceived conflicts of interest and suspicion of premature death declarations, clinical teams certifying BSD must be strictly separated from organ donation teams.

4. **Structured Public Health Education:** BSD education must be integrated into school curricula, healthcare professional training, and community-level health literacy programs, relying on interactive dialogue rather than sporadic campaigns.

5. **Responsible Media & Digital Engagement:** Media outlets must replace ambiguous phrases like "on life support" with precise medical terminology, while public health authorities must actively monitor digital platforms to counter misinformation with clear, verified messaging.

CONCLUSION

Public awareness and understanding of Brain-Stem Death are fundamental to ethical end-of-life care and equitable organ donation systems. Addressing misconceptions requires sustained, culturally sensitive engagement that integrates public education, responsible media participation, and healthcare system leadership. When grounded in transparency, scientific clarity, and respect for autonomy, these efforts strengthen trust, reduce distress, and support informed decision-making across society.

REFERENCES

1. Wijdicks EFM, Varelas PN, Gronseth GS, Greer DM. Evidence-based guideline update: determining brain death in adults: report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. Neurology. 2010 Jun 8;74(23):1911-8.

2. Greer DM, Wang HH, Robinson JD, Varelas PN, Henderson GV, Wijdicks EFM. Variability of brain death determination guidelines in leading US neurologic institutions. Neurology. 2008 Jan 22;70(4):284-9.

3. President's Commission for the Study of Ethical Problems in Medicine and Biomedical and Behavioral Research. Defining death: medical, legal, and ethical issues in the determination of death. Washington (DC): US Government Printing Office; 1981.

4. Government of India. The Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act, 1994 (as amended in 2011). New Delhi: Ministry of Law and Justice; 2011. Available from: National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO).

5. Government of India. Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Rules, 2014. Gazette of India. New Delhi: Ministry of Health and Family Welfare; 2014. Available from: National Portal of India.

6. Rodrigue JR, Cornell DL, Howard RJ. Organ donation decision: comparison of donor and nondonor families. Am J Transplant. 2006 Jan;6(1):190-8.

7. Sque M, Long T, Payne S, Allardyce D. Why relatives do not donate organs for transplants: "sacrifice" or "gift of life"? J Adv Nurs. 2008 Jan;61(2):134-44.

8. Kentish-Barnes N, Chaize M, Seegers V, et al. Complicated grief after death of a relative in the intensive care unit. Eur Respir J. 2015 May;45(5):1341-52.

9. Laureys S, Boly M, Maquet P. Tracking the recovery of consciousness: new insights into disorders of consciousness. Prog Brain Res. 2009;177:329-38.

10. Bernat JL. The whole-brain concept of death remains optimum public policy. J Law Med Ethics. 2006;34(1):35-43.

11. Siminoff LA, Mercer MB. Public policy, public opinion, and consent for organ donation. Camb Q Healthc Ethics. 2001;10(4):377-86.

12. Padela AI, Zaganjor H. Relationships between Islamic religiosity and attitudes toward deceased organ donation among American Muslims. Am J Transplant. 2014 Jul;14(7):1557-65.

13. Cheng X, Lee J, Brown J. Social media misinformation about brain death and organ donation. J Med Internet Res. 2020 Oct 21;22(10):e20793.

14. Shemie SD, Hornby L, Baker A, et al. International guideline development for the determination of death. Intensive Care Med. 2014 Jun;40(6):788-97.

15. Matesanz R, Domínguez-Gil B. Strategies to optimize deceased organ donation. Transplant Rev (Orlando). 2007 Oct;21(4):177-88

16. Machado C, Perez J, Scherle C, Areu A, Pando A. Brain death diagnosis and apnea test safety. Ann Indian Acad Neurol. 2009 Jul;12(3):197-200. doi: 10.4103/0972-2327.56326. PMID: 20174506; PMCID: PMC2824942.

17. NHS Blood and Transplant. Organ Donation and Transplantation Activity Report 2022/23. London: NHSBT; 2023.

18. World Health Organization. Guiding Principles on Human Cell, Tissue and Organ Transplantation. Geneva: WHO; 2010.

19. Shemie SD, Doig C, Dickens B, et al. Brain arrest: the neurological determination of death. CMAJ. 2006;174(6 Suppl):S1-S30.

20. Morgan SE, Miller JK, Arasaratnam LA. The effects of media on organ donation attitudes and behaviors. Health Commun. 2008;23(6):534-542.

21. World Health Organization. Guidelines on Communication and Public Health Interventions. Geneva: WHO; 2017.

22. Alshammari A, Brown M. Attitudes that affect donation after brain death: cultural perspectives. Healthcare (Basel). 2023;11(13):1857.

23. Lee MY, Lee JS. Secondary school education and health literacy: a randomized controlled study. J Public Health Educ. 2019;41(2):200-210.

24. Wakefield CE, Watts KJ, Homewood J. Impact of social media donor campaigns on organ donation. Transplant Proc. 2010;42(4):1273-1275.

25. Smith AK, Dalawari P, Jones DM. Provider communication and family satisfaction in brain death discussions. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2022;63(2):e1-e6.

26. Haque A, Dogan E. Religious perspectives on death and donation: interfaith dialogues. J Relig Health. 2020;59(3):1442-1456.

27. Lewis A, Lord AS, Czeisler BM, Caplan A. Public education and misinformation on brain death in mainstream media. Clin Transplant. 2016;30(9):1082-1089.

28. Daoust A, Racine E. Depictions of brain death in the media: medical and ethical implications. J Med Ethics. 2014;40(4):253-259.

29. Busl KM. What does the public need to know about brain death? AMA J Ethics. 2020;22(12):E1047-E1054.

30. Hajjar WM, Bin Abdulqader SA, Aldayel SS, et al. Knowledge, attitudes, and beliefs toward organ donation among social media users. Transplant Proc. 2016;48(7):2418-2422.

CHAPTER 19

TECHNOLOGY, INNOVATION AND CONTINUOUS IMPROVEMENT

AUTHOR(s):

Dr. Sourabh Sharma, Dr. Surya Kumar Dube

Department and Affiliation

1. Assistant Professor, Department of Nephrology, SMS Medical College, Jaipur.
2. Professor, Neuroanaesthesiology and Critical Care, All India Institute of Medical Sciences (AIIMS), New Delhi.

INTRODUCTION

This chapter focuses on the role of technology, innovation, education, and continuous quality improvement in strengthening brain-stem death (BSD) certification and organ donation across all levels of healthcare. It adopts a systems-based approach that recognizes BSD certification as a shared institutional responsibility involving clinicians, nurses, transplant coordinators, administrators, and regulatory authorities. Key barriers include inconsistent implementation of protocols, inadequate training, limited participation of peripheral hospitals, suboptimal documentation and reporting, and insufficient mechanisms for monitoring and feedback. The chapter highlights the potential of technology-enabled solutions, including electronic BSD documentation systems, digital alerts for potential BSD cases, tele-ICU support, centralized reporting dashboards, e-learning platforms, and mobile decision-support tools. These innovations can improve standardization, facilitate remote expert guidance, enhance coordination with NOTTO, ROTTO, and SOTTO networks, and promote equitable participation across diverse healthcare settings. Particular emphasis is placed on expanding BSD certification and organ donation activities beyond tertiary transplant centres through simplified protocols, tele-mentoring, structured referral pathways, and targeted capacity-building initiatives.

The recommendations advocate for competency-based training, continuous professional development, institutional leadership engagement, and the integration of monitoring and evaluation frameworks into routine practice. Standardized indicators, regular audits, benchmarking, and non-punitive feedback mechanisms are essential to support continuous quality improvement. By combining technology, education, governance, and innovation within a coordinated national framework, India can strengthen BSD certification practices, improve deceased organ donation rates, and ensure equitable access to organ donation opportunities across both urban and rural healthcare systems.

A) STRATEGIES TO IMPROVE PARTICIPATION AND IMPLEMENTATION AT ALL LEVELS OF CRITICAL CARE

A.1. Institutional Participation Framework

Improving participation in BSD certification and deceased organ donation requires a structured, evidence-informed framework that aligns clinical practice with institutional

Participation in brain-stem death certification should be viewed as a system responsibility rather than an individual clinician's task, enabled through governance, standardized processes, trained human resources, and continuous feedback under national oversight.

governance, legal mandates, and national oversight mechanisms. Participation must be enabled and sustained across multiple tiers of the healthcare system, including clinicians, nursing staff, transplant coordinators, hospital administrators, and state and national authorities.

Evidence from implementation science, quality improvement literature, and organ donation programs demonstrates that passive dissemination of guidelines alone is insufficient. Instead, participation improves when clear accountability structures, standardized processes, continuous feedback, and enabling technologies are embedded into routine care. In the Indian context, characterized by heterogeneity in resources, workforce capacity, and institutional readiness, a context-sensitive, scalable framework is essential. Key pillars of an evidence-based participation framework include governance and leadership engagement, standardization of processes and documentation, capacity building and role clarity, performance measurement and audit, and feedback-driven continuous improvement. These pillars must function synergistically to ensure that BSD certification and organ donation processes are systematically identified, ethically conducted, legally compliant, and consistently implemented across public and private healthcare institutions. **Table 1** provides an evidence-based framework to improve participation of the stakeholders.

Domain	Core Strategy	Key Actions	Intended Outcome
Governance & Leadership	Institutional accountability	Appoint BSD nodal officer; include BSD in hospital policy; periodic leadership review	Clear ownership; sustained implementation
Legal & Policy Alignment	THOTA-compliant processes	Use NOTTO/SOTTO SOPs; mandatory BSD notification; standardized documentation	Legal compliance; reduced hesitation
Clinical Standardization	Protocol-driven practice	BSD checklists; uniform apnea testing; donor identification triggers	Reduced variability; timely certification
Human Resource Capacity	Competency development	Regular training; induction sensitization; simulation exercises	Improved confidence and skills
Interdisciplinary Coordination	Team-based approach	Early transplant coordinator involvement; MDT meetings; escalation pathways	Better coordination; higher conversion
Technology Enablement	Digital and tele-support	Electronic forms; tele-mentoring; reporting dashboards	Scalable implementation; data quality

Audit & Monitoring	Performance tracking	Regular audits; tracking BSD and consent rates; benchmarking	Identification of gaps; accountability
Feedback &Quality Improvement	Iterative improvement	Structured feedback; PDSA cycles; corrective actions	Continuous improvement
Awareness & Sensitization	Cultural and ethical engagement	Communication training; staff sensitization; family counselling	Improved acceptance and consent
Peripheral Integration	Expansion beyond tertiary ICUs	Simplified SOPs; referral linkages; remote support	Increased participation from districts

Table 1: *Evidence-Based Framework to Improve Participation in BSD Certification and Organ Donation*

A.2. Technology-Based Innovation Framework

Technology serves as a critical enabler for improving participation, consistency, and scalability of BSD certification and organ donation processes across India. Given the heterogeneity in infrastructure, specialist availability, and clinical experience across healthcare facilities, technology can bridge gaps between policy intent and bedside implementation. Evidence from organ donation programs and health-systems research demonstrates that digital tools, when integrated into routine workflows, can enhance case identification, reduce delays, improve documentation quality, and facilitate coordination between institutions and regulatory bodies. Importantly, technology should function as a decision-support and facilitation mechanism, rather than replacing clinical judgment. In the Indian context, technology-based participation enhancers must be low-cost, scalable, interoperable with existing hospital systems, and usable in peripheral and resource-limited settings. Key technological domains include electronic documentation, telemedicine support, digital reporting systems, learning platforms, and decision-support tools, all of which collectively strengthen participation and compliance **(Table 2).**

Technology should be leveraged as an enabling tool to standardize processes, extend expert support to peripheral centres, improve reporting, and promote continuous learning, while preserving clinical autonomy and ethical standards.

- *Electronic BSD forms should be encouraged.*
- *Tele-mentoring networks should be established.*
- *Digital reporting systems should be integrated with SOTTO/NOTTO.*

Technology Domain	Application	Level of Implementation	Primary Users	Participation Benefit
Electronic BSD Documentation	Digital BSD certification forms, checklists, and timestamps integrated into hospital systems	Tertiary, secondary hospitals	Treating physicians, ICU teams	Reduces documentation errors; improves legal compliance
Digital Trigger and Alert Systems	Electronic alerts for potential BSD cases based on clinical criteria (e.g., GCS, ventilation status)	ICUs, emergency departments	ICU clinicians, nursing staff	Improves early identification; reduces missed opportunities
Tele-ICU / Tele-Mentoring	Remote expert support for BSD diagnosis, donor management, and troubleshooting	Peripheral and district hospitals	Local clinicians, intensivists	Expands participation beyond tertiary centers
Centralized Reporting Dashboards	Real-time or periodic digital reporting of BSD cases to SOTTO/NOTTO	Institutional and state level	Hospital administration, regulators	Enhances transparency and accountability
Transplant Coordination Platforms	Digital tools for coordination between ICU teams, transplant coordinators, retrieval teams, and networks	Hospital and inter-hospital	Transplant coordinators	Improves coordination and reduces delays

E-Learning Management Systems (LMS)	Online modules, certification courses, assessments related to BSD and organ donation	All levels	Doctors, nurses, coordinators	Standardizes knowledge; supports self-learning
Video-Based Clinical Demonstrations	Recorded demonstrations of BSD examination, apnea testing, and family counselling	All levels	Clinicians, trainees	Improves skill acquisition and confidence
Mobile Applications	Apps providing SOPs, checklists, legal guidance, and contact points	Peripheral and mobile workforce	Clinicians, coordinators	Point-of-care guidance; improves adherence
Audit and Feedback Tools	Digital audit tools tracking BSD identification, certification, and conversion metrics	Institutional level	Quality teams, administrators	Enables continuous quality improvement

Table 2: *Technology-Based Participation Enhancers for BSD Certification and Organ Donation*

B) EXPANDING BRAIN-STEM DEATH CERTIFICATION AND ORGAN DONATION UPTAKE IN ICUS, INCLUDING PERIPHERAL CENTERS

B.1. Education and Capacity Building

Sustained improvement in BSD certification and deceased organ donation is fundamentally dependent on continuous education, structured awareness initiatives, and visible institutional leadership. Clinical knowledge alone is insufficient unless reinforced by leadership endorsement, ethical clarity, and organizational culture that prioritizes donation as a societal responsibility.

a. Education as a Core System Function

Education related to BSD certification must be structured, recurrent, and competency-based, extending beyond physicians to include nursing staff, transplant coordinators, medico-legal personnel, and hospital administrators. Educational interventions should address clinical competencies, including neurological examination, apnoea testing, and donor maintenance, legal and ethical frameworks under THOTA, communication skills, particularly for end-of-life discussions and family counselling, and operational workflows, including reporting and referral processes. Embedding BSD and organ donation training into institutional induction programs, continuing medical education (CME), and mandatory refresher courses ensures knowledge retention and standardization across cadres.

b. Awareness and Sensitization within Institutions

Awareness initiatives within healthcare institutions are critical to address attitudinal barriers, misconceptions, and ethical concerns that may impede BSD certification and donation discussions. Regular sensitization programs should reinforce the ethical legitimacy and legal validity of brain-stem death, address cultural and religious myths in a respectful, evidence-based manner, highlight the public health impact of deceased organ donation through data and success stories, and encourage early identification and timely referral of potential donors. Such initiatives are most effective when conducted as institution-wide programs, rather than isolated departmental activities, fostering a shared sense of responsibility.

c. Role of Institutional Leadership

Institutional leadership plays a decisive role in translating policy into practice. Hospital leadership must actively endorse BSD certification and organ donation as institutional priorities, allocate resources for training, transplant coordination, and digital infrastructure, establish clear accountability mechanisms through designated nodal officers and committees, and support a non-punitive culture that encourages reporting, audit, and learning. Leadership engagement signals organizational commitment, legitimizes clinical actions, and mitigates medico-legal anxieties among frontline staff.

d. Creating a Culture of Continuous Improvement

Education and awareness efforts should be embedded within a broader framework of continuous quality improvement, supported by regular audits, feedback sessions, and performance reviews. Institutions that integrate learning with monitoring and leadership oversight are more likely to achieve sustained participation, ethical consistency, and improved donation outcomes.

e. Training and Capacity Building

The expansion of BSD certification and deceased organ donation in India is critically dependent on structured training and sustained capacity building across the healthcare system. Variability in knowledge, clinical confidence, and familiarity with legal requirements remains a major barrier, particularly in peripheral and non-transplant centers. Addressing these gaps requires a nationally coordinated, competency-based training framework under NOTTO, integrated with state and institutional programs. Training and capacity building framework for BSD certification and organ donation has been depicted in **Table 3.**

Training Component	Content Focus	Training Modality	Target Participants	Expected Competency Outcome
Foundational Training	Concepts of BSD, legal recognition, ethical principles	Classroom sessions, online modules	Doctors, nurses, administrators	Conceptual clarity and legal confidence
Clinical Skills Training	Neurological examination, apnoea testing, donor maintenance	Hands-on workshops, simulation labs	ICU physicians, anaesthesiologists	Procedural accuracy and safety
Legal & Documentation Training	THOTA forms, certification panel roles, reporting pathways	Case-based discussions, checklists	Certifying doctors, quality teams	Error-free documentation
Communication Skills Training	End-of-life communication, family counselling	Role-play, standardized patient videos	Clinicians, transplant coordinators	Improved consent discussions
Coordinator Training	Donor coordination, logistics, inter-hospital communication	Dedicated certification programs	Transplant coordinators	Efficient case management
Peripheral Center	Simplified protocols, referral	Outreach workshops, tele-mentoring	District hospital teams	Expanded participation

Capacity Building	pathways, tele-support use			
Training of Trainers (TOT)	Teaching methods, mentorship, program leadership	National/state-level ToT programs	Identified faculty	Sustainable scaling
Refresher & CME Programs	Updates, audits, case reviews	Periodic CME, webinars	All cadres	Skill retention
Assessment & Certification	Knowledge and skill evaluation	Pre/post-tests, OSCEs	Trainees	Measurable competency

Table 3: *Training and Capacity Building Framework for BSD Certification and Organ Donation*

B.3. Expansion to Peripheral Centres

BSD certification and deceased organ donation beyond tertiary transplant hospitals to district hospitals, private nursing homes, and peripheral ICUs is essential to achieve equitable national coverage and optimize donor potential. A substantial proportion of patients with catastrophic brain injury receive ventilatory support in non-transplant and resource-limited settings, where opportunities for BSD certification and organ donation are frequently missed due to limited specialist availability, lack of confidence, and perceived legal or logistical barriers. Bridging peripheral centers requires a systems-based approach that combines simplified clinical pathways, remote expert support, clear referral mechanisms, and administrative facilitation under the oversight of NOTTO and SOTTOs.

a. Simplified and Context-Appropriate Protocols

Peripheral centers should adopt simplified, standardized SOPs for BSD identification and certification that are aligned with national guidelines but adapted to local resource availability. Clear triggers for suspecting BSD, stepwise checklists for clinical examination, and concise documentation formats can significantly improve uptake and reduce procedural hesitation.

b. Telemedicine and Remote Expert Support

Tele-ICU and tele-mentoring platforms play a pivotal role in enabling peripheral participation by providing real-time guidance for neurological examination and apnoea testing, supporting donor maintenance and physiological optimization, assisting in interpretation of ancillary tests, when required, and reinforcing clinician confidence and

legal assurance. Such support models allow peripheral ICUs to function as effective contributors to the national donation network, without requiring on-site transplant expertise.

c. Referral and Retrieval Linkages

Clearly defined referral pathways linking peripheral hospitals to designated retrieval and transplant centers are essential. This includes early notification to SOTTO/ROTTO upon BSD identification, access to trained transplant coordinators, and streamlined logistics for organ retrieval teams and transport. Administrative facilitation by state authorities is crucial to minimize delays and ensure seamless coordination.

d. Capacity Building and Incentivization

Sustainable engagement of peripheral centers depends on regular outreach training and mentorship, recognition of participating hospitals and teams, and inclusion of BSD certification metrics in institutional quality indicators. Such measures reinforce participation as a professional and institutional responsibility, rather than an optional activity.

- *Mandatory referral pathways.*
- *Tele-ICU support.*
- *Simplified BSD SOPs.*
- *Regional mentorship hubs.*

C) SELF-LEARNING

C.1. Continuous Professional Development Framework

Continuous professional development should complement formal training programs through self-directed learning, online educational resources, case-based discussions, video demonstrations, and periodic updates. NOTTO and SOTTOs should facilitate access to standardized educational resources to ensure sustained competency and knowledge translation across all levels of care. **Table 4** showcases a detailed self-learning framework.

Self-Learning Domain	Learning Content	Learning Resources / Tools	Target Participants	Expected Impact on Practice
Clinical Knowledge	BSD diagnostic criteria, apnoea testing, donor management	Guidelines, review articles, online modules	Physicians, ICU staff	Improved diagnostic accuracy
Legal & Ethical Understanding	THOTA provisions, certification procedures, ethical principles	National SOPs, legal briefs, FAQs	Certifying doctors, administrators	Legal confidence and compliance
Communication Skills	End-of-life discussions, family counselling	Case vignettes, recorded sessions	Clinicians, coordinators	Improved consent processes
Operational Processes	Reporting pathways, coordination with SOTTO/ROTTO	SOP documents, workflow diagrams	Coordinators, quality teams	Efficient case handling
Digital & Technology Use	Use of electronic forms, tele-support platforms	Tutorials, user manuals	All cadres	Better technology adoption
Reflective Practice	Case reviews, learning from missed opportunities	Morbidity meetings, self-audit tools	Clinical teams	Continuous improvement
Peripheral Center Learning	Simplified BSD protocols, referral processes	Mobile apps, tele-learning	District hospital teams	Expanded participation
Updates & Evidence Appraisal	Emerging evidence, policy updates	PubMed alerts, NOTTO updates	All cadres	Up-to-date practice

Table 4: *Self-Learning Framework for BSD Certification and Organ Donation*

D) VIDEO LECTURES

A detailed framework has been showcased in **Table 5.**

Video Lecture Domain	Content Focus	Target Audience	Learning Modality / Tools	Expected Outcome
Clinical Examination	Neurological assessment, brain-stem reflexes, apnoea testing	Physicians, ICU nurses	Demonstration videos, stepwise guides	Improved diagnostic accuracy and confidence
Donor Maintenance	Ventilator management, hemodynamic optimization, ICU care	ICU teams, coordinators	Scenario-based procedural videos	Standardized donor management
Legal and Documentation Procedures	THOTA compliance, certification panel roles, documentation forms	Certifying doctors, quality teams	Interactive video tutorials	Legal compliance and documentation accuracy
Family Communication & Counselling	Breaking bad news, seeking consent, ethical discussions	Clinicians, coordinators	Role-play videos, case vignettes	Improved family counselling and consent rates
Operational Workflow & Coordination	Referral pathways, SOTTO/ROTTO reporting, organ retrieval logistics	Coordinators, administrators	Process walkthrough videos	Efficient coordination and workflow adherence
Peripheral Center Adaptation	Simplified BSD protocols, tele-mentoring guidance	District and rural hospitals	Short-form instructional videos	Expanded participation and remote capability
Updates and Best Practices	Emerging evidence, new	All cadres	Curated NOTTO video library	Up-to-date knowledge

	SOPs, quality improvement tips			and improved practice

Table 5: *Video Lecture Framework for BSD Certification and Organ Donation*

E) CLINICAL AND LEGAL GOVERNANCE

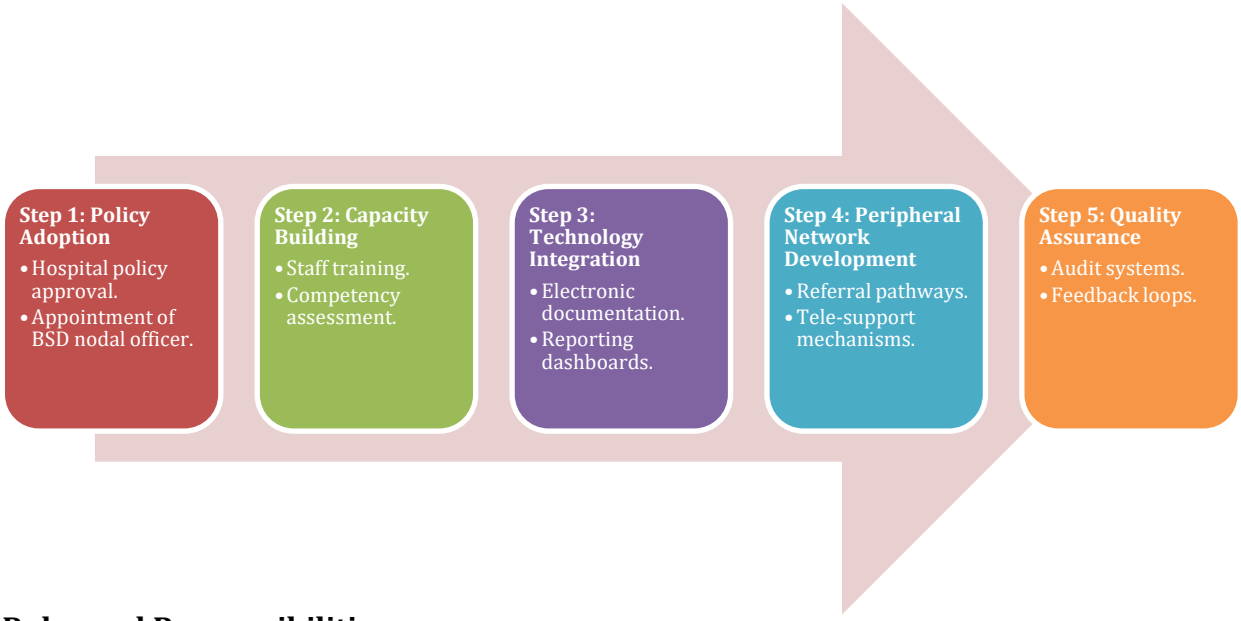
BSD certification in India is governed by a well-defined clinical, ethical, and legal framework under the THOTA and its associated rules. BSD is legally recognized as death, and its certification constitutes a mandatory clinical determination when prescribed criteria are fulfilled, independent of organ donation intent. Uniform application of this framework across healthcare institutions is essential to ensure ethical end-of-life care, legal compliance, public trust, and equitable access to organ donation opportunities, including from peripheral and non-transplant centers. The framework integrates statutory provisions, standardized clinical protocols, defined institutional responsibilities, and structured reporting mechanisms under NOTTO, ROTTO, and SOTTO **(Table 6).**

Framework Component	Legal Requirement	Operational Implications	Applicability Across Levels of Care
Legal Recognition of BSD	BSD is legally recognized as death under THOTA	BSD certification must be performed when criteria are met, regardless of donation outcome	All hospitals providing ventilatory support
Certification Authority	Certification by a prescribed panel of qualified medical practitioners	Availability of trained and notified certifying physicians must be ensured	Tertiary, secondary, district, and peripheral centers
Clinical Prerequisites	Irreversible coma of known aetiology; exclusion of confounders	Documentation of aetiology, temperature, drug clearance, metabolic stability	Uniform across all ICUs
Neurological Examination	Absence of brain-stem reflexes as per protocol	Standardized examination checklist to be followed	Requires training; feasible at all levels

Apnoea Testing	Mandatory apnea test performed according to guidelines	Protocol adherence and patient safety measures required	Can be performed in peripheral ICUs with training
Ancillary Tests	Permitted when clinical testing cannot be completed	Access to EEG or cerebral blood flow studies where indicated	Optional; referral or tele-guidance possible
Documentation	Use of prescribed THOTA/NOTTO forms	Complete, legible, and time-stamped records	Mandatory across all institutions
Reporting Mechanism	Mandatory notification of BSD cases to SOTTO/ ROTTO	Timely reporting and data submission	Enables state and national oversight
Organ Donation Pathway	Certification independent of donation decision	Family counselling initiated only after certification	Applicable even in non-transplant hospitals
Legal Protection	Compliance provides medico-legal safeguard	Reduces fear of litigation among clinicians	Uniform benefit across settings
Peripheral Center Enablement	Use of telemedicine and SOP adaptation	Remote expert support and referral linkages	Critical for district and rural hospitals

Table 6: *Clinical and Legal Framework for BSD Certification in India*

F) IMPLEMENTATION FRAMEWORK



Roles and Responsibilities

Hospital Administration	ICU Teams	Transplant Coordinators	SOTTO/ROTTO	NOTTO
•Governance •Infrastructure •Resource allocation	•Identification •Certification •Documentation	•Counselling •Reporting •Coordination	•Monitoring •Capacity building •Regional support	•National oversight •Benchmarking •Curriculum development

MONITORING AND EVALUATION

Effective expansion and sustainability of BSD certification and deceased organ donation require a structured system for continuous monitoring, periodic evaluation, and constructive feedback **(Table 7).** These elements are essential to ensure that legal mandates under THOTA are translated into consistent clinical practice and that gaps in identification, certification, reporting, and consent processes are systematically addressed. Monitoring should be embedded within routine hospital processes and aligned with standardized indicators defined by NOTTO and SOTTOs. Regular data collection allows institutions to

track BSD-related activities, assess adherence to clinical and legal protocols, and identify missed opportunities for certification or donation. Importantly, monitoring must encompass both process indicators (such as timeliness of certification and completeness of documentation) and outcome indicators (such as consent rates and organ retrieval).

Domain	Key Elements to Monitor	Methods / Tools	Responsible Level	Purpose / Outcome
BSD Identification	Patients meeting clinical triggers for suspected BSD	ICU logs, electronic alerts	Hospital	Detect missed BSD opportunities
BSD Certification Process	Number and timeliness of certifications; protocol adherence	Certification checklists, audit forms	Hospital / SOTTO	Improve consistency and compliance
Documentation Quality	Completeness and accuracy of THOTA-mandated forms	Periodic record review	Hospital	Legal robustness and standardization
Reporting Compliance	Timely notification of BSD cases to SOTTO/ROTTO	Digital reporting dashboards	Hospital / SOTTO	Strengthen surveillance and coordination
Family Approach & Consent	Number of families counselled; consent outcomes	Coordinator reports	Hospital / SOTTO	Improve communication strategies
Organ Retrieval & Utilization	Organs retrieved and transplanted	SOTTO/NOTTO databases	State / National	Assess system effectiveness
Performance Evaluation	Trends over time; inter-facility comparison	Periodic reviews, benchmarking	SOTTO / NOTTO	Identify gaps and best practices
Feedback Mechanisms	Structured feedback to teams and leadership	Meetings, written reports	Hospital / SOTTO	Enable corrective action
Quality Improvement	Implementation of corrective actions	PDSA cycles, RCA reports	Hospital	Continuous improvement

System Oversight	Regional and national performance trends	Aggregated analysis	NOTTO	Policy refinement and capacity building

Table 7: *Monitoring, Evaluation, and Feedback Framework for BSD Certification and Organ Donation*

INDICATORS

1. **Process Indicators**
   - Number of suspected BSD cases
   - BSD certifications completed
   - Documentation compliance
   - Reporting compliance

2. **Outcome Indicators**
   - Family consent rate
   - Organ retrieval rate
   - Organ utilization rate

3. **System Indicators**
   - Number of trained personnel
   - Number of participating hospitals
   - Number of tele-support consultations

REVIEW MECHANISM

1. Monthly institutional review
2. Quarterly SOTTO review
3. Annual NOTTO review
4. PDSA cycles
5. Root cause analyses

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

1. **Governance and Accountability Challenges**

   Although THOTA and the NOTTO–ROTTO–SOTTO framework provides a strong regulatory foundation, implementation varies considerably across institutions. In

many hospitals, the absence of designated leadership, clearly defined responsibilities, and institutional oversight mechanisms results in inconsistent BSD identification, certification, reporting, and follow-up processes.

2. **Clinical Standardization Challenges**

   Variability in the application of BSD protocols, documentation practices, and clinical workflows continues to exist across healthcare facilities. Differences in experience, training, and availability of standardized checklists may contribute to delays in certification, procedural inconsistencies, and missed opportunities for organ donation.

3. **Human Resource and Training Challenges**

   Knowledge gaps regarding BSD certification, legal requirements, donor management, and family communication remain important barriers. Limited access to structured training programs and variable exposure to BSD cases, particularly in non-transplant centres, can adversely affect clinician confidence and participation.

4. **Technology and Digital Infrastructure Gaps**

   The adoption of electronic documentation systems, digital reporting platforms, and telemedicine support remains uneven across healthcare settings. Limited digital infrastructure and interoperability challenges may restrict timely communication, standardized reporting, and access to expert guidance, particularly in resource-constrained environments.

5. **Peripheral Centre Integration Challenges**

   A substantial proportion of patients with catastrophic brain injury are managed outside tertiary transplant centres; however, participation of district hospitals and peripheral ICUs remains limited. Challenges include inadequate specialist availability, uncertainty regarding legal processes, weak referral linkages, and limited access to transplant coordination services.

6. **Monitoring and Quality Assurance Challenges**

   Many institutions lack structured systems for monitoring BSD-related activities, auditing compliance, and evaluating outcomes. The absence of standardized performance indicators, regular feedback mechanisms, and quality-improvement processes can hinder identification of gaps and limit opportunities for system-wide improvement.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. **BSD certification is a healthcare system responsibility.**

   Successful implementation requires coordinated participation of clinicians, nurses, transplant coordinators, administrators, and regulatory bodies rather than reliance on individual practitioners alone.

2. **Technology should facilitate standardization and reporting.**

   Electronic documentation, digital alerts, and centralized reporting systems can improve compliance, reduce errors, and strengthen coordination with NOTTO, ROTTOs, and SOTTOs.

3. **Tele-ICU and tele-mentoring models can expand participation.**

   Remote expert support can assist peripheral hospitals in BSD certification, donor management, and decision-making, thereby reducing geographical barriers.

4. **Continuous training is essential for competency development.**

   Regular, competency-based training programs help maintain clinical skills, improve legal confidence, and promote consistent application of BSD protocols.

5. **Self-learning complements formal educational initiatives.**

   Access to online modules, guidelines, case reviews, and video-based learning resources enables healthcare professionals to continuously update their knowledge and skills.

6. **Peripheral centres are critical contributors to the donation ecosystem.**

   Integrating district hospitals and non-transplant centres through simplified protocols and referral pathways can substantially expand donor identification opportunities.

7. **Monitoring should be based on standardized indicators.**

   Tracking BSD identification, certification, reporting, consent, and organ utilization metrics is essential for measuring performance and identifying gaps.

8. **Feedback mechanisms should be constructive and non-punitive.**

Regular feedback encourages learning, promotes accountability, and supports corrective actions without creating fear of blame or litigation.

9. **Institutional leadership drives sustainability and accountability.**

   Visible commitment from hospital leadership is necessary to allocate resources, support training, strengthen governance, and foster a culture of donation.

10. **Continuous quality improvement is fundamental to national success.**

    Regular audits, benchmarking, and iterative quality-improvement processes help ensure sustained enhancement of BSD certification and deceased organ donation practices across India.

CONCLUSION

Strengthening brain-stem death (BSD) certification and expanding deceased organ donation in India requires a structural shift from treating BSD as an individual clinician's task to embedding it as a shared system responsibility. Overcoming longstanding barriers—such as inconsistent clinical practice, knowledge gaps, and geographical disparities—demands a synchronized approach that combines robust governance, technological innovation, structured education, and continuous quality monitoring across all healthcare tiers.

Central to this transformation is the integration of digital health solutions. Leveraging electronic documentation, automated alert triggers, e-learning platforms, and centralized reporting dashboards directly linked with NOTTO, ROTTO, and SOTTO networks will streamline legal compliance, reduce documentation errors, and ensure institutional transparency. Crucially, technology bridges the divide between urban tertiary centers and peripheral hospitals. Through tele-ICU support, tele-mentoring, simplified protocols, and clear referral pathways, district level and non-transplant ICUs can be effectively integrated into the national donation ecosystem, significantly expanding potential donor identification.

Sustained improvement also relies on human resource capacity. Transitioning from passive guideline dissemination to structured, competency-based training, self-learning modules, and video demonstrations builds clinical confidence, ensures legal clarity under THOTA, and enhances crucial end-of-life communication skills. Visible institutional leadership is paramount to drive these initiatives, fostering a supportive, non-punitive culture that encourages active participation.

Finally, long-term sustainability depends on continuous clinical and legal governance anchored by robust monitoring, evaluation, and feedback mechanisms. Tracking

standardized process and outcome indicators through periodic audits and Plan-Do-Study-Act (PDSA) cycles allows institutions to convert missed opportunities into actionable insights.

By unifying standardized protocols, digital innovation, targeted training, and institutional accountability under a coordinated national framework, India can establish an equitable, transparent, and high-performing deceased organ donation system capable of providing life-saving opportunities to patients nationwide.

REFERENCES

1. Gupta D, Garg K, Mishra S, Mazzeo AT, Joseph M, Manikandan S, et al. Disparities in Brain Death Certification Knowledge among Indian Physicians Involved in Organ Donation. Neurol India. 2025 Sep 1;73(5):979-985. doi: 10.4103/neurol-india.Neurol-India-D-24-00561. Epub 2025 Sep 13. PMID: 40946278.

2. Palaniswamy V, Sadhasivam S, Selvakumaran C, Jayabal P, Ananth SR. Organ donation after brain death in India: A trained intensivist is the key to success. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2016 Oct;20(10):593-596. doi: 10.4103/0972-5229.192049. PMID: 27829715; PMCID: PMC5073774.

3. Vincent BP, Randhawa G, Cook E. A qualitative study exploring barriers and facilitators in deceased organ donation process among transplant coordinators in India. Sci Rep. 2024 Nov 20;14(1):28773. doi: 10.1038/s41598-024-80290-9. PMID: 39567632; PMCID: PMC11579380.

4. Zirpe KG, Tiwari AM, Pandit RA, Govil D, Mishra RC, Samavedam S, et al. Recommendations for Evaluation and Selection of Deceased Organ Donor: Position Statement of ISCCM. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2022 Oct;26(Suppl 2):S43-S50. doi: 10.5005/jp-journals-10071-24190. PMID: 36896361; PMCID: PMC9989874.

5. Zirpe K, Gurav S. Brain Death and Management of Potential Organ Donor: An Indian Perspective. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2019 Jun;23(Suppl 2):S151-S156. doi: 10.5005/jp-journals-10071-23194. PMID: 31485125; PMCID: PMC6707496.

6. Gardiner D, Shemie S, Manara A, Opdam H. International perspective on the diagnosis of death. Br J Anaesth. 2012 Jan;108 Suppl 1:i14-28. doi: 10.1093/bja/aer397. PMID: 22194427.

7. Kumar L. Brain death and care of the organ donor. J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol. 2016 Apr-Jun;32(2):146-52. doi: 10.4103/0970-9185.168266. PMID: 27275040; PMCID: PMC4874065.

8. Dasari P, Reddy M, Parmar DS, Britto C. Tele-ICU enabled management of an organ donor in an under-resourced setting. BMJ Case Rep. 2024 Apr 16;17(4):e255348. doi: 10.1136/bcr-2023-255348. PMID: 38627056; PMCID: PMC11029231.

9. Tam WW, Suen LK, Chan HY. Knowledge, attitudes and commitment toward organ donation among nursing students in Hong Kong. Transplant Proc. 2012 Jun;44(5):1196-200. doi: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2012.01.108. PMID: 22663983.

10. Vincent BP, Randhawa G, Cook E. Barriers towards deceased organ donation among Indians living globally: an integrative systematic review using narrative synthesis. BMJ Open. 2022 May 27;12(5):e056094. doi: 10.1136/bmjopen-2021-056094. PMID: 35623762; PMCID: PMC9150163.

11. Wig N, Gupta P, Kailash S. Awareness of brain death and organ transplantation among select Indian population. J Assoc Physicians India. 2003 May;51:455-8. PMID: 12974425.

12. Monitor brain death cases in ICUs to improve organ donation rate: Centre to states. Policy advisory linked to NOTTO/SOTTO practices. Economic Times Healthworld. 2024.

CHAPTER 20

FUTURE DIRECTIONS IN BRAIN-STEM DEATH DECLARATION: AN INDIAN PERSPECTIVE

AUTHOR(s):

Dr. Nameet Jerath, Dr. Kapil Zirpe, Dr. Rahul Pandit, Dr. Surya Kumar Dube

Department and Affiliation

1. Sr. Consultant, Pediatric Pulmonology and Critical Care, IP Apollo Hospital, New Delhi.
2. Head, Neuro Trauma Intensive Care Unit, Grant Medical Foundation, Ruby Hall Clinic, Pune.
3. Chair Critical Care, Emergency and all Reliance Foundation Healthcare Initiatives, Sir H. N. Reliance Foundation Hospital, Mumbai, Maharashtra.
4. Professor, Neuroanaesthesiology and Critical Care, All India Institute of Medical Sciences (AIIMS), New Delhi.

INTRODUCTION

The determination of death has evolved considerably with advances in critical care medicine. The widespread availability of mechanical ventilation, extracorporeal organ support and modern neurocritical care have made it possible to maintain cardiorespiratory function in patients who have sustained irreversible and catastrophic brain injury. Consequently, the traditional cardiopulmonary definition of death no longer adequately addresses all clinical situations encountered in intensive care practice. Over the past five decades, neurological criteria for the determination of death have become widely accepted across the world as an equivalent and legally valid means of declaring death. [1–5]

The concept of brain death emerged following the landmark Harvard Ad Hoc Committee report in 1968, which recognized irreversible coma as a new criterion for death. [4] Since then, the understanding of neurological determination of death (NDD) has undergone substantial refinement. Contemporary international guidelines emphasize that death is determined by the permanent loss of the capacity for consciousness, brainstem reflexes and the ability to breathe independently, confirmed through a rigorous clinical examination performed under carefully defined conditions. [1,2,5]

India adopted the concept of Brain-Stem Death through the Transplantation of Human Organs Act (THOA), 1994, subsequently amended by the Transplantation of Human Organs (Amendment) Act, 2011, and operationalized through the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Rules, 2014, primarily to facilitate deceased organ donation. (6–8) While this legislation represented a significant milestone for transplantation in the country, it also resulted in Brain-Stem Death becoming closely associated with organ donation in both medical practice and public perception. Unlike many jurisdictions where neurological determination of death is recognized as legal death irrespective of transplantation, Brain-Stem Death in India continues to be viewed predominantly within the framework of organ donation. [9,10,14]

This legislative distinction has important practical implications. In many intensive care units, formal Brain-Stem Death certification is pursued only when organ donation is being considered. Conversely, when families decline donation, clinicians may be uncertain about proceeding with certification despite the patient fulfilling all accepted neurological criteria for death. Such inconsistencies create confusion among healthcare professionals, distress for families, and uncertainty regarding the appropriate withdrawal of physiological support following death. [9,10,14]

Over the past three decades, however, critical care practice in India has evolved considerably. Dedicated intensive care specialists now routinely perform complex neurological assessments, national professional societies have developed guidance on the determination and management of Brain-Stem Death, and organ donation programmes have become increasingly organized through the National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO). [8–10,20] These developments provide an opportunity to re-examine

the existing legislative framework and consider reforms that better reflect contemporary medical practice while maintaining public confidence and ethical integrity.

A) TOWARDS A UNIVERSAL DETERMINATION OF DEATH

Perhaps the most fundamental question for the future of Brain-Stem Death declaration in India is whether neurological determination of death should continue to remain legislatively linked to organ transplantation.

From a biological, ethical and legal perspective, the determination of death should be independent of any subsequent decisions regarding organ donation. The diagnosis of Brain-Stem Death is established through objective clinical criteria demonstrating the irreversible cessation of all functions of the brainstem. Once these criteria have been fulfilled, the individual has died, irrespective of whether organs are subsequently donated. Organ donation therefore represents a decision that follows death rather than the reason for declaring death. [1,19,22,23]

This distinction is reflected in international practice. The World Brain Death Project reaffirmed that neurological determination of death is a clinical diagnosis and should be recognized as legal death independent of transplantation[1]. Similar principles underpin legislation and professional guidance in the United Kingdom, Canada, Australia and the United States, where death may be determined using either circulatory or neurological criteria, with both carrying equal legal status. [5,11,17–19]

In contrast, the current Indian framework continues to create an unintended association between Brain-Stem Death and organ donation. As a result, two patients with identical neurological examinations may be managed differently depending solely on whether the family consents to organ donation. Such variability is difficult to justify clinically and risks undermining public confidence in the determination of death itself. [9,10,14]

Future legislative reform should therefore consider recognizing Brain-Stem Death as legal death irrespective of transplantation. Decoupling the determination of death from the process of organ donation would provide greater clarity for clinicians, promote consistency in practice and reinforce the principle that the diagnosis of death is based on established medical criteria rather than the possibility of organ retrieval. Such a change may also improve public understanding by reducing the perception that Brain-Stem Death is declared primarily to facilitate transplantation. [1,19,22,23,25]

Importantly, separating these processes does not diminish the importance of organ donation. On the contrary, clearer distinction between death determination and donation may strengthen public trust by demonstrating that the diagnosis of death is reached independently and objectively before any discussion regarding transplantation takes place. [11,24,25]

B) SIMPLIFYING THE CERTIFICATION PROCESS

The process of Brain-Stem Death certification in India has remained largely unchanged since the enactment of THOA in 1994. Under the current legislation, certification requires a panel of four medical practitioners comprising the treating physician, an independent registered medical practitioner, the medical administrator (or nominee), and a neurologist or neurosurgeon, or in their absence, another nominated specialist. [6–8]

When these provisions were introduced, they reflected an appropriately cautious approach. Neurological determination of death was relatively unfamiliar to many clinicians, specialist neurological expertise was limited outside tertiary centres, and public confidence in deceased organ donation was still evolving. Requiring multiple independent physicians was therefore intended to ensure transparency and minimize diagnostic error. [6,7,14]

Contemporary critical care practice, however, differs substantially from that of three decades ago. Brain-Stem Death determination is now based on a structured and reproducible clinical examination, with clearly defined prerequisites, standardized assessment of brainstem reflexes and formal apnoea testing. These procedures are routinely performed by intensivists managing patients with devastating brain injury, and there is considerable international experience demonstrating that, when undertaken by appropriately trained clinicians, neurological determination of death is both reliable and reproducible. [1–3,13]

Recognizing these developments, several countries have shifted away from specifying particular medical specialties and instead emphasize physician competency. Current international consensus guidelines recommend that clinicians performing neurological determination of death should possess appropriate training, experience and institutional credentialing rather than belonging to a particular specialty. [2,5,17,18]

Against this background, India may wish to consider whether the existing four-member certification panel remains necessary. A competency-based model involving two independent physicians who have completed formal training in neurological determination of death could simplify the certification process without compromising diagnostic accuracy or public confidence. Such an approach would be particularly valuable in district hospitals and resource-limited settings, where assembling the current certification panel may result in unnecessary delays. [2,5,11,17]

Any move towards reducing the number of certifying physicians, however, should be accompanied by robust safeguards. Standardized national training, competency assessment, regular recertification and institutional quality assurance mechanisms would be essential to ensure consistency across centres. The emphasis should shift from the number or specialty designation of clinicians to demonstrable expertise in performing neurological determination of death. [2,10,17]

Ultimately, simplification of the certification process should be viewed not as a relaxation of standards but as an evolution towards a competency-based system that reflects

contemporary critical care practice while preserving the transparency and public trust upon which neurological determination of death depends. [1,2,25]

C) ANCILLARY TESTING IN BRAIN-STEM DEATH DETERMINATION

The diagnosis of Brain-Stem Death remains fundamentally a clinical one, based on the demonstration of irreversible loss of all brainstem function through a structured neurological examination performed under carefully defined conditions. Accordingly, ancillary investigations should not be regarded as substitutes for a comprehensive clinical assessment but rather as complementary tools reserved for situations in which the clinical examination or apnoea testing cannot be completed safely or interpreted with confidence. Current international consensus guidelines, including the World Brain Death Project and the 2023 American Academy of Neurology (AAN) consensus guideline, emphasize that neurological determination of death should, wherever possible, be established on clinical grounds alone, with ancillary testing used selectively in appropriately defined circumstances [1,2].

In the Indian context, this principle has also been endorsed by the Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine (ISCCM), whose position statements recommend that ancillary investigations should be reserved for situations in which components of the neurological examination cannot be reliably completed or where important confounding factors cannot be adequately excluded [10,26]. Such circumstances include severe maxillofacial trauma preventing assessment of brainstem reflexes, high cervical spinal cord injury, persistent metabolic or pharmacological confounders that cannot be corrected within a reasonable timeframe, inability to safely perform apnoea testing because of profound hypoxaemia or haemodynamic instability, and selected patients receiving extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO). Ancillary testing may also be appropriate when uncertainty exists regarding the interpretation of clinical findings or when repeat examination is impractical [1,2,10,26].

Among the available investigations, conventional four-vessel cerebral angiography has historically been regarded as the reference standard for demonstrating the absence of intracranial blood flow [1,2,3]. Complete absence of cerebral circulation provides strong supportive evidence for neurological determination of death. However, its invasive nature, requirement for specialized personnel, exposure to iodinated contrast media and limited availability outside tertiary centres restrict its routine application in many parts of India. Consequently, while cerebral angiography remains an important confirmatory investigation in selected cases, it is unlikely to represent a practical first-line ancillary investigation for widespread use [1,2].

Computed tomography angiography (CTA) has emerged as an attractive alternative because of its widespread availability, rapid acquisition and familiarity among radiologists. CTA assesses cerebral arterial opacification and, when interpreted using validated diagnostic criteria, can provide evidence of cerebral circulatory arrest [1,2,13]. Although CTA has been incorporated into clinical practice in several countries, variation persists regarding imaging

protocols and interpretation criteria. Further validation within the Indian healthcare setting would strengthen confidence in its broader adoption, particularly given the increasing availability of multidetector CT scanners across secondary and tertiary hospitals [1,2,10].

Computed tomography perfusion (CTP) may further enhance diagnostic accuracy by directly evaluating cerebral perfusion rather than vascular opacification alone. Preliminary studies suggest that CTP may demonstrate improved sensitivity in situations where CTA findings remain equivocal [2,13]. However, limited availability, increased technical complexity and the absence of standardized diagnostic thresholds currently restrict its routine use. Further multicentre research is required before CTP can be recommended as a standard ancillary investigation in India [2].

Nuclear medicine cerebral perfusion imaging using technetium-99m-labelled tracers remains another well-established method for demonstrating absent cerebral blood flow [1,2,3]. The characteristic "hollow skull" or "empty skull" appearance provides highly specific evidence of absent intracranial perfusion. Nevertheless, dependence on nuclear medicine facilities, limited accessibility outside major academic centres and logistical challenges associated with transporting critically ill patients limit its widespread implementation. These studies are therefore likely to remain confined to specialized institutions [1,2].

Transcranial Doppler ultrasonography (TCD) offers several practical advantages, particularly within intensive care units. As a non-invasive bedside investigation that can be repeated serially without radiation exposure or patient transfer, TCD is especially attractive in resource-limited settings. Characteristic Doppler waveforms, including reverberating flow, systolic spikes and eventual absence of detectable intracranial flow signals, are consistent with cerebral circulatory arrest [1,2,3]. However, the diagnostic accuracy of TCD remains dependent upon operator expertise and adequate acoustic windows, which may not be obtainable in all patients. Expansion of formal TCD training programmes for intensivists and neurosonologists could substantially enhance its utility within the Indian critical care environment [10,26].

Electroencephalography (EEG), although historically included in some brain death protocols, occupies a more limited role in contemporary practice. EEG evaluates cortical electrical activity but does not directly assess brainstem function, which remains the legal basis for Brain-Stem Death determination under Indian legislation [6–8]. Consequently, EEG should not be considered a replacement for the clinical examination or tests assessing cerebral blood flow. Its role is largely confined to selected situations where supplementary information regarding cortical function is considered valuable [1–3].

As neuroimaging technology continues to evolve, future Indian guidelines should focus not on expanding the indiscriminate use of ancillary investigations but on providing greater clarity regarding their appropriate indications. Unnecessary reliance on ancillary testing may increase healthcare costs, delay death determination and inadvertently weaken confidence in the clinical diagnosis. Conversely, judicious use of validated ancillary investigations in carefully selected circumstances can improve diagnostic certainty, enhance clinician confidence and provide reassurance to families when clinical examination alone

cannot be completed [1,2,10,26]. Ultimately, a carefully performed neurological examination should remain the cornerstone of Brain-Stem Death determination, with ancillary testing serving as an important adjunct rather than a replacement [1–3].

D) WITHDRAWAL OF LIFE-SUSTAINING THERAPY AFTER BRAIN-STEM DEATH

One of the most challenging aspects of Brain-Stem Death determination in India arises after death has been certified but the family declines organ donation. Although the patient has fulfilled all accepted neurological criteria for death, uncertainty often persists regarding the appropriate continuation or withdrawal of physiological support. In many intensive care units, mechanical ventilation and other organ support measures are continued until circulatory arrest occurs, largely because clinicians remain concerned about the legal and medicolegal implications of discontinuing treatment. This uncertainty can result in prolonged utilization of intensive care resources, emotional distress for families and healthcare teams, and inconsistency in clinical practice [6–10,14,26, 27].

It is important to distinguish the determination of death from decisions relating to organ donation or end-of-life care. Neurological determination of death is a medical diagnosis established through a rigorous clinical examination demonstrating the irreversible cessation of all brainstem function. Once these criteria have been fulfilled, the individual is legally and medically dead. Organ donation is a separate process that may be considered only after death has been declared and should never influence the determination of death itself. This distinction has been consistently emphasized in international consensus statements, including the World Brain Death Project and the 2023 American Academy of Neurology guideline, both of which recognize neurological determination of death as equivalent to death determined by circulatory criteria [1,2]. The ethical and legal foundations for this distinction have also been articulated in the President's Commission report and subsequent work by Bernat, which recognize neurological determination of death as biologically and legally equivalent to circulatory determination of death [19,22,23].

In India, however, the close legislative association between Brain-Stem Death and organ transplantation has contributed to uncertainty when organ donation is not pursued. Because Brain-Stem Death was introduced through the Transplantation of Human Organs Act primarily to facilitate deceased organ donation, many clinicians continue to perceive ongoing physiological support as necessary until spontaneous cardiac arrest occurs, particularly in patients whose families decline donation. This practice is not only inconsistent with the biological concept of death but also creates avoidable ethical and logistical challenges within busy intensive care units [6–10,14,26].

Once Brain-Stem Death has been formally certified, continuation of mechanical ventilation no longer constitutes treatment of a living patient. Rather, it temporarily maintains circulation in an individual who has already been declared dead. Continued physiological support may be appropriate for a limited period when organ donation is planned and

consent has been obtained, as it preserves organ perfusion until retrieval can be undertaken [10,24,26]. In the absence of organ donation, however, there is no therapeutic benefit to ongoing life-sustaining interventions. Prolonged continuation of such support may unnecessarily occupy scarce critical care resources while creating false expectations among family members regarding the patient's condition [19,22–24].

Future legislative reform in India should therefore explicitly clarify that withdrawal of life-sustaining therapy following confirmed Brain-Stem Death is appropriate clinical practice irrespective of whether organ donation is pursued. Such clarification would provide reassurance to healthcare professionals, promote consistency across institutions and distinguish the management of deceased patients from the separate ethical considerations surrounding withdrawal of treatment in living patients with severe neurological injury. Importantly, this recommendation should not be interpreted as an expansion of end-of-life decision-making but rather as a recognition that treatment decisions following certified Brain-Stem Death concern the management of a deceased individual [19,22,23,25].

Communication with families remains central to this process. Sensitive and transparent discussions should clearly explain the diagnosis of Brain-Stem Death, the examinations undertaken, the legal implications of death determination and the distinction between death certification and organ donation. Families should be reassured that the diagnosis has been established independently of any consideration of transplantation and that decisions regarding physiological support follow only after death has been formally confirmed. Such an approach is likely to strengthen public trust, reduce misconceptions surrounding Brain-Stem Death and facilitate compassionate care at the end of life [10,24–26, 27].

Ultimately, recognizing withdrawal of physiological support following confirmed Brain-Stem Death as standard clinical practice would align Indian practice with contemporary international standards while ensuring that scarce intensive care resources are used responsibly and that the care provided to families remains both ethically and medically appropriate [1,2,19,22–25].

E) BRAIN-STEM DEATH ON THE MEDICAL CERTIFICATE OF CAUSE OF DEATH

An important but often overlooked aspect of neurological determination of death is its accurate documentation on the Medical Certificate of Cause of Death (MCCD). While considerable attention has been directed towards standardizing the clinical diagnosis of Brain-Stem Death, relatively little emphasis has been placed on how this diagnosis is subsequently recorded in official mortality documentation. As a result, current certification practices frequently fail to reflect the true mechanism by which death has been determined [6–10,19].

In many institutions, the immediate cause of death is recorded as "cardiorespiratory arrest" or "cardiac arrest," despite the patient having previously fulfilled all accepted neurological

criteria for Brain-Stem Death. Although circulatory arrest inevitably follows the withdrawal of physiological support, it represents the terminal physiological event rather than the underlying mechanism by which death was established. Recording cardiorespiratory arrest as the cause of death therefore provides limited clinical or epidemiological value, as every death ultimately culminates in cessation of cardiac activity (19,22,23).

Internationally, where neurological determination of death is recognized independently of organ donation, death certification reflects the underlying disease process together with the accepted mode of death determination. This approach provides greater clarity for clinicians, families, public health authorities and researchers, while reinforcing the principle that neurological criteria constitute a legally recognized pathway to death equivalent to circulatory criteria [1,5,11,17–19].

In India, future revisions to the Medical Certificate of Cause of Death and the broader Registration of Births and Deaths framework could explicitly recognize Brain-Stem Death as the mode by which death has been determined. For example, the immediate cause of death may be documented as "Brain-Stem Death (neurological determination of death)", while the underlying disease process—such as severe traumatic brain injury, aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage, intracerebral haemorrhage or hypoxic-ischaemic brain injury—is recorded as the antecedent cause leading to death. Such documentation would more accurately reflect the clinical sequence of events while remaining consistent with established principles of death certification [6–10,19,22].

Adopting this approach would offer several important advantages. First, it would improve the quality of national mortality data by enabling more accurate identification of deaths resulting from catastrophic neurological injury. Second, it would facilitate epidemiological research into the burden and causes of Brain-Stem Death, thereby informing injury prevention strategies, neurocritical care planning and organ donation programmes. Third, consistent documentation would reduce ambiguity for clinicians, medicolegal authorities and families by clearly distinguishing neurological determination of death from the inevitable subsequent cessation of cardiac activity [9,10,19,22,23].

Perhaps most importantly, recognizing Brain-Stem Death within routine death certification would reinforce the concept that neurological determination represents death itself rather than merely a step preceding organ donation. This subtle but significant shift in documentation could contribute to broader societal acceptance of neurological criteria for death and support the gradual transition towards a universal legal definition of death in India [19,22,23,25].

Although implementation would require legislative review, revision of certification formats and education of certifying medical practitioners, such changes would represent a logical extension of contemporary critical care practice. As India continues to modernize its approach to neurological determination of death, ensuring that death certification accurately reflects established medical and legal principles should be regarded as an essential component of future reform [6–10,19,25].

F) FUTURE RESEARCH PRIORITIES

Despite significant advances in the understanding and clinical application of Brain-Stem Death determination, several important knowledge gaps remain within the Indian healthcare system. Much of the existing evidence informing current practice originates from North America, Europe and Australia, while published Indian data are comparatively limited. As neurological determination of death becomes increasingly integrated into critical care practice, there is a pressing need for high-quality Indian research to inform future policy, strengthen public confidence and ensure that recommendations are appropriate for the country's diverse healthcare settings [1,2,10,14,26].

One of the foremost priorities is the establishment of a national registry for Brain-Stem Death determination. At present, India lacks comprehensive data regarding the number of patients undergoing Brain-Stem Death assessment, the time taken to complete certification, utilization of ancillary investigations, rates of organ donation following certification and regional variations in clinical practice. A national registry, potentially coordinated through the National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO), would provide valuable epidemiological data, facilitate benchmarking between institutions and identify barriers to timely and consistent implementation of Brain-Stem Death protocols [9,10,20].

Further research is also required to evaluate the performance of ancillary investigations within the Indian context. Although computed tomography angiography, transcranial Doppler ultrasonography and nuclear medicine cerebral perfusion studies are increasingly used internationally, their diagnostic accuracy, feasibility and cost-effectiveness require validation across Indian healthcare settings. Prospective multicentre studies comparing ancillary investigations with standard clinical assessment would help establish evidence-based recommendations tailored to local infrastructure and resource availability [1–3,10,26].

The impact of structured education and competency-based training programmes also warrants systematic evaluation. While current guidelines emphasize the importance of clinician training, relatively little evidence exists regarding the most effective educational strategies for improving confidence, diagnostic accuracy and adherence to standardized protocols. Research examining simulation-based training, credentialling programmes and periodic competency assessments could inform the development of a nationally standardized certification framework [2,5,10,17,18].

Equally important is research exploring public understanding and societal attitudes towards Brain-Stem Death. Misconceptions surrounding neurological determination of death continue to influence family decision-making and may contribute to reluctance regarding both Brain-Stem Death acceptance and organ donation. Qualitative studies involving patients' families, healthcare professionals, community representatives and religious leaders could provide valuable insights into cultural, ethical and communication challenges unique to the Indian setting. Such evidence would support the development of targeted public education initiatives that promote greater awareness while respecting cultural and religious diversity [9,10,14,24–26].

Health systems research should also examine the broader implications of legislative reform. Studies evaluating the effects of recognizing Brain-Stem Death as legal death independent of organ donation, simplifying certification processes or introducing revised death certification practices would provide important evidence to guide policymakers. Economic analyses assessing intensive care resource utilization before and after implementation of such reforms may further demonstrate their impact on healthcare efficiency and resource allocation [19,22,23,25].

Finally, greater collaboration between intensivists, neurologists, neurosurgeons, transplant physicians, forensic specialists, ethicists and legal scholars will be essential in shaping future policy. Brain-Stem Death determination extends beyond the boundaries of any single discipline, and meaningful progress will depend upon multidisciplinary research that integrates clinical evidence with ethical, legal and societal perspectives [1,10,19,22–25].

As India continues to strengthen its critical care and transplantation programmes, investment in high-quality research should remain a central priority. Robust national evidence will not only inform future guidelines but also enhance transparency, strengthen public trust and support the development of a modern, equitable and scientifically grounded framework for neurological determination of death .

CONCLUSION

India has made remarkable progress in establishing a legal and clinical framework for Brain-Stem Death determination since the enactment of the Transplantation of Human Organs Act in 1994. Over the past three decades, advances in critical care medicine, neurocritical care and transplantation have strengthened both the scientific basis and the practical application of neurological determination of death. Nevertheless, the current framework continues to reflect its original purpose of facilitating deceased organ donation, rather than recognizing Brain-Stem Death as a universal and independent determination of death.

As critical care practice continues to evolve, there is an opportunity to modernize the existing framework in a manner that is scientifically robust, ethically sound and suited to the realities of contemporary Indian healthcare. Future reforms should seek to clearly separate the determination of death from decisions regarding organ donation, recognizing that Brain-Stem Death constitutes legal death irrespective of whether organ donation is ultimately pursued. Such a distinction would promote consistency in clinical practice, strengthen public confidence and reduce many of the practical challenges currently encountered by healthcare professionals and families.

A competency-based approach to certification, supported by structured national training and credentialling, may offer a pragmatic alternative to the existing certification model while maintaining the highest standards of diagnostic accuracy. Similarly, clearer guidance regarding the selective use of ancillary investigations would ensure that these tests remain valuable adjuncts when clinical examination cannot be completed, without undermining the central role of the neurological examination itself.

Equally important is the need for legislative clarification regarding the management of patients following confirmed Brain-Stem Death. Explicit recognition that withdrawal of life-sustaining therapy is appropriate after neurological determination of death, when organ donation is not being pursued, would provide much-needed clarity for clinicians while ensuring responsible stewardship of critical care resources. In parallel, incorporating Brain-Stem Death into the Medical Certificate of Cause of Death would improve the accuracy of mortality data, reinforce neurological determination as a recognized pathway to death and support a more consistent national approach to death certification.

Finally, continued investment in clinician education, public engagement and multidisciplinary research will be essential to support future reforms. Improving understanding of Brain-Stem Death among healthcare professionals, patients, families and the wider community is fundamental to maintaining public trust and ensuring that changes in policy are both accepted and effectively implemented.

Ultimately, the future of Brain-Stem Death declaration in India lies not merely in refining certification procedures but in embracing a broader and more coherent concept of death itself. A universal legal framework recognizing death as the irreversible cessation of either circulatory function or all brainstem function would align Indian practice with contemporary international standards while remaining firmly grounded in scientific evidence and ethical principles. Such an approach would provide greater clarity for clinicians, improve consistency in practice, strengthen public confidence and represent the next logical step in the evolution of neurological determination of death in India.

Current Practice	Proposed Reform	Rationale	Expected Impact	Key References
Brain-Stem Death is primarily linked to organ donation under the Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Act (THOTA).	Recognize Brain-Stem Death as a universal legal determination of death, irrespective of organ donation.	Death determination should be independent of subsequent decisions regarding organ donation and should reflect established neurological criteria.	Uniform application of neurological determination of death, improved public confidence and alignment with international practice.	1, 2, 6–8, 19, 22, 23
Certification requires a panel of four medical practitioners,	Introduce a competency-based certification	Modern neurological determination of death is	Reduced delays in certification, improved feasibility in	1, 2, 5, 10, 17, 18

including specified specialists.	model involving two independently trained and credentialled physicians.	based on a standardized clinical examination that can be reliably performed by appropriately trained clinicians.	district hospitals and resource-limited settings, while maintaining diagnostic accuracy.	
Ancillary investigations are inconsistently utilized and indications vary across institutions.	Develop national guidance defining clear indications for ancillary investigations and standardize interpretation protocols.	Ancillary investigations should complement, rather than replace, the clinical examination and be reserved for specific clinical situations.	Greater consistency in practice, reduced unnecessary investigations and improved diagnostic confidence.	1–3, 10, 26
Mechanical ventilation is frequently continued after Brain-Stem Death when organ donation is declined because of legal uncertainty.	Explicitly recognize withdrawal of life-sustaining therapy following confirmed Brain-Stem Death when organ donation is not pursued.	Once Brain-Stem Death has been certified, the individual is legally and medically dead; continued physiological support offers no therapeutic benefit except for organ preservation.	Consistent national practice, appropriate utilization of intensive care resources and reduced medicolegal uncertainty.	1, 2, 10, 19, 22–26
Death certificates often record "cardiorespiratory	Revise the Medical Certificate of	Improves the accuracy of mortality data	Better epidemiological surveillance,	6–10, 19, 22, 23

arrest" rather than neurological determination of death.	Cause of Death (MCCD) to include "Brain-Stem Death (neurological determination of death)" as the mode of death determination, with the underlying neurological disease recorded as the antecedent cause.	and reinforces neurological determination as a recognized legal pathway to death.	enhanced research opportunities and greater consistency in death certification.	
Training requirements vary across institutions.	Establish a nationally standardized competency-based education, credentialling and periodic recertification programme.	Competency, rather than specialty designation alone, should determine eligibility to certify Brain-Stem Death.	Improved uniformity, clinician confidence and quality assurance across healthcare systems.	2, 5, 10, 17, 18
Limited Indian data exist regarding Brain-Stem Death determination and implementation.	Develop a national registry for Brain-Stem Death determination coordinated through NOTTO and promote multicentre collaborative research.	High-quality Indian evidence is required to inform future legislation, guideline development and quality improvement initiatives.	Evidence-based policymaking, benchmarking between institutions and improved national understanding of neurological determination of death.	9, 10, 20, 26

Public understanding of Brain-Stem Death remains limited and is often conflated with organ donation.	Implement nationwide public education programmes involving healthcare professionals, policymakers, patient groups and community leaders.	Greater public understanding is essential for maintaining trust in neurological determination of death and supporting informed decision-making.	Improved public confidence, reduced misconceptions and greater acceptance of both neurological determination of death and deceased organ donation.	9, 10, 14, 24–26

Table 1: *Proposed Future Reforms in Brain-Stem Death Declaration in India*

KEY ISSUES AND CHALLENGES

1. Legislative Misalignment: Brain-Stem Death in India is defined primarily under transplant law (THOTA) rather than a general death statute, causing practice variability when organ donation is not pursued.
2. Continued Support Post-Declaration: Due to medicolegal concerns, clinicians frequently maintain mechanical ventilation until cardiac arrest occurs in non-donor cases, creating resource bottlenecks and ethical ambiguity.
3. Resource and Panel Constraints: Assembling a mandatory four-member specialist panel creates unnecessary certification delays, particularly in district or resource-limited hospitals.
4. Variable Ancillary Testing: Broad variations exist regarding imaging protocols, diagnostic thresholds, and the availability of advanced techniques (such as CTA, CTP, or nuclear imaging) across healthcare tiers.
5. Public Perception and Misconceptions: Public mistrust persists due to the conflation of Brain-Stem Death declaration with organ harvesting, highlighting a need for targeted educational outreach.
6. Inaccurate Cause-of-Death Documentation: Clinicians frequently log terminal cardiorespiratory arrest as the immediate cause of death on certificates, obscuring epidemiological data regarding catastrophic neurological injuries.

KEY TAKEAWAYS

1. Decoupling Death from Donation: Brain-Stem Death should be recognized as a universal legal determination of death independent of organ donation, aligning Indian practice with international standards.
2. Simplified Certification: Transitioning from the current four-member panel to a competency-based model involving two credentialed, independently trained physicians can streamline certification without sacrificing accuracy.
3. Selective Ancillary Testing: The clinical neurological examination remains the primary standard; ancillary tests (e.g., CTA, TCD) should complement assessments only when clinical exams or apnoea tests cannot be completed safely.
4. Clear Protocol for Therapy Withdrawal: Once Brain-Stem Death is formally confirmed, withdrawing life-sustaining support is medically and ethically appropriate regardless of whether families consent to organ donation.
5. Accurate Death Certification: Updating the Medical Certificate of Cause of Death (MCCD) to record "Brain-Stem Death" rather than generic "cardiorespiratory arrest" ensures precise mortality data and reinforces legal validity.
6. National Research & Surveillance: Developing a national registry under NOTTO and investing in multidisciplinary research will address data gaps and build public trust.

REFERENCES

1. Greer DM, Shemie SD, Lewis A, Torrance S, Varelas P, Goldenberg FD, et al. Determination of brain death/death by neurologic criteria: The World Brain Death Project. JAMA. 2020;324(11):1078-1097.
2. Greer DM, Kirschen MP, Lewis A, Bernat JL, Blosser S, Bratton SL, et al. Pediatric and adult brain death/death by neurologic criteria consensus practice guideline: Report of the AAN, AAP, CNS, and SCCM. Neurology. 2023;101(24):1112-1132.
3. Wijdicks EFM, Varelas PN, Gronseth GS, Greer DM. Evidence-based guideline update: Determining brain death in adults. Report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. Neurology. 2010;74(23):1911-1918.
4. Ad Hoc Committee of the Harvard Medical School to Examine the Definition of Brain Death. A definition of irreversible coma. JAMA. 1968;205(6):337-340.

5. Academy of Medical Royal Colleges. A Code of Practice for the Diagnosis and Confirmation of Death. London: Academy of Medical Royal Colleges; 2008.

6. Government of India. The Transplantation of Human Organs Act, 1994 (Act No. 42 of 1994). New Delhi: Ministry of Law and Justice.

7. Government of India. The Transplantation of Human Organs (Amendment) Act, 2011. New Delhi: Ministry of Law and Justice.

8. Government of India. The Transplantation of Human Organs and Tissues Rules, 2014. New Delhi: Ministry of Health and Family Welfare.

9. National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO). NOTTO Transplant Manual. New Delhi: Ministry of Health and Family Welfare; 2024.

10. Pandit RA. Brain death and organ donation in India. *Indian J Anaesth.* 2017;61(12):949-951

11. Pandit RA, Zirpe KG, Gurav SK, Kulkarni AP, Karnad S, Govil D, et al. Management of Potential Organ Donor: Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine: Position Statement. *Indian J Crit Care Med.* 2017;21(5):303-316

12. Shemie SD, Hornby L, Baker A, Teitelbaum J, Torrance S, Young K, et al. International guideline development for the determination of death. Intensive Care Med.2014;40:788-797.

13. Lewis A, Kirschen MP, Greer DM. The 2023 pediatric and adult brain death/death by neurologic criteria consensus practice guideline: Comparison with previous guidelines. Neurol Clin Pract. 2023;13:e200189.

14. Wijdicks EFM. Brain Death. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017.

15. Dhanwate AD. Brainstem death: A comprehensive review in Indian perspective (Indian J Crit Care Med, 2014),

16. Sarbpreet S, Chauhan R, Singh G, et al. Brain stem death certification protocol. Med J Armed Forces India. 2018;74(4):372-376.

17. Myatra SN, Salins N, Iyer S, et al. End-of-life care policy: An integrated care plan for the dying. Indian J Crit Care Med. 2014;18(Suppl 1):S30-S85.

18. Canadian Blood Services. Clinical Guide to Organ Donation. Neurological Determination of Death. Ottawa: Canadian Blood Services; 2023.

19. Australian and New Zealand Intensive Care Society (ANZICS). The ANZICS Statement on Death and Organ Donation. Melbourne: ANZICS; 2021.

20. President's Commission for the Study of Ethical Problems in Medicine and Biomedical and Behavioral Research. Defining Death: Medical, Legal and Ethical Issues in the Determination of Death. Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office; 1981.

21. National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization. Standard operating procedures for brainstem death certification and donor management. Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India.

22. President's Commission for the Study of Ethical Problems in Medicine and Biomedical and Behavioral Research. Defining Death: Medical, Legal and Ethical Issues in the Determination of Death. Washington (DC): U.S. Government Printing Office; 1981.

23. Bernat JL. The biophilosophical basis of whole-brain death. Soc Philos Policy. 2002;19(2):324-342.

24. Bernat JL. Controversies in defining and determining death in critical care. Nat Rev Neurol. 2013;9(3):164-173.

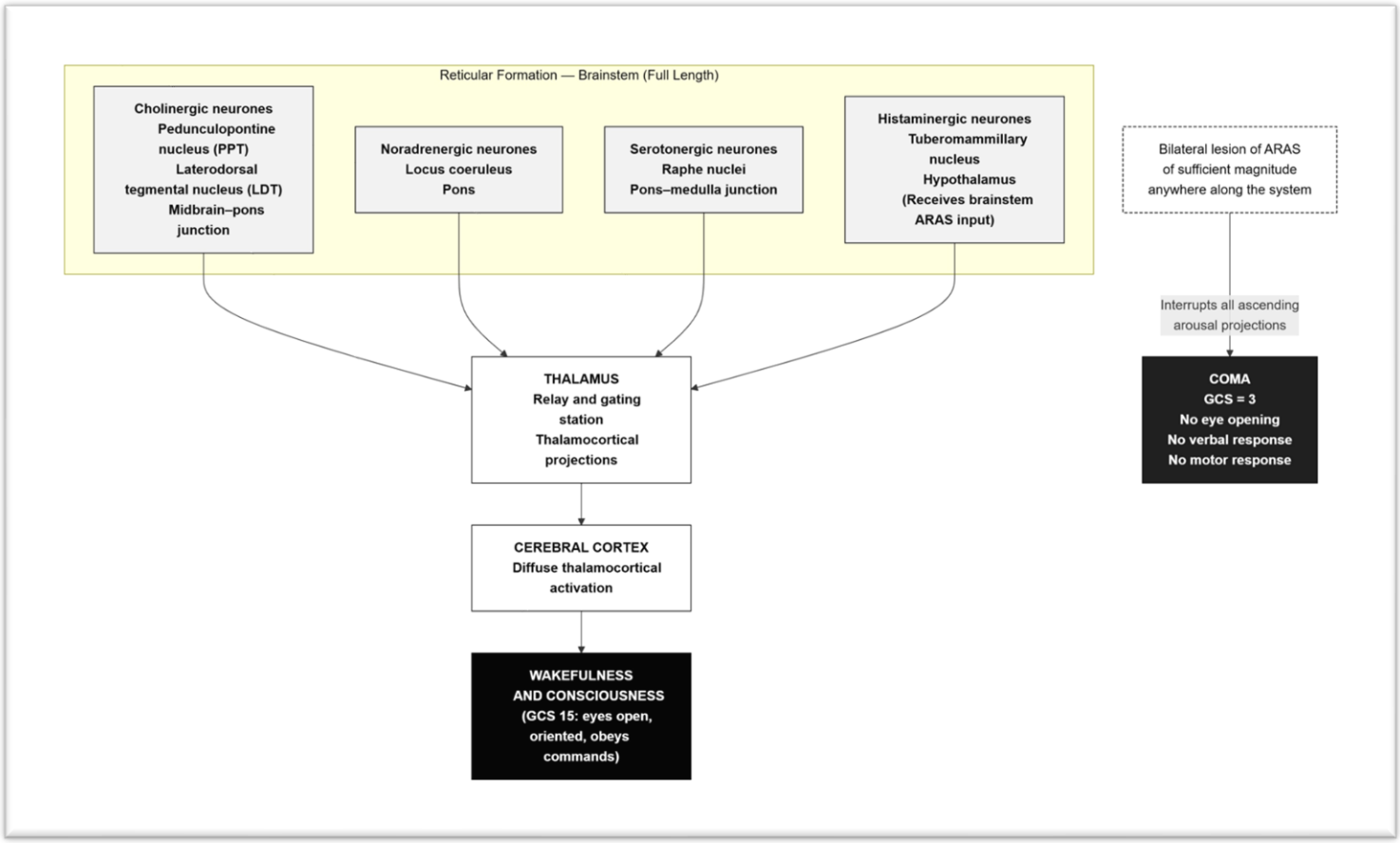
25. Shemie SD, Ross H, Pagliarello J, et al. Organ donor management in Canada: Recommendations of the Forum on Medical Management to Optimize Donor Organ Potential. CMAJ. 2006;174(6).

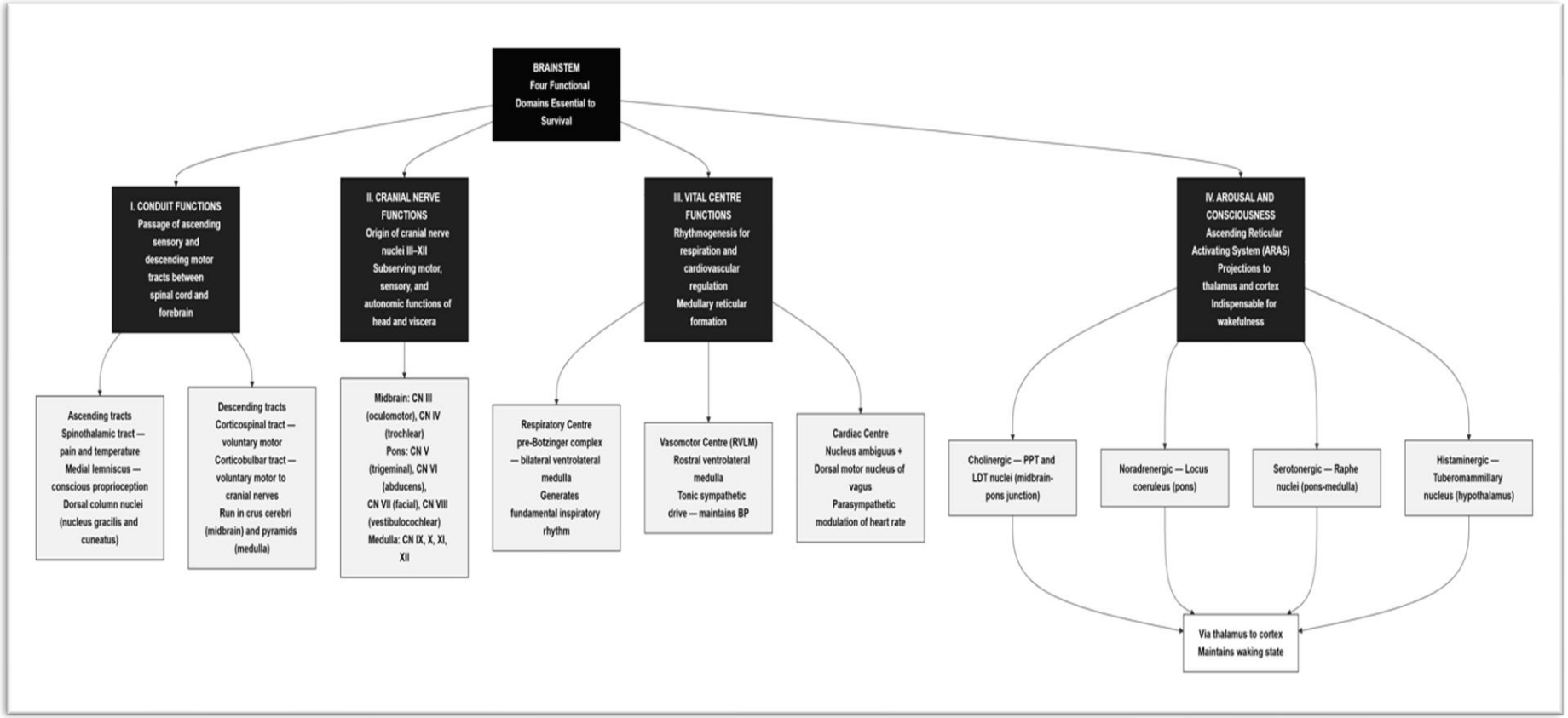
26. Pandit RA, Zirpe KG, Gurav SK, Kulkarni AP, Karnad S, Govil D, et al. *Management of Potential Organ Donor: Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine Position Statement.* Indian J Crit Care Med. 2017;21(5):303–316.

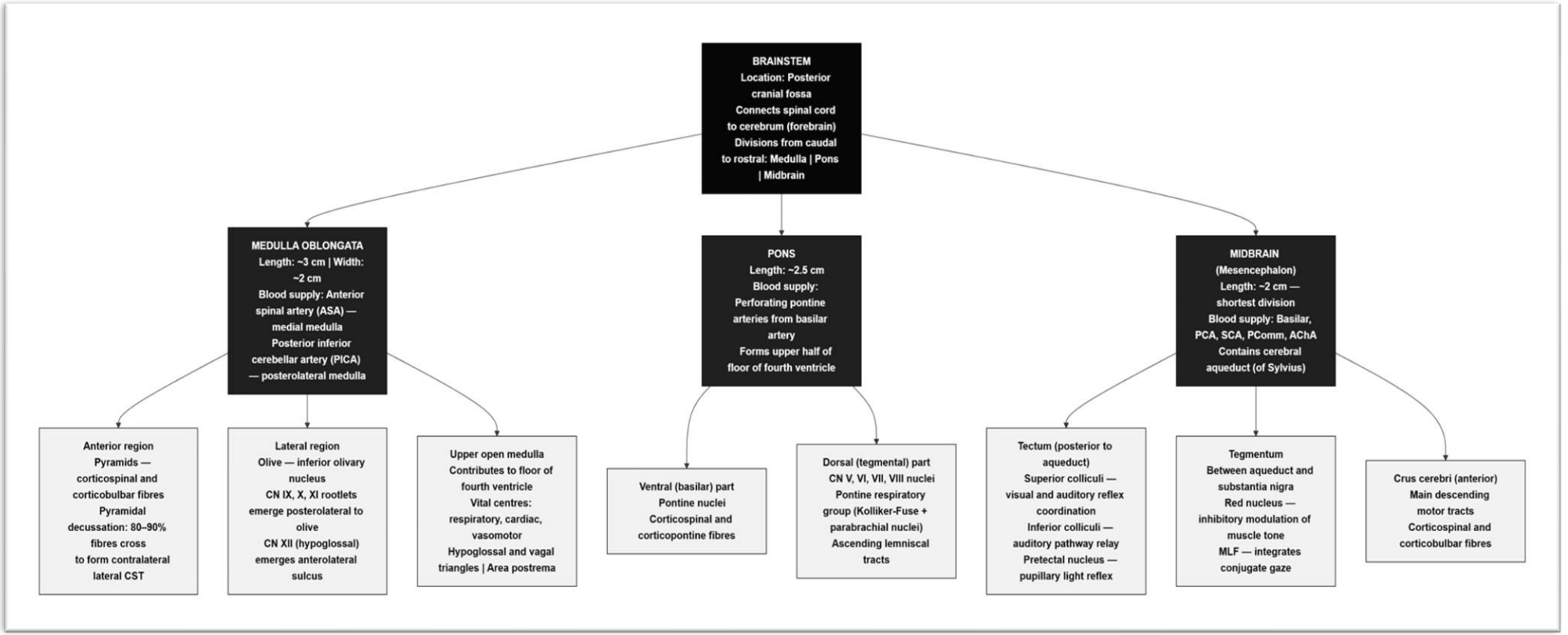
27. Common Cause v. Union of India, (2018) 5 SCC 1, and the subsequent 2023 Supreme Court clarification on end-of-life care

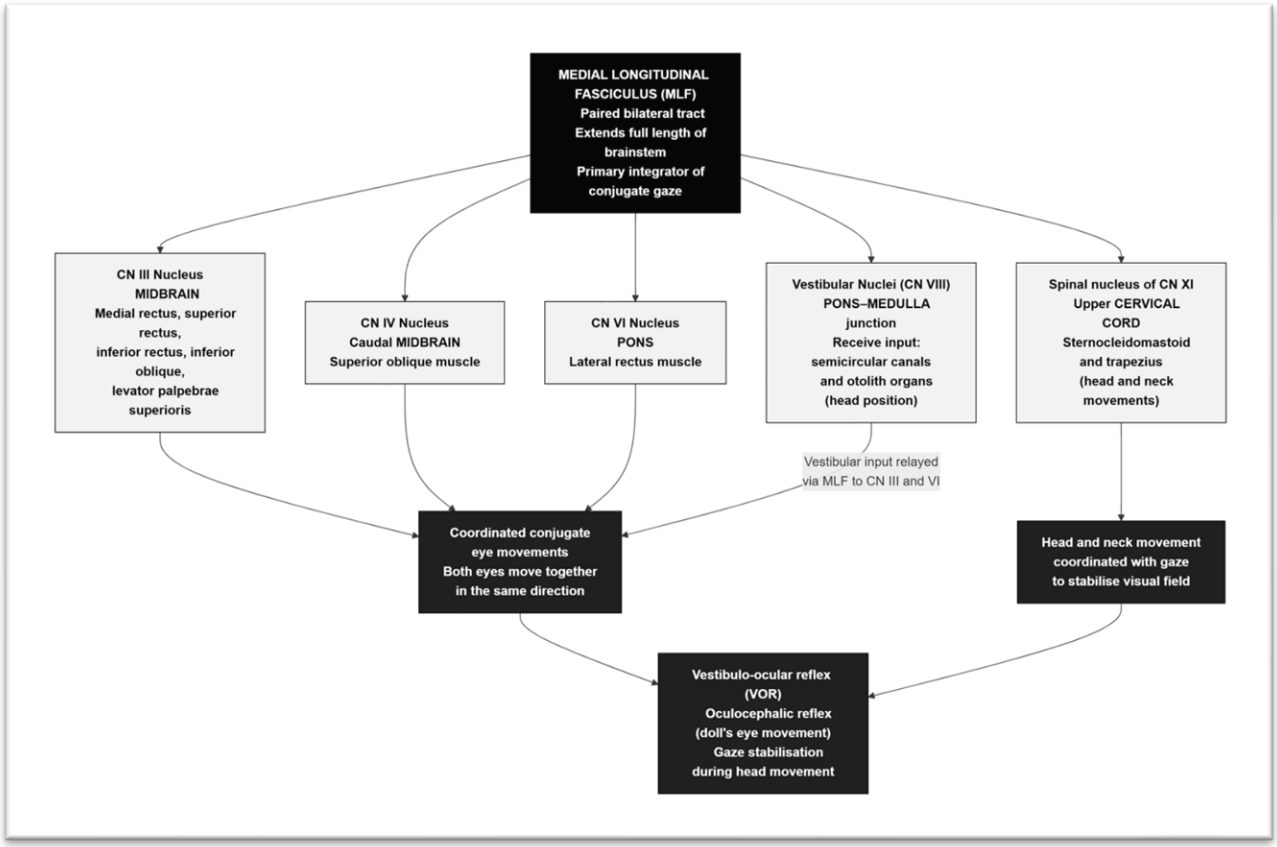
ANNEXURE-I

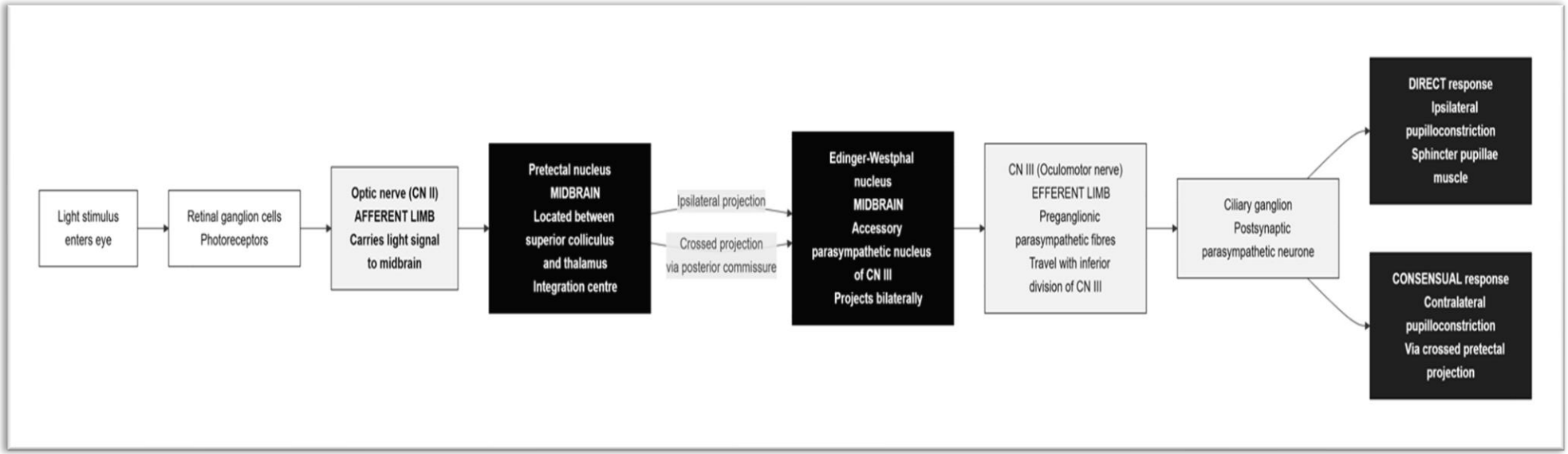
FLOWCHARTS OF CHAPTER - 1

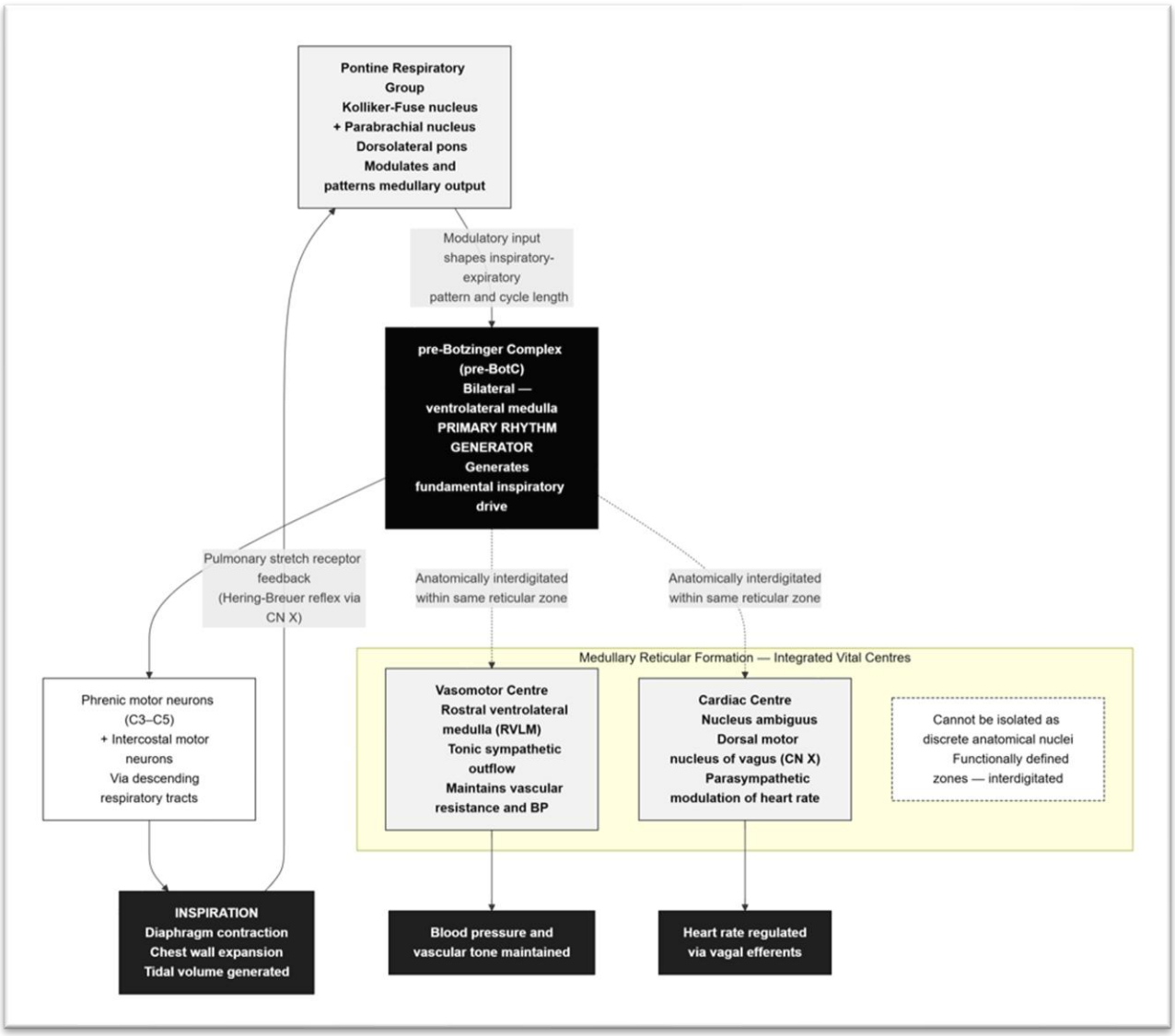



BRAINSTEM
Four Functional Domains Essential to Survival
I. CONDUIT FUNCTIONS
Passage of ascending sensory and descending motor tracts between spinal cord and forebrain
Ascending tracts
Spinothalamic tract — pain and temperature
Medial lemniscus — conscious proprioception
Dorsal column nuclei (nucleus gracilis and cuneatus)
Descending tracts
Corticospinal tract — voluntary motor
Corticobulbar tract — voluntary motor to cranial nerves
Run in crus cerebri (midbrain) and pyramids (medulla)
II. CRANIAL NERVE FUNCTIONS
Origin of cranial nerve nuclei III–XII
Subserving motor, sensory, and autonomic functions of head and viscera
Midbrain: CN III (oculomotor), CN IV (trochlear)
Pons: CN V (trigeminal), CN VI (abducens), CN VII (facial), CN VIII (vestibulocochlear)
Medulla: CN IX, X, XI, XII
III. VITAL CENTRE FUNCTIONS
Rhythmogenesis for respiration and cardiovascular regulation
Medullary reticular formation
Respiratory Centre
pre-Botzinger complex — bilateral ventrolateral medulla
Generates fundamental inspiratory rhythm
Vasomotor Centre (RVLM)
Rostral ventrolateral medulla
Tonic sympathetic drive — maintains BP
Cardiac Centre
Nucleus ambiguus + Dorsal motor nucleus of vagus
Parasympathetic modulation of heart rate
IV. AROUSAL AND CONSCIOUSNESS
Ascending Reticular Activating System (ARAS)
Projections to thalamus and cortex
Indispensable for wakefulness
Cholinergic — PPT and LDT nuclei (midbrain-pons junction)
Noradrenergic — Locus coeruleus (pons)
Serotonergic — Raphe nuclei (pons-medulla)
Histaminergic — Tuberomammillary nucleus (hypothalamus)
Via thalamus to cortex
Maintains waking state

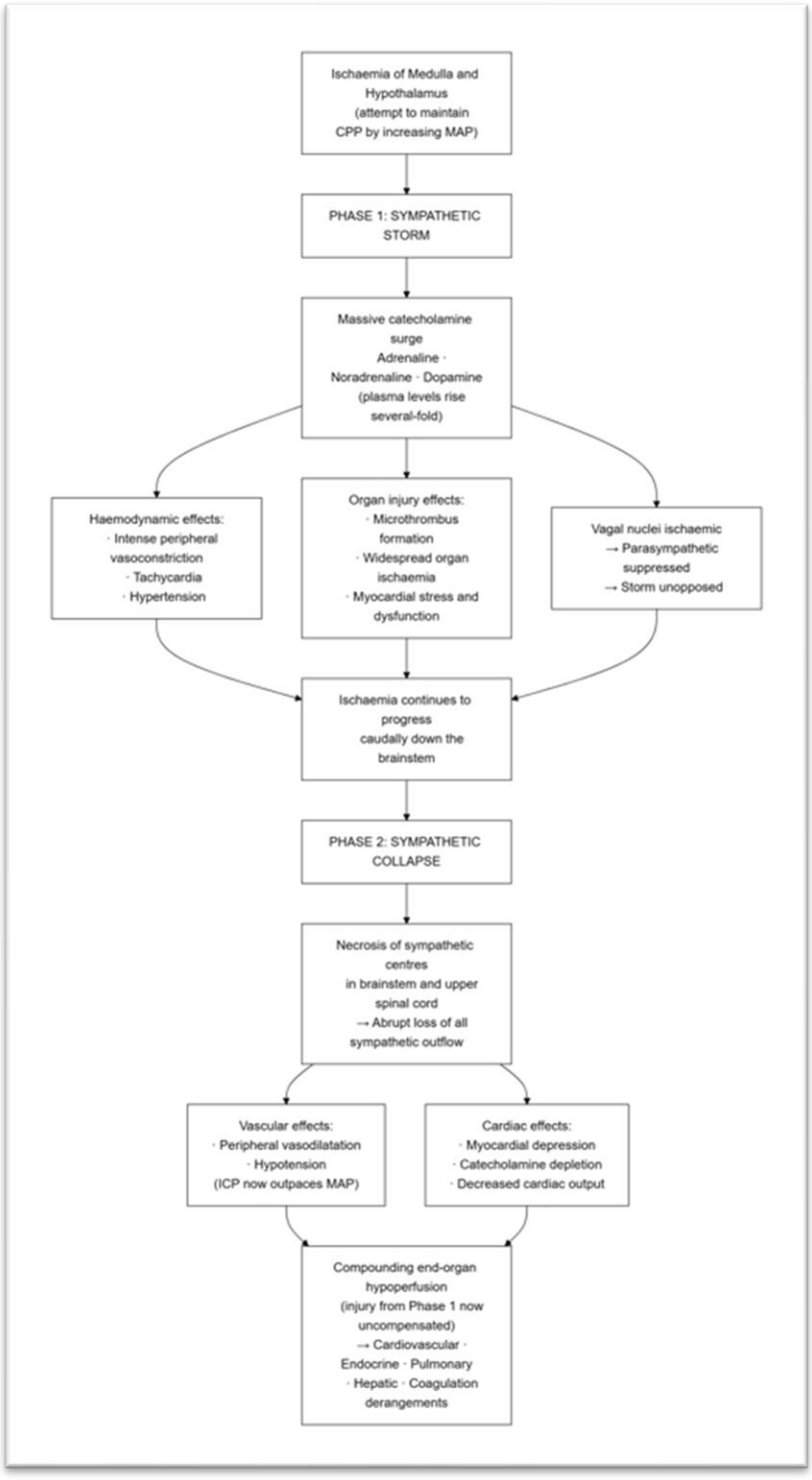

BRAINSTEM
Location: Posterior cranial fossa
Connects spinal cord to cerebrum (forebrain)
Divisions from caudal to rostral: Medulla | Pons | Midbrain
MEDULLA OBLONGATA
Length: ~3 cm | Width: ~2 cm
Blood supply: Anterior spinal artery (ASA) — medial medulla
Posterior inferior cerebellar artery (PICA) — posterolateral medulla
PONS
Length: ~2.5 cm
Blood supply: Perforating pontine arteries from basilar artery
Forms upper half of floor of fourth ventricle
MIDBRAIN
(Mesencephalon)
Length: ~2 cm — shortest division
Blood supply: Basilar, PCA, SCA, PComm, AChA
Contains cerebral aqueduct (of Sylvius)
Anterior region
Pyramids — corticospinal and corticobulbar fibres
Pyramidal decussation: 80–90% fibres cross to form contralateral lateral CST
Lateral region
Olive — inferior olivary nucleus
CN IX, X, XI rootlets emerge posterolateral to olive
CN XII (hypoglossal) emerges anterolateral sulcus
Upper open medulla
Contributes to floor of fourth ventricle
Vital centres: respiratory, cardiac, vasomotor
Hypoglossal and vagal triangles | Area postrema
Ventral (basilar) part
Pontine nuclei
Corticospinal and corticopontine fibres
Dorsal (tegmental) part
CN V, VI, VII, VIII nuclei
Pontine respiratory group (Kolliker-Fuse + parabrachial nuclei)
Ascending lemniscal tracts
Tectum (posterior to aqueduct)
Superior colliculi — visual and auditory reflex coordination
Inferior colliculi — auditory pathway relay
Pretectal nucleus — pupillary light reflex
Tegmentum
Between aqueduct and substantia nigra
Red nucleus — inhibitory modulation of muscle tone
MLF — integrates conjugate gaze
Crus cerebri (anterior)
Main descending motor tracts
Corticospinal and corticobulbar fibres

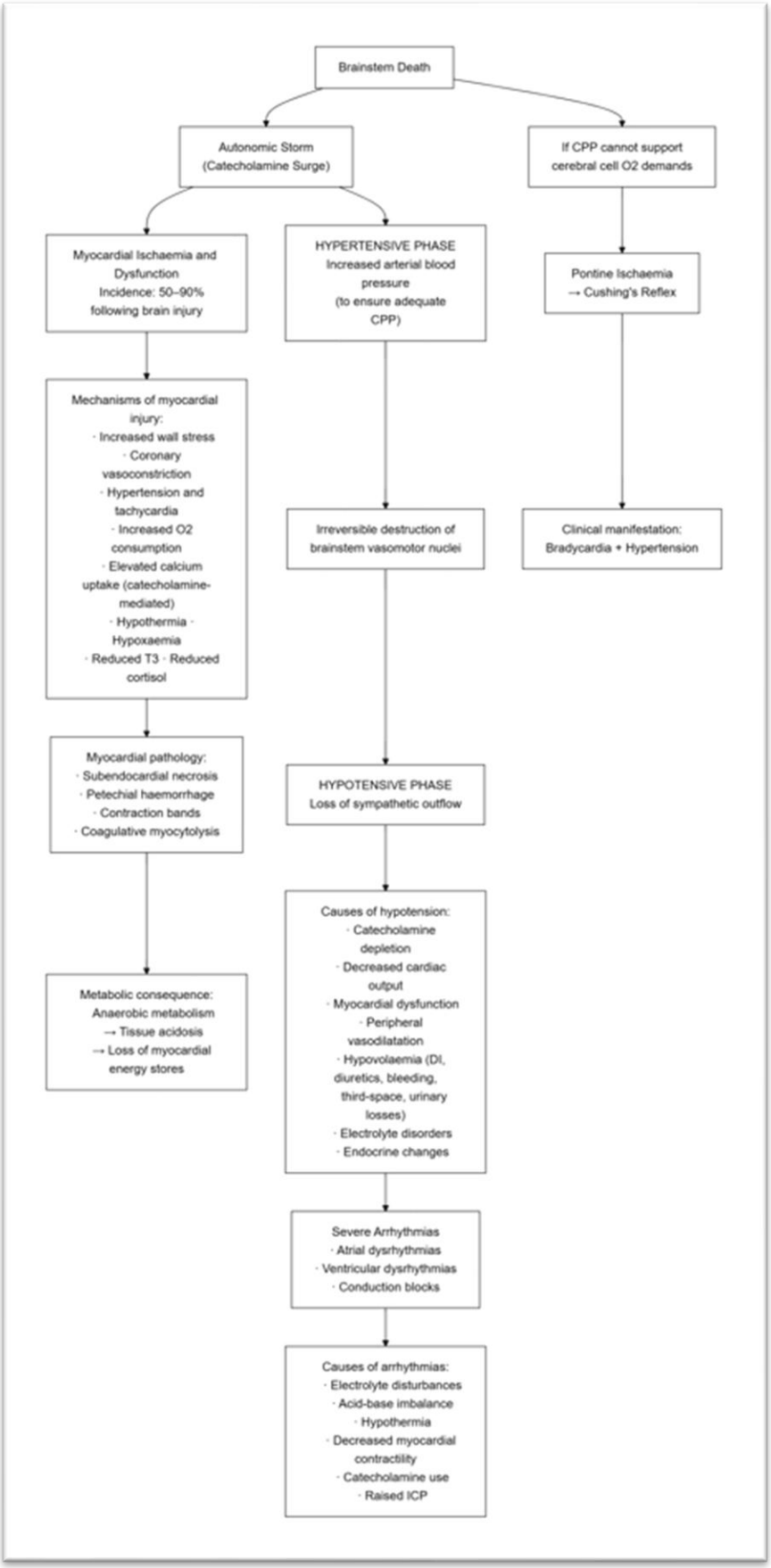

MEDIAL LONGITUDINAL FASCICULUS (MLF)
Paired bilateral tract
Extends full length of brainstem
Primary integrator of conjugate gaze
CN III Nucleus
MIDBRAIN
Medial rectus, superior rectus, inferior rectus, inferior oblique, levator palpebrae superioris
CN IV Nucleus
Caudal MIDBRAIN
Superior oblique muscle
CN VI Nucleus
PONS
Lateral rectus muscle
Vestibular Nuclei (CN VIII)
PONS–MEDULLA junction
Receive input: semicircular canals and otolith organs (head position)
Spinal nucleus of CN XI
Upper CERVICAL CORD
Sternocleidomastoid and trapezius (head and neck movements)
Vestibular input relayed via MLF to CN III and VI
Coordinated conjugate eye movements
Both eyes move together in the same direction
Head and neck movement coordinated with gaze to stabilise visual field
Vestibulo-ocular reflex (VOR)
Oculocephalic reflex (doll's eye movement)
Gaze stabilisation during head movement

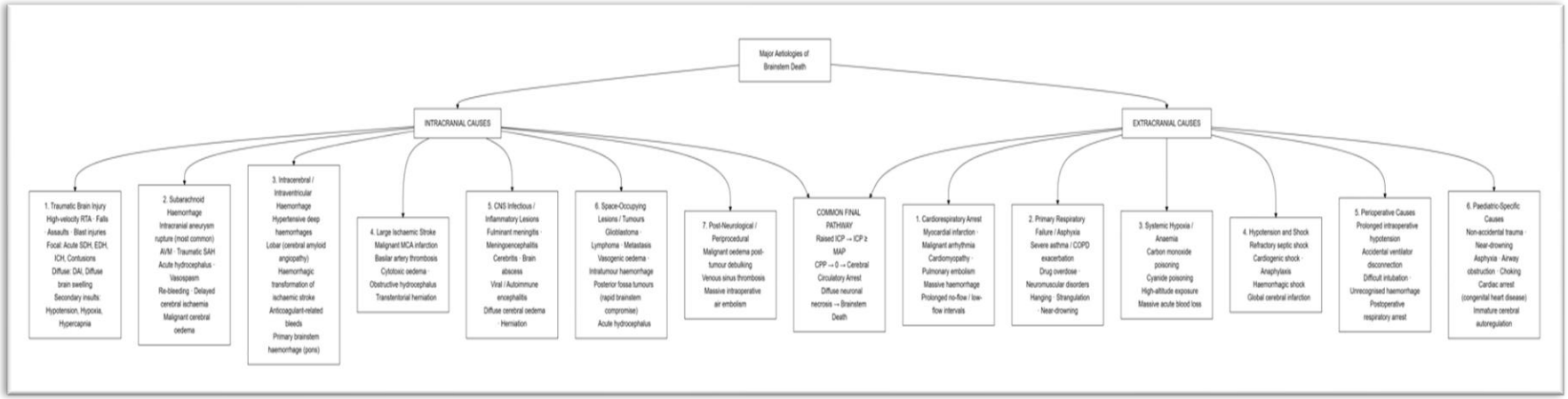

Light stimulus enters eye
Retinal ganglion cells Photoreceptors
Optic nerve (CN II) AFFERENT LIMB Carries light signal to midbrain
Pretectal nucleus MIDBRAIN Located between superior colliculus and thalamus Integration centre
Ipsilateral projection
Crossed projection via posterior commissure
Edinger-Westphal nucleus MIDBRAIN Accessory parasympathetic nucleus of CN III Projects bilaterally
CN III (Oculomotor nerve) EFFERENT LIMB Preganglionic parasympathetic fibres Travel with inferior division of CN III
Ciliary ganglion Postsynaptic parasympathetic neurone
DIRECT response Ipsilateral pupilloconstriction Sphincter pupillae muscle
CONSENSUAL response Contralateral pupilloconstriction Via crossed pretectal projection


Pontine Respiratory Group
Kolliker-Fuse nucleus
+ Parabrachial nucleus
Dorsolateral pons
Modulates and patterns medullary output
Modulatory input shapes inspiratory-expiratory pattern and cycle length
pre-Botzinger Complex (pre-BotC)
Bilateral — ventrolateral medulla
PRIMARY RHYTHM GENERATOR
Generates fundamental inspiratory drive
Pulmonary stretch receptor feedback (Hering-Breuer reflex via CN X)
Anatomically interdigitated within same reticular zone
Anatomically interdigitated within same reticular zone
Medullary Reticular Formation — Integrated Vital Centres
Phrenic motor neurons (C3–C5)
+ Intercostal motor neurons
Via descending respiratory tracts
Vasomotor Centre
Rostral ventrolateral medulla (RVLM)
Tonic sympathetic outflow
Maintains vascular resistance and BP
Cardiac Centre
Nucleus ambiguus
Dorsal motor nucleus of vagus (CN X)
Parasympathetic modulation of heart rate
Cannot be isolated as discrete anatomical nuclei
Functionally defined zones — interdigitated
INSPIRATION
Diaphragm contraction
Chest wall expansion
Tidal volume generated
Blood pressure and vascular tone maintained
Heart rate regulated via vagal efferents

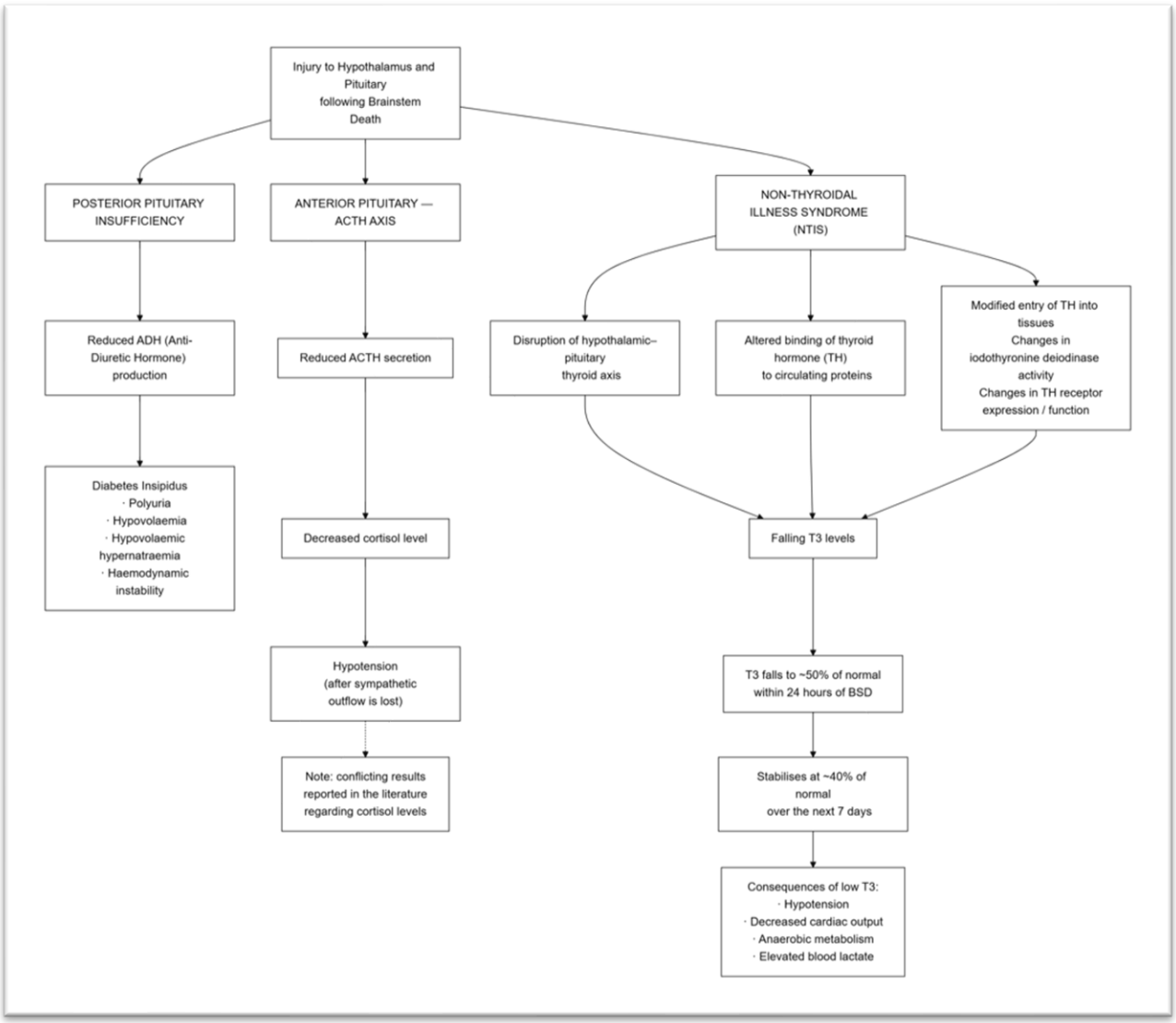
FLOWCHARTS OF CHAPTER – 3

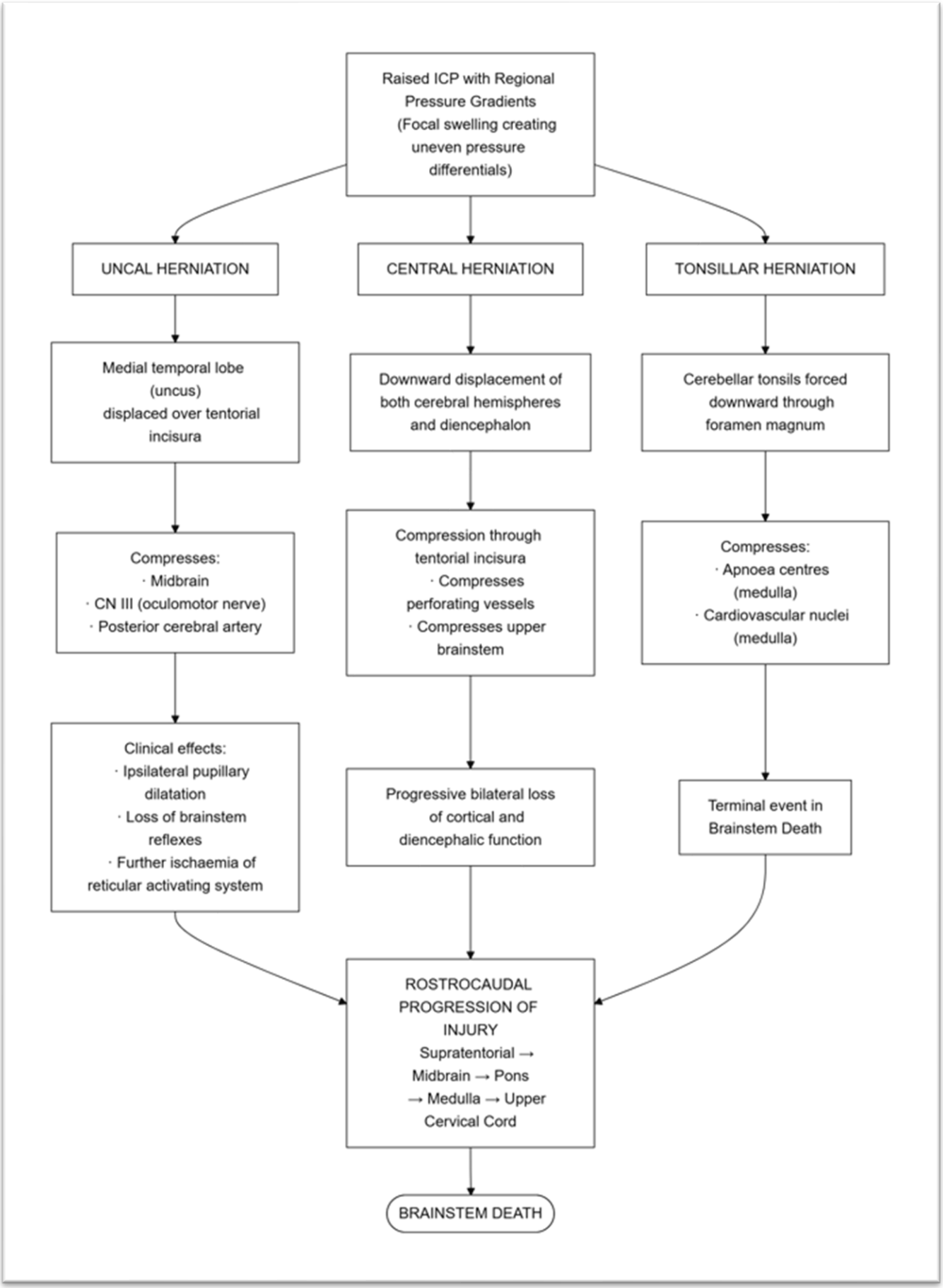


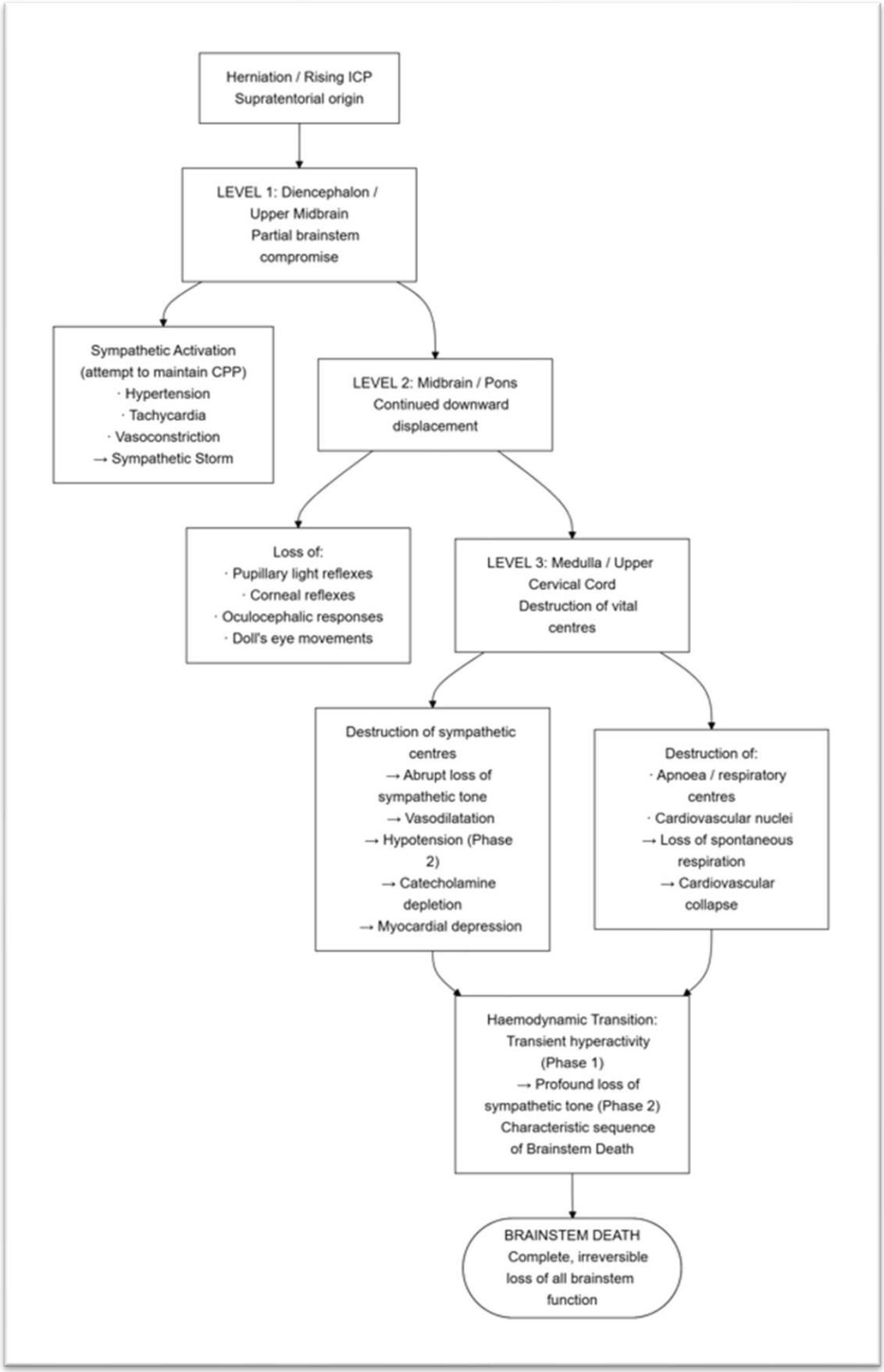

Brainstem Death
Autonomic Storm (Catecholamine Surge)
If CPP cannot support cerebral cell O2 demands
Myocardial Ischaemia and Dysfunction Incidence: 50–90% following brain injury
HYPERTENSIVE PHASE Increased arterial blood pressure (to ensure adequate CPP)
Pontine Ischaemia → Cushing's Reflex
Mechanisms of myocardial injury: · Increased wall stress · Coronary vasoconstriction · Hypertension and tachycardia · Increased O2 consumption · Elevated calcium uptake (catecholamine-mediated) · Hypothermia · Hypoxaemia · Reduced T3 · Reduced cortisol
Irreversible destruction of brainstem vasomotor nuclei
Clinical manifestation: Bradycardia + Hypertension
Myocardial pathology: · Subendocardial necrosis · Petechial haemorrhage · Contraction bands · Coagulative myocytolysis
HYPOTENSIVE PHASE Loss of sympathetic outflow
Causes of hypotension: · Catecholamine depletion · Decreased cardiac output · Myocardial dysfunction · Peripheral vasodilatation · Hypovolaemia (DI, diuretics, bleeding, third-space, urinary losses) · Electrolyte disorders · Endocrine changes
Metabolic consequence: Anaerobic metabolism → Tissue acidosis → Loss of myocardial energy stores
Severe Arrhythmias · Atrial dysrhythmias · Ventricular dysrhythmias · Conduction blocks
Causes of arrhythmias: · Electrolyte disturbances · Acid-base imbalance · Hypothermia · Decreased myocardial contractility · Catecholamine use · Raised ICP


Major Aetiologies of Brainstem Death
INTRACRANIAL CAUSES
EXTRACRANIAL CAUSES
1. Traumatic Brain Injury
High-velocity RTA · Falls
Assaults · Blast injuries
Focal: Acute SDH, EDH, ICH, Contusions
Diffuse: DAI, Diffuse brain swelling
Secondary insults: Hypotension, Hypoxia, Hypercapnia
2. Subarachnoid Haemorrhage
Intracranial aneurysm rupture (most common)
AVM · Traumatic SAH
Acute hydrocephalus · Vasospasm
Re-bleeding · Delayed cerebral ischaemia
Malignant cerebral oedema
3. Intracerebral / Intraventricular Haemorrhage
Hypertensive deep haemorrhages
Lobar (cerebral amyloid angiopathy)
Haemorrhagic transformation of ischaemic stroke
Anticoagulant-related bleeds
Primary brainstem haemorrhage (pons)
4. Large Ischaemic Stroke
Malignant MCA infarction
Basilar artery thrombosis
Cytotoxic oedema · Obstructive hydrocephalus
Transtentorial herniation
5. CNS Infectious / Inflammatory Lesions
Fulminant meningitis · Meningoencephalitis
Cerebritis · Brain abscess
Viral / Autoimmune encephalitis
Diffuse cerebral oedema · Herniation
6. Space-Occupying Lesions / Tumours
Glioblastoma · Lymphoma · Metastasis
Vasogenic oedema · Intratumour haemorrhage
Posterior fossa tumours (rapid brainstem compromise)
Acute hydrocephalus
7. Post-Neurological / Periprocedural
Malignant oedema post-tumour debulking
Venous sinus thrombosis
Massive intraoperative air embolism
COMMON FINAL PATHWAY
Raised ICP → ICP ≥ MAP
CPP → 0 → Cerebral Circulatory Arrest
Diffuse neuronal necrosis → Brainstem Death
1. Cardiorespiratory Arrest
Myocardial infarction · Malignant arrhythmia
Cardiomyopathy · Pulmonary embolism
Massive haemorrhage
Prolonged no-flow / low-flow intervals
2. Primary Respiratory Failure / Asphyxia
Severe asthma / COPD exacerbation
Drug overdose · Neuromuscular disorders
Hanging · Strangulation · Near-drowning
3. Systemic Hypoxia / Anaemia
Carbon monoxide poisoning
Cyanide poisoning
High-altitude exposure
Massive acute blood loss
4. Hypotension and Shock
Refractory septic shock
Cardiogenic shock · Anaphylaxis
Haemorrhagic shock
Global cerebral infarction
5. Perioperative Causes
Prolonged intraoperative hypotension
Accidental ventilator disconnection
Difficult intubation · Unrecognised haemorrhage
Postoperative respiratory arrest
6. Paediatric-Specific Causes
Non-accidental trauma · Near-drowning
Asphyxia · Airway obstruction · Choking
Cardiac arrest (congenital heart disease)
Immature cerebral autoregulation


Note: Intracranial processes cause rapid cerebral oedema, mass effect, and herniation. Extracranial causes produce global anoxia, membrane pump failure, and diffuse neuronal apoptosis within the fixed skull volume.
Primary Insult (Intracranial or Extracranial)
Raised Intracranial Pressure OR Global Cerebral Ischaemia / Anoxia
Compensatory Mechanisms 1. CSF displacement into spinal compartment 2. Reduction in intracranial venous blood volume 3. Minimal skull stretch in younger patients
Mechanisms intact
Mechanisms exhausted
ICP temporarily controlled (Monroe-Kellie equilibrium maintained)
Exponential Rise in ICP Steep, near-vertical pressure-volume curve
ICP approaches and exceeds MAP CPP = MAP − ICP → 0
Cerebral Blood Flow critically compromised → Cerebral Circulatory Arrest
Global Cerebral Ischaemia Rapid energy failure
ATP Depletion Ionic flux failure Membrane pump dysfunction
Cytotoxic Oedema Further rise in ICP Further decrease in CPP
Diffuse Neuronal Necrosis Aseptic necrosis of brain tissue (particularly watershed regions and high-metabolic grey matter areas)
BRAINSTEM DEATH


Injury to Hypothalamus and Pituitary following Brainstem Death
POSTERIOR PITUITARY INSUFFICIENCY
ANTERIOR PITUITARY — ACTH AXIS
NON-THYROIDAL ILLNESS SYNDROME (NTIS)
Reduced ADH (Anti-Diuretic Hormone) production
Reduced ACTH secretion
Disruption of hypothalamic–pituitary thyroid axis
Altered binding of thyroid hormone (TH) to circulating proteins
Modified entry of TH into tissues
Changes in iodothyronine deiodinase activity
Changes in TH receptor expression / function
Diabetes Insipidus
· Polyuria
· Hypovolaemia
· Hypovolaemic hypernatraemia
· Haemodynamic instability
Decreased cortisol level
Falling T3 levels
Hypotension (after sympathetic outflow is lost)
T3 falls to ~50% of normal within 24 hours of BSD
Note: conflicting results reported in the literature regarding cortisol levels
Stabilises at ~40% of normal over the next 7 days
Consequences of low T3:
· Hypotension
· Decreased cardiac output
· Anaerobic metabolism
· Elevated blood lactate


Raised ICP with Regional Pressure Gradients (Focal swelling creating uneven pressure differentials)
UNCAL HERNIATION
CENTRAL HERNIATION
TONSILLAR HERNIATION
Medial temporal lobe (uncus) displaced over tentorial incisura
Downward displacement of both cerebral hemispheres and diencephalon
Cerebellar tonsils forced downward through foramen magnum
Compresses: · Midbrain · CN III (oculomotor nerve) · Posterior cerebral artery
Compression through tentorial incisura · Compresses perforating vessels · Compresses upper brainstem
Compresses: · Apnoea centres (medulla) · Cardiovascular nuclei (medulla)
Clinical effects: · Ipsilateral pupillary dilatation · Loss of brainstem reflexes · Further ischaemia of reticular activating system
Progressive bilateral loss of cortical and diencephalic function
Terminal event in Brainstem Death
ROSTROCAUDAL PROGRESSION OF INJURY Supratentorial → Midbrain → Pons → Medulla → Upper Cervical Cord
BRAINSTEM DEATH


Herniation / Rising ICP
Supratentorial origin
LEVEL 1: Diencephalon / Upper Midbrain
Partial brainstem compromise
Sympathetic Activation
(attempt to maintain CPP)
· Hypertension
· Tachycardia
· Vasoconstriction
→ Sympathetic Storm
LEVEL 2: Midbrain / Pons
Continued downward displacement
Loss of:
· Pupillary light reflexes
· Corneal reflexes
· Oculocephalic responses
· Doll's eye movements
LEVEL 3: Medulla / Upper Cervical Cord
Destruction of vital centres
Destruction of sympathetic centres
→ Abrupt loss of sympathetic tone
→ Vasodilatation
→ Hypotension (Phase 2)
→ Catecholamine depletion
→ Myocardial depression
Destruction of:
· Apnoea / respiratory centres
· Cardiovascular nuclei
→ Loss of spontaneous respiration
→ Cardiovascular collapse
Haemodynamic Transition:
Transient hyperactivity (Phase 1)
→ Profound loss of sympathetic tone (Phase 2)
Characteristic sequence of Brainstem Death
BRAINSTEM DEATH
Complete, irreversible loss of all brainstem function

ANNEXURE-II

National Level Brain Stem Death (BSD) Experts Committee- MoHFW Order No. F. No.-N32/722/Coord/NOTTO/24/MS, dated 16.06.2025

F.NoN32/722/Coord/NOTTO/24 I/3776079/2025

File No. F.NoN32/722/Coord/NOTTO/24 MS
Government of India
Ministry of Health & Family Welfare
Department of Health & Family Welfare
(Medical Services Section)
***

Nirman Bhawan, New Delhi-110011
Dated: 16-06-2025

ORDER

Subject: Constitution of a National Level Brain Stem Death (BSD) Experts Committee -reg.

The competent authority has decided to constitute a national level Brain Stem Death Experts Committee for Drafting and finalization of National BSD Certification Guidelines, including Paediatric BSD Guidelines, BSD training module, curriculum and BSD Performa for reporting, monitoring and auditing.

2. The list of experts finalized by NOTTO for inclusion in the National Level Brain Stem Death Experts Committee is as follows:

i) Dr. J Balavenkata Subramanian - President, Indian Society of Anaesthesiologists

ii) Dr. Sukhminder Jit Singh Bajwa - Secretary, Indian Society of Anaesthesiologists, Prof. & Head, Anaesthesia & Intensive Care, GSMCH, Rajpura, Patiala, Punjab

iii) Dr. Anirban Hom Choudhuri - Director, Professor & Head, Dept. of Critical Care Medicine, VMMC & SJ Hospital, New Delhi

iv) Dr. Bharat Jagiasi - General Secretary, ISCCM, Director of Critical Care Department, Kokilaben Hospital, Navi Mumbai

v) Prof. Dr. Pradip Kumar Bhattacharya - President, Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine, Chancellor, Indian College of Critical Care Medicine, Prof. & HOD, Department of Critical Care Medicine, Incharge, Trauma Centre & Central Emergency, Dean Research Rajendra Institute of Medical Sciences, Ranchi

vi) Dr. Easwer HV - Professor, Department of Neurosurgery, Sree Chitra Thirunal Institute for Medical Sciences and Technology, Trivandrum

vii) Dr. Swagata Tripathy - Past Vice President, Society of Neurocritical Care, Professor & I/c ICU, Department of Anaesthesia & Critical Care, AIIMS Bhubaneswar

viii) Prof. Dr. Yogesh N Parikh - Secretary General, Indian Academy of Pediatrics, Associate Professor, Department of Pediatric, Government Medical College & New Civil Hospital, Majura Gate, Surat, Gujarat

ix) Prof. Dr. G V Basavaraja - National President Indian Academy of Pediatrics (IAP)

x) Dr. Sourabh Sharma - Asst. Prof., Dept of Nephrology, Safdarjung Hospital, New Delhi

xi) Dr. Ridhima Sharma - Associate Professor, Department of Anaesthesia and Critical Care, AIIMS, Nagpur

xii) Dr. Santvana Kohli Arora - Assoc. Professor, Critical Care Medicine, VMMC & Safdarjung Hospital, New Delhi

xiii) Dr. Deepak Gupta - Professor and Consultant Neurosurgeon, Department of Neurosurgery, AIIMS & associated JPN Apex Trauma Centre, New Delhi

xiv) Dr. Amlendu Yadav - Professor and Head, Department of Emergency Medicine, ABVIMS & Dr RML Hospital, New Delhi

xv) Dr. R M Chhabra - Senior Consultant Physician, Max Super Speciality Hospital, Shalimar Bagh & Saroj Super Speciality Hospital, New Delhi

xvi) Dr. Srinivas Samavedam - President Elect ISCCM, Chief Intensivisit, Ramdevrao Hospital, Hyderabad, Telangana

xvii) Dr. Daljit Singh - President, Neurological Society of India (NSI)

xviii) Dr. Madhuri Kurdi - Professor & Head, Department of Anaesthesiology, KIMS, Hubli, Karnataka

xix) Dr. Sheila Naynan Mayatra - Professor, Department of Anaesthesiology and Critical Care Medicine, Tata Memorial Hospital, Mumbai

xx) Dr. J. Divatia - Head, Crirical Care, Lilavati Hospital and Research Centre, Mumbai

xxi) Dr. Arpita Ray Chaudhury - Professor, Department of Nephrology NBMCH/ IPGMER Kolkata

xxii) Dr. Vivek Kute - Professor and Unit Head, Nephrology and Transplantation Institute of Kidney Diseases and Research Center and Dr. H L Trivedi Institute of Transplantation Sciences (IKDRC-ITS), and Gujarat University of Transplantation Sciences (GUTS) Ahmedabad, India

xxiii) Dr. Sangeeta Ravat - President IAN, Dean KEM Medical College, Mumbai

xxiv) Dr. Meenakshisundaram U- Secretary IAN, Director Neurology, MGM Healthcare, Chennai

xxv) Dr. Roop Gursahani, Senior Consultant Neurology, Hinduja Hospital, Mumbai

xxvi) 1 Forensic Expert (from a Central Government Hospital)

xxvii) 1 Legal expert from the Ministry of Law and Justice

3. The broad TORs for the committee are as follows:

i. Drafting and finalization of National BSD Certification Guidelines, including Paediatric BSD Guidelines
ii. Drafting and finalization of BSD training module, curriculum and plan
iii. Drafting and finalization of BSD Performa for reporting, monitoring and auditing

This will further include discussions on:

i. Steps for identification of BSD in ICUs
ii. Criteria for BSD certification
iii. Definition of possible donor, potential donor, confirmed donor and actual donor
iv. BSD monitoring and surveillance system, including audit
v. ICU performance analysis
vi. Awards to well-functioning ICUs
vii. Quality monitoring
viii. Withdrawal of life care support
ix. Any other matters related to Brain Stem Death

4. During meetings conducted in physical mode, the official participants will draw their TA/DA from their source of regular salary. The committee will be provided TA/DA admissible to non-Government officials/participants of the National Level Brain Stem Death Experts Committee for attending physical meetings as per the rate applicable for a Junior Administrative Grade (JAG) Officer with a Grade Pay of Rs. 7600/- including Air Travel by economy class, if applicable, as per DoE guidelines and provisions of GFR rule 2017 on the matter.

5. This issues with the approval of competent authority and concurrence of IFD along with CD No. 744 dated 04/06/2025.

Digitally signed by
SWARNENDU SINGHA
Date: 16-06-2025
11:58:47

(Swarnendu Singha)
Under Secretary to the Government of India
Tel. No. 011-23063546
Email: swarnendu.singha@nic.in

To,
1. Director, NOTTO
2. All members of the committee (through NOTTO)

Copy to (for information):
i) PS to Secretary(HFW)
ii) PS to JS (VN)

ANNEXURE-III

LIST OF CONTRIBUTORS

National Level Brain Stem Death (BSD) Experts Committee
(As per Order No. F. No.-N32/722/Coord/NOTTO/24/MS, dated

Dr. Amlendu Yadav
Professor and HOD, Department of Emergency Medicine, ABVIMS & Dr. RML Hospital, New Delhi

Dr. Anirban Hom Choudhuri
Director, Professor & Head, Dept. of Critical Care Medicine, VMMC & Safdarjung Hospital, New Delhi

Sh. Arpit Anant Mishra
Additional Legal Advisor, Deptt. of Legal Affairs, Ministry of Law & Justice, Shastri Bhawan, New Delhi

Dr. Arpita Ray Chaudhury
Professor and HOD, Department of Nephrology, NBMCH/ IPGMER, Kolkata

Dr. Bharat Jagiasi
General Secretary, Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine (ISCCM). Director of Critical Care Department, Kokilaben Dhirubhai Ambani Hospital, Navi Mumbai

Dr. Daljit Singh
Past President, Neurological Society of India (NSI). Vice Chairman and Head Neurosurgery, Max Smart Superspeciality Hospital, Saket. Delhi

Dr. Deepak Gupta
Professor and Consultant Neurosurgeon, Department of Neurosurgery, AIIMS & associated JPN Apex Trauma Centre, New Delhi

Dr. Easwer H V
Professor, Department of Neurosurgery, Sree Chitra Thirunal Institute for Medical Sciences and Technology, Thiruvananthapuram, Kerala

Dr. G V Basavaraja
National President, Indian Academy of Pediatrics (IAP). Professor of Pediatrics and Head of Paediatric emergency, Critical care Unit, Medical Superintendent, IGICH, Bangalore

Dr. J Balavenkata Subramanian
Past President, Indian Society of Anaesthesiologists (ISA). Senior Consultant & Academic Director, Department of Anaesthesia & Perioperative Care, Ganga Hospital & Medical Centre, Coimbatore

Dr. J. Divatia
Head, Critical Care, Lilavati Hospital and Research Centre, Mumbai

Dr. Madhuri Kurdi
Professor, Department of Anaesthesia, Karnataka Medical College and Research Institute, Hubli, Karnataka

Dr. Meenakshisundaram U
Secretary, Indian Academy of Neurology (IAN).
Clinical Lead – Neurology, Apollo Speciality Hospital, Teynampet, Chennai

Dr. Pradip Kumar Bhattacharya
HOD Department of Critical Care Medicine, In-Charge Trauma Centre, Dean Research, RIMS, Ranchi.
OSD to the Health Department, Jharkhand Government

Dr. R M Chhabra
Senior Consultant Physician, Max Super Speciality Hospital, Shalimar Bagh & Saroj Super Speciality Hospital, Rohini, New Delhi

Dr. Ridhima Sharma
Associate Professor, Department of Anaesthesia & Critical Care, AIIMS, Nagpur, Maharashtra

Dr. Roop Gursahani
Consultant & Section Incharge, Neurology & Palliative Medicine, P.D. Hinduja Hospital, Mumbai

Dr. Sangeeta Ravat
Past President, Indian Academy of Neurology (IAN).
Retd. Dean, KEM Medical College, Mumbai

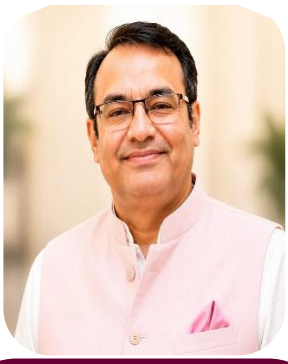
Dr. Santvana Kohli Arora
Professor, Department of Critical Care Medicine, VMMC & Safdarjung Hospital, New Delhi

Dr. Senthil Kumar R
Addl. Professor, Department of Forensic Medicine, Postgraduate Institute of Medical Education and Research (PGIMER), Chandigarh

Dr. Sheila Naynan Mayatra *Head, Division of Critical Care Medicine, Tata Memorial Hospital, Mumbai*

Dr. Sourabh Sharma
Assistant Professor, Department of Nephrology, SMS Medical College, Jaipur

Dr. Srinivas Samavedam
Immediate past president, Indian Society of Critical Care Medicine.
Chief Intensivist, Ramdevrao Hospital, Hyderabad, Telangana



Dr. Sukhminder Jit Singh Bajwa
Secretary, Indian Society of Anaesthesiologists (ISA). Dean/Principal, Prof. Anaesthesiology & Intensive Care, M. M. College of Medical Sciences & Research, Sadopur Ambala, Haryana

Dr. Swagata Tripathy

Vice President, Society of Neuro Critical Care.
Prof & Incharge ICU, Department of Anaesthesia & Critical Care, AIIMS, Bhubaneshwar

Dr. Vivek Kute

Professor and Unit Head, Nephrology and Transplantation Institute of Kidney Diseases and Research Center and Dr. H L Trivedi Institute of Transplantation Sciences, (IKDRC-ITS), and the Gujarat University of Transplantation Sciences (GUTS), Ahmedabad,

Dr. Yogesh N Parikh

Secretary General, Indian Academy of Pediatrics (IAP).
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatric, Government Medical College & New Civil Hospital, Majura Gate, Surat, Gujarat

Special Invitees

Dr. Kapil Zirpe
Head, Neuro Trauma Intensive Care Unit, Grant Medical Foundation, Ruby Hall Clinic, Pune

Dr. Nameet Jerath
Sr. Consultant, Pediatric Pulmonology and Critical Care, IP Apollo Hospital, New Delhi

Dr. Rahul Pandit
Chair Critical Care, Emergency and all Reliance Foundation Healthcare Initiatives, Sir H. N. Reliance Foundation Hospital, Mumbai, Maharashtra

Dr. Surya Kumar Dube
Professor, Neuroanaesthesiology and Critical Care, All India Institute of Medical Sciences (AIIMS), New Delhi

National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO)
Dte.GHS, MoHFW, Govt. of India

Dr. Anil Kumar
Director, National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO)

Dr. Shiny Suman Pradhan
CMO (NFSG), National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO)

Dr. Sana Ahuja
Specialist Grade III, National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO)

Dr. Hashmat Singh
Medical Officer, National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO)

Dr. Reena Paul
Consultant Coordination, National Organ and Tissue Transplant Organization (NOTTO)

1800-11-4770

www.notto.mohfw.gov.in

www.notto.mohfw.gov.in @NottoIndia notto_india INDIANOTTO